

2nd
PREP
FIRST TERM



2026

جميع الحقوق محفوظة لشركة ALADWAA Gem. لا يجوز إعادة إنتاج أو توزيع هذا المحتوى دون إذن كتابي مسبق من الشركة.

HS17GNE



Contents

Start Smart 5

Module 1

Unit 1	Gen Alpha.....	8
	General Exercises on Unit 1	54

Unit 2	My Digital Footprint	57
	General Exercises on Unit 2	99
	Module 1 Question Bank on Units 1 & 2	102

Module 2

Unit 3	Facing Challenges	106
	General Exercises on Unit 3	152

Unit 4	Art and Expression	158
	General Exercises on Unit 4	200
	Module 2 Question Bank on Units 3 & 4	203

Review 1 155

Module 3

Unit 5	Around the World	207
	General Exercises on Unit 5	248

Unit 6	Young Innovators	251
	General Exercises on Unit 6	291
	Module 3 Question Bank on Units 5 & 6	294

Review 2 298



End of the Book

Listening Texts.....	302
Challenging Questions Answers	303

توزيع منهج اللغة الإنجليزية للصف الثاني الإعدادي للعام الدراسي 2025-2026
الفصل الدراسي الأول

English for Preparatory Schools - Year Two (SB)

MONTH(S)	SEPTEMBER & OCTOBER	NOVEMBER	DECEMBER	JANUARY (2026)
UNITS	Units 1 + 2	Units 3 + 4	Units 5 + 6	General Revision

1 Complete the following dialog:

Noha is asking Omar about his weekend plans.

Noha : What are you going to do this weekend?

Omar : (1).....

Noha : That sounds fun! Where will you go camping?

Omar : (2).....

Noha : (3).....?

Omar : We will leave early in the morning.

Noha : Do you like sleeping in a tent?

Omar : (4).....

Noha : (5).....?

Omar : No, it's my first time.

2 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

The Nile River is one of the longest rivers in the world. It flows through northeastern Africa, passing through several countries, including Uganda, Sudan, and Egypt. For thousands of years, people have lived near the Nile because it provides water for drinking, farming, and fishing. Ancient Egyptians used the Nile for transportation and trade. Today, the Nile still plays an important role in the lives of millions of people.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What is the main idea of the passage?

2. Why did ancient Egyptians depend on the Nile?

3. How does the Nile help people today?

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4. The underlined pronoun "it" refers to

a) Africa

b) Egypt

c) the Nile

d) transportation

5. The word "**provides**" means ".....".

a) removes

b) gives

c) sells

d) buys

6. Which of the following is TRUE according to the passage?

a) The Nile is the shortest river in the world.

b) Only Egyptians use the Nile.

c) People have lived near the Nile for thousands of years.

d) The Nile is useful for Uganda only.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. My brother wants to be a when he grows up.
a) doctor b) medicine c) clinic d) medical
2. I always enjoy books in my free time.
a) read b) reads c) reading d) to reading
3. Where you go last summer?
a) do b) did c) does d) are
4. We should protect our environment by recycling
a) money b) food c) rubbish d) books
5. She her homework every day after school.
a) do b) does c) did d) doing
6. Rodiyna is looking her lost keys.
a) in b) at c) after d) for
7. I a new pen yesterday.
a) buy b) bought c) have bought d) will buy
8. The opposite of "cheap" is ".....".
a) expensive b) costly c) inexpensive d) a & b
9. He plays football very
a) good b) well c) nice d) fine
10. I haven't finished my project
a) already b) yet c) just d) ever

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. I (hasn't) seen my uncle since last year.
2. If it (rain), we will stay at home.
3. She (study) English every day.
4. They went to the zoo and (see) many animals.

5 Write a paragraph of (90-100) words on:

"My Favorite Season"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

1

مقرر الشهور
سبتمبر وأكتوبر

MODULE



Unit **1** Gen Alpha

Unit **2** My Digital Footprint

Module 1 Question Bank

Unit

1

GEN ALPHA



LEARNING OUTCOMES

Reading

- Identify the main idea in a text about Gen Alpha's digital habits.
- Extract specific details from a text to answer comprehension questions about Gen Alpha and Gen Z.

Listening

- Identify the main topic of a podcast about Gen Alpha.
- Extract specific details from a podcast to determine if statements are true or false.

Speaking

- Express opinions verbally on topics related to digital habits and online trends.

- Ask and answer questions about students' own and others' digital lives.

Language

- Differentiate between the uses of the present continuous tense.
- Use target grammar accurately to express current activities, and the arranged future.

Writing

- Write a blog post about a Day in the Life of a Gen Alpha Teen
- Incorporate target vocabulary and grammar structures into writing tasks.

A VOCABULARY LESSON 1

- قم بدراسة المفردات الرئيسية جيداً لدرجة الإتقان:
حيث إنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.
- قم باختبار حفظك للمفردات عن طريق الرجوع إلى
ملحق التقييم وتسميع الكلمات الخاصة بالدرسين.

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

balance (d) (v)	يوازن	powerful (adj)	قوى
communicate (d) (v)	يتواصل	real-life (adj)	حياة واقعية
connection (n)	اتصال	represent (ed) (v)	يمثل/ينوب عن
digital native (n)	مواطن رقمي	screen time (n)	وقت الشاشة
encourage (d) (v)	يشجع	technology (n)	تكنولوجيا
explore (d) (v)	يستكشف	trend (n)	صيحة/تيار
Gen Alpha (n)	جيل ألفا مواليد (٢٠١٠-٢٠٢٥)	wonder (ed) (v)	يتعجب/يتساءل
generation (n)	جيل		

Additional Vocabulary المفردات الإضافية

activity (n)	نشاط	express (ed) (v)	يعبر عن
creative (adj)	مبدع/مبتكر	feelings (n)	مشاعر
currently (adv)	حالياً	identity (n)	هوية
constantly (adv)	باستمرار	regarding (prep)	بخصوص
create (d) (v)	يخلق/يبدع	shape (d) (v)	يشكل
discover (ed) (v)	يكشف	social media (n)	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي
emojis (n)	رموز تعبيرية	tool (n)	أداة

Language Expressions & Prepositions التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

change the way	يغير طريقة	limit screen time	يحد من وقت الشاشة
connect with	يتفاعل/يتواصل مع	look for	يبحث عن
create a video	ينشئ فيديو	share memes (صور/مقاطع مضحكة)	يشارك الميمز
instead of	بدلاً من	show emotions	يظهر مشاعره

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past participle
grow up	ينمو/يكبر	grew up	grown up
spend	يقضي/ينفق	spent	spent
spread	ينتشر	spread	spread

(n) = noun (adj) = adjective (prep) = preposition
(v) = verb (adv) = adverb (conj) = conjunction

لاحظ الاختصارات الآتية:

Words and Opposites الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
online	متصل بالإنترنت	offline	غير متصل بالإنترنت
useful	مفيد	useless	عديم الفائدة

Checkpoint

Read and complete with a word from the list:

share - digital - of - for

- 1 The world saves time and effort.
- 2 We are looking a new flat to live in.
- 3 People around the world memes to express their feelings online.

LESSON 2

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

adaptive (adj)	قابل للتكيف	onwards (adv)	فما فوق
affect (ed) (v)	يؤثر على	personal (adj)	شخصي
artificial intelligence (n)	الذكاء الاصطناعي	platform (n)	منصة
coding (n)	البرمجة	relationship (n)	علاقة
content (n)	محتوى	term (n)	مصطلح
experience (n)	تجربة	volunteer (ed) (v)	يتطوع
global (adj)	عالمي	worldwide (adv)	في كل أنحاء العالم

Additional Vocabulary المفردات الإضافية

believe (d) (v)	يعتقد/يصدق	normal (adj)	عادي/طبيعي
challenge (n)	تحدي	role (n)	دور
classmate (n)	زميل دراسة	sail (ed) (v)	يبحر
habit (n)	عادة (شخصية)	wisely (adv)	بحكمة
interviewer (n)	محاوِر		

Language Expressions & Prepositions التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

balance ... with	يوازن ... مع	have screen time	يقضي وقتاً أمام الشاشة
do a project on	يقوم بمشروع عن	try hard to	يحاول جاهداً أن

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past simple	Past participle
mean	meant	meant
write	wrote	written

Words and Opposites الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
good for	مفيد لـ	bad for	ضار بـ
positive	إيجابي	negative	سلبي
interesting	شيق	boring	ممل

Checkpoint

Read and complete with a word from the list: **limit – emojis – balance**

- 1 Leila tries hard to her work with her personal life.
- 2 You should your screen time. It's good for you.
- 3 Some express our feelings.

Language Notes

1 Gen Alpha (Generation Alpha)

الجيل ألفا

يشمل الأطفال المولودين تقريباً من ٢٠١٠ حتى ٢٠٢٥. وهم أول جيل يولد وينشأ في عالم رقمي بالكامل (أجهزة ذكية، إنترنت، ذكاء اصطناعي).

2 was/were born

وُلِدَ

- I **was born** in Benha.
- My two friends **were born** in 2010.

3 learn to + inf.

يتعلم أن

- The digital natives **learn to use** technology before they can read.

4 try to + inf.

يحاول أن

- Many parents are **trying to limit** screen time.

5 way to + inf./of + v + ing

طريقة لـ

- Gen Alpha always looks for new **ways to express** themselves.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Samir always tries his homework on time.
a) to finish b) finish c) to finishing d) finishes
- 2 All my brothers born in Cairo.
a) was b) were c) is d) am
- 3 Digital natives learn apps before they can read.
a) use b) to use c) to using d) uses

Checkpoint

Vocabulary Builder

ادرس مفردات اللغة جيداً
حيث إنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.



Definitions التعريفات

balance	توازن	a situation in which different things are of equal ⁽¹⁾ or proper ⁽²⁾ weight or amount	(1) متساو
digital natives	جيل رقمي	individuals ⁽³⁾ who have grown up with technology, such as computers, the internet, and mobile devices ⁽⁴⁾	(2) ملائم (3) أفراد
emojis	رموز تعبيرية	small digital images or icons used to express ideas or emotions in electronic communication	(4) أجهزة
generation	جيل	a group of people born around the same time	(5) كمية
screen time	وقت الشاشة	the amount ⁽⁵⁾ of time spent looking at a screen	(6) تطورات
trends	صيحات	popular new developments ⁽⁶⁾ , often seen in digital content or social behavior ⁽⁷⁾	(7) سلوك

Words and Synonyms الكلمات ومرادفها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
creative (adj)	مبدع/مبتكر	imaginative	مبدع
global (adj)	عالمي	international	دولي

Suffix اللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Suffix اللاحقة	Function الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
adapt (v)	يتكيف	-ive	تحويل الفعل إلى صفة	adaptive (adj)	قابل للتكيف
constant (adj)	مستمر	-ly	تحويل الصفة إلى حال	constantly (adv)	باستمرار
power (n)	قوة	-ful	تحويل الاسم إلى صفة	powerful (adj)	قوي
person (n)	شخص	-al		personal (adj)	شخصي
interview (v)	يحاوِر	-er	تحويل الفعل إلى اسم فاعل	interviewer (n)	محاوِر

B Reading & Listening Skills

Lesson 1

Pre-reading questions:

- 1 What does the word "generation" mean to you?
- 2 What do you know about Gen Alpha?

 Read the following text. What does Gen Alpha rarely do?

SB page 14

Gen Alpha: The Young Digital Natives

Do you know that you are one of Gen Alpha, who were born from around 2010 to the mid-2020s? Today's young generation⁽¹⁾, Gen Alpha, is changing the way we live and communicate. They are digital natives⁽²⁾ because they learn to use technology before they can read, and they usually spend a lot of time online, exploring⁽³⁾ the latest trends⁽⁴⁾. They like creating short videos to show their hobbies or opinions.



At the moment, many Gen Alpha children are using social media to learn about the world and to connect with others. They are constantly discovering new trends that quickly spread across their digital communities. For example, they share memes⁽⁵⁾ and sometimes send emojis⁽⁶⁾ instead of words because they like showing emotions in a creative, fun way.

Teachers and parents often wonder how this generation will grow up with so much technology around them.

Right now, many parents are trying to limit⁽⁷⁾ screen time while also encouraging useful digital skills. Gen Alpha rarely spends a day without using technology, but they are also learning to balance⁽⁸⁾ online activities with real-life connections.

This generation represents a powerful trend that is shaping the future. Gen Alpha always looks for new ways to express themselves and likes using digital tools to create their identity in the modern world.

Post-reading questions:

SB

- 1 What is the main idea of this text?
- 2 Why do Gen Alpha children use social media?
- 3 According to the passage, why is Gen Alpha called "digital natives"?
- 4 How does Gen Alpha express their feelings online?
- 5 What are parents currently trying to balance for Gen Alpha regarding technology?

- (1) جيل
- (2) مواطنون رقميون
- (3) يستكشف
- (4) صيحات
- (5) ميمز (صور/ مقاطع مضحكة)
- (6) رموز تعبيرية
- (7) يقيّد
- (8) يوازن

Pre-listening question:

- How much screen time do you usually have each day?

Listen to the audio. What is the audio talking about?



Lesson 2

SB page 16

Conversation: Gen Alpha's Digital Life

Interviewer Welcome, Dr. Wessam. We often hear the term Gen Alpha. Could you tell us exactly who they are?

Dr. Wessam Sure. Gen Alpha are children born from 2010 onwards⁽¹⁾. They are called digital natives⁽²⁾ because they grow up completely in a digital environment. For them, technology is normal - smartphones, tablets, social media, even artificial intelligence⁽³⁾.

Interviewer And how are their habits different from other generations⁽⁴⁾?

Dr. Wessam Well, Gen Alpha use it from a very young age. Many of them learn to use apps before they can read. Their daily life is highly connected and full of digital experiences.

Interviewer That's very interesting. So, what do they usually do online?

Dr. Wessam They spend hours online, but not only for games. They share memes, use emojis⁽⁵⁾ to express⁽⁶⁾ feelings, and make short videos to show hobbies or opinions. They also use online platforms⁽⁷⁾ for learning and connecting with friends worldwide⁽⁸⁾.

Interviewer Sounds creative! But what challenges do they face?

Dr. Wessam The main challenge is balance⁽⁹⁾. Too much screen time can affect⁽¹⁰⁾ health and relationships⁽¹¹⁾. Parents try to limit⁽¹²⁾ screen time and encourage useful skills, like coding⁽¹³⁾ or online learning, while also making sure children play sports or spend time with family.

Interviewer So, what positive things do you see in Gen Alpha?

Dr. Wessam They are creative, quick learners, and very adaptive⁽¹⁴⁾. If guided well, they can use technology to improve education, communication, and even solve global⁽¹⁵⁾ problems.

Interviewer Thank you, Dr. Wessam. That was very helpful.



- | | |
|----------------------|--------------------|
| (1) فما فوق | (2) مواطنون رقميون |
| (3) الذكاء الاصطناعي | (4) أجيال |
| (5) رموز تعبيرية | (6) يعبر عن |
| (7) منصات | (8) حول العالم |
| (9) التوازن | (10) يؤثر على |
| (11) علاقات | (12) يقلل |
| (13) البرمجة | (14) متكيف |
| (15) عالمي | |

Post-listening question:

SB

- Who are the "digital natives"?

1 Vocabulary building:

Meaning/Synonym – Opposite/Antonym

ارجع للقطعة ص 13-14 وحاول أن تستخرج منها كلمات متشابهة أو متضادة في المعنى للكلمات التالية:

Meaning/Synonym	Opposite/Antonym
contact يتصل بـ	search for يبحث عن
international دولي	weak ضعيف
reduce يقلل	bad for ضار بـ

2 Comprehension strategies:

في هذا الجزء سنتعرف على كيفية التعامل مع أسئلة القطعة:

What does the word "....." mean?

من الأسئلة الأساسية في القطعة تخمين معنى كلمة، ومن الممكن أن يكون السؤال كالتالي:

How to guess the meaning of a word:

كيفية تخمين معنى كلمة:

هناك عدة نقاط يمكن أن تساعد في تخمين معنى الكلمة:

1. Try to understand what type of word it is. (اسم، فعل، صفة).
2. Read the passage well. You may find synonyms, antonyms, or a definition.
3. Look for clues: Point to words around the unfamiliar word that might help understand its meaning.
4. Make a guess.

FOR EXAMPLE:

This generation represents a powerful trend that is shaping the future. Gen Alpha always looks for new ways to express themselves and likes using digital tools to create their identity in the modern world.

- The underlined word "powerful" means

- a) helpful b) strong c) useful d) weak

3 Translation:

A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

اختر الترجمة العربية الصحيحة:

- They are also learning to balance online activities with real-life connections.

- ☐ - إنهم يتعلمون أيضاً موازنة الأنشطة عبر الإنترنت مع الروابط الحقيقية في الحياة.
- ☐ - إنهم يتعلمون أيضاً معرفة الأنشطة عبر الإنترنت مع الروابط الحقيقية في الحياة.

B) Choose the correct English translation:

اختر الترجمة الإنجليزية الصحيحة:

- يبحث الجيل ألفا دائماً عن طرق جديدة للتعبير عن أنفسهم.

- ☐ Gen Alpha always looks for global ways to express themselves.
- ☐ Gen Alpha always looks for new ways to express themselves.

LESSON

7

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- My brother loves to funny memes with his friends.
a) share b) think c) appear d) steal
- It is important to your time between playing outside and using a tablet.
a) balance b) encourage c) explore d) discover
- People who cannot hear often use their hands to
a) encourage b) represent c) communicate d) express
- A/An is a person who grew up using technology like computers.
a) digital native b) community c) generation d) identity
- My parents always me to try my best, even if I might fail.
a) explore b) encourage c) balance d) discover
- Alpha are the first group born in the 21st century of the world.
a) Tool b) Gen c) Gem d) Device
- Our should care more about the environment.
a) decision b) situation c) generation d) action
- It is important to take breaks during to rest your own eyes.
a) trend b) connection c) screen time d) rest time
- We should different ways to solve the problem.
a) explore b) encourage c) balance d) invent
- A superhero gets special power. To form the adjective of "power", we add the suffix ".....".
a) -al b) -ful c) -ive d) -ist

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

balance – natives – send – spend – communicate

Gen Alpha is the youngest generation, growing up in a world full of technology. Many of them are true digital (1)....., using phones and tablets before they can even read. They often (2)..... online, but parents try to encourage them to find a good (3)..... with real-life activities. Sometimes they (4)..... funny emojis to their friends. Kids in this generation wonder how life was before the internet.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. My diary is where I write my thoughts and my secret feelings.
a) fun b) weak c) powerful d) personal
2. The small boat will to the island soon.
a) express b) discover c) sail d) sell
3. The book's was so interesting that I read it all in one day.
a) content b) cover c) price d) weight
4. I will to clean up the park with my friends on the weekend.
a) explore b) encourage c) balance d) volunteer
5. My parents say I can only screen time on the weekends.
a) train b) have c) write d) think
6. The "Gen Alpha" is for children born from 2010 onwards.
a) term b) platform c) effect d) environment.
7. is changing the way we live and work by making machines smarter.
a) Website b) Platform
c) Artificial intelligence d) Relationship
8. Climbing the mountain was a big for me.
a) generation b) challenge c) screen d) digital
9. My dad has a lot of concern the weather before our long trip.
a) for b) about c) with d) at
10. Omar is learning to create websites and apps.
a) history b) coding c) medicine d) connecting

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

tools – do – encourage – make – generation

Gen Alpha's digital life is a subject of growing importance. They are the first (1) to be born within the 21st century, and their connection to technology is different from any before. They use digital (2) for fun and education, and they can (3) a project on different subjects with a tablet. It's good to see them so comfortable with technology, but parents must (4) them to use it wisely and safely.

C Language

The Present Continuous Tense

زمن المضارع المستمر

Grammar story:



Read and circle the correct answer:

Mazen (is/are) playing football with his friends.
His sister (am/is) watching and cheering.
The sun (are/is) shining, and they (are/am) having fun. After the game, they are going to eat ice cream.

Form

التكوين

Affirmative الإثبات

I → am
He, She, It, اسم مفرد → is + v + ing
We, They, You, اسم جمع → are

- e.g. I am watching TV now.
• The baby is sleeping at the moment.
• Look! The birds are flying in the sky.

Negative النفي

I → am not
He, She, It, اسم مفرد → isn't + v + ing
We, They, You, اسم جمع → aren't

- e.g. I'm not eating my breakfast right now.
• Your younger brother isn't crying.
• The children aren't studying for their exams these days.

Yes/No question

السؤال بمعنى هل

Am + I + v + ing ... ?

- e.g. A: Am I making too much noise?
B: Yes, you are. B: No, you aren't.

Is + اسم مفرد / he/she/it + v + ing ... ?

- e.g. A: Is Ali working on the project right now?

B: Yes, he is. B: No, he isn't.

Are + اسم جمع / you/we/they + v + ing ... ?

- e.g. A: Are your friends visiting you?
B: Yes, they are. B: No, they aren't.

Interrogative

الاستفهام

Wh- question

السؤال بأداة استفهام

Q. word + is + اسم مفرد / he/she/it + v + ing ... ?

- e.g. A: When is Hala meeting her friend for coffee?

B: She is meeting her friend this afternoon.

Q. word + are + اسم جمع / you/we/they + v + ing ... ?

- e.g. A: Where are they going on their vacation?

B: They are going to the park on their vacation.

Usage الاستخدام

1. We use the present continuous to talk about actions happening at the moment of speaking.

• نستخدم المضارع المستمر للتحدث عن الأفعال التي تحدث في لحظة الكلام.

e.g. • I **am reading** a book right now.

• Nada **is playing** football in the garden at the moment.

2. We use the present continuous to describe things that are true for a short time or for temporary actions.

• نستخدم المضارع المستمر لوصف الأشياء التي تكون صحيحة لفترة قصيرة أو لأفعال مؤقتة.

e.g. • I **am learning** to swim these days.

• They **are working** on a school project this week.

3. We use the present continuous tense to talk about things we have already planned to do in the future or for future arrangements.

• نستخدم زمن المضارع المستمر للحديث عن الأشياء التي خططنا لها بالفعل للقيام بها في المستقبل أو للترتيبات المستقبلية. (أي يوجد ترتيب مسبق/توجد كلمة تدل على الترتيب المسبق/يلغى حدث من أجل حدث آخر/يحدد موعد أو مكان الحدث).

e.g. • My father **is traveling** to Alex tomorrow. He has got the tickets.

• They're **flying** to London next week. The flight has been booked حجزت.

Time Expressions (Happening now/temporarily)

هذا الأسبوع **this week**, حالياً **currently**, في هذه اللحظة **at the moment**, الآن **right now**, الآن **now**, انظر **Look!**، هذه الأيام **these days**، في الوقت الحاضر **at present**، باستمرار **constantly**، اليوم **today**، ما زال **still**، احذر **Watch out!**، استمع **Listen!**

e.g. • **Look!** It **is starting** to rain.

• Nader **is feeling** sick **today**.

• Marwa **is cooking** dinner **right now**.

• The baby **is always crying** loudly.



Note

- We generally do not use the present continuous with stative verbs. These are verbs that describe a state of being, not an action (e.g., like, love, hate, want, need, know, understand, believe, own, seem).

• لا نستخدم عادةً صيغة المضارع المستمر مع أفعال الحالة. فهي أفعال تصف حالة وجود، وليست فعلاً.

e.g. • I **want** a coffee right now.

• I **know** the answer now.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- ▶ 1. Look outside the window right now because it
 a) rain b) rains c) raining d) is raining
2. The students in art class pictures of their families today.
 a) is drawing b) has drawn c) are drawing d) draws
3. Youmna is busy because she a letter to her friend.
 a) write b) is writing c) are writing d) writes
4. They breakfast at the moment. They are watching TV.
 a) ate b) are eating c) aren't eating d) eats
5. Mazin is at his desk and he a picture with crayons now.
 a) is coloring b) color c) are coloring d) colors
6. We are at the zoo and we the monkeys eat bananas.
 a) has watched b) watches c) are watching d) is watching
7. I my grandma this week because she is on a long trip.
 a) am not visiting b) not visit c) isn't visiting d) aren't visiting
8. They a movie at the cinema with their friends tonight.
 a) watch b) watches c) is watching d) are watching
9. I my room on Saturday morning before I can go out.
 a) am cleaning b) cleaned c) is cleaning d) cleans
10. you your homework right now or later?
 a) Is/doing b) Are/doing c) Do/doing d) Am/doing

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- ▶ 1. Khalid (draw) a big dinosaur in his notebook right now.
2. Mayar (not/read) her new comic story at the moment.
3. We (learn) about planets in science class this week.
4. Are they (plan) a surprise party for their friend tomorrow?
5. Jana (not/eat) her sandwich because she is not hungry.

3 Find the mistake in the following sentences and correct it:

- ▶ 1. Mohamed writes his posts in English now. (.....) SB
2. Now, they do a new project on how to use the internet safely. (.....) SB
3. Look! Many children read in the library. (.....) SB
4. Roquia volunteers to help her classmates today. (.....) SB
5. The ship sails on Monday next week. (.....) SB

PRACTICE MORE



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The little baby is hungry so she loudly.
a) is crying b) cry c) are crying d) cries
- I cannot play now because I my room.
a) clean b) am cleaning c) is cleaning d) cleans
- My grandma is on the phone and she to my aunt.
a) talk b) talked c) are talking d) is talking
- Boody is not here; he soccer كرة القدم in the park with his friends.
a) play b) are playing c) is playing d) plays
- My family and I lunch in the kitchen at this moment.
a) eat b) is eating c) are eating d) eats
- My sister is in her room and she for her music test.
a) is practicing b) practice c) are practicing d) practices
- The baby is happy, so he at his mother right now.
a) smile b) smiles c) are smiling d) is smiling
- My mom dinner now because we are getting pizza tonight.
a) don't cook b) doesn't cook c) aren't cooking d) isn't cooking

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- My little brother, Tamer, (not/sleep) in his bed right now.
- Marwan and Karim (not/play) video games because they have homework.
- Miss Dina (write) the new words on the board at the moment.
- Look! Salma (water) the flowers in the garden.
- Zina and her friends (ride) their bikes in the park today.

3 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

- Waleed swims in the swimming pool. (at the moment)
.....
- Omar cleans his messy room before his friends arrive. (now)
.....
- Dina has a ticket and she will travel to Alexandria tomorrow morning. (is)
.....
- Laila will visit her cousin tomorrow at their new house. She has arranged it. (visiting)
.....

لحل المزيد من التدرّيات، قم بالإجابة عن الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درسين في ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.





1. Expressing opinion on Gen Alpha's digital life

التعبير عن الرأي بشأن الحياة الرقمية لجيل ألفا



online



What do you know about Gen Alpha?

ماذا تعرف عن جيل ألفا؟

They're digital natives because they learn to use technology before they can read. إنهم مواطنون رقميون لأنهم يتعلمون استخدام التكنولوجيا قبل أن يتمكنوا من القراءة.



Why do Gen Alpha children use social media?

لماذا يستخدم أطفال جيل ألفا وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي؟

They use social media to connect with friends, share ideas, and have fun. يستخدمونها للتواصل مع الأصدقاء، ومشاركة الأفكار، والاستمتاع.



Why is Gen Alpha called "digital natives"?

لماذا يُطلق على جيل ألفا اسم «المواطنون الرقميون»؟

Because they grow up with technology and use it naturally every day. لأنهم ينشئون مع التكنولوجيا ويستخدمونها بشكل طبيعي كل يوم.



2. Asking and answering questions about students' own and others' digital lives

طرح الأسئلة والإجابة عنها حول الحياة الرقمية للطلاب وحياة الآخرين



online



How often do you use technology?

كم مرة تستخدم التكنولوجيا؟

I use it every day for school, games, and talking to friends.

أستخدمها كل يوم للدراسة والألعاب والتحدث مع الأصدقاء.



How much screen time do you usually have each day?

كم ساعة تقضي عادة أمام الشاشة كل يوم؟

I spend more than 8 hours using technology devices.

أقضي أكثر من ٨ ساعات في استخدام الأجهزة التكنولوجية.



What kind of content do you watch or listen to?

ما نوع المحتوى الذي تشاهده أو تستمع إليه؟

I watch cartoons, YouTube videos, and listen to music.

أشاهد الرسوم المتحركة وفيدوهات يوتيوب وأستمع إلى الموسيقى.



Speaking Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analyzing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

1 Complete the following dialog:

► Ali and Omar are talking about Gen Alpha.

Ali : Can I ask you a few questions about Gen Alpha?

Omar : (1)..... I know a little about them.

Ali : (2).....?

Omar : They are called "digital natives" because they grow up with technology.

Ali : Interesting! Do they always use social media wisely?

Omar : (3)..... They spend too much time online.

Ali : Oh! (4).....?

Omar : Parents should teach them safe ways to help them.

Ali : Great! How often do you use technology yourself?

Omar : (5).....

2 Complete the following dialog:

► Youmna and Mayar are talking about screen time.

Youmna : Hi Mayar. How are you?

Mayar : (1).....

Youmna : (2).....?

Mayar : I use technology every day.

Youmna : (3).....?

Mayar : I spend more than 8 hours using technology devices.

Youmna : Do you think you should limit your screen time?

Mayar : (4)..... It's bad for me.

Youmna : I advise you to start from now.

Mayar : (5).....

تطبيق الأضواء مجاناً

أدخل كودك الشخصي الموجود في الغلاف الداخلي في نهاية الكتاب واستخدم تطبيق الأضواء مجاناً.

زل التطبيق أو أدخل على موقع الأضواء:
www.aladwaa.com



How to write about Gen Alpha's digital life

كيفية الكتابة عن الحياة الرقمية لجيل ألفا

1. Who are Gen Alpha?

من هم جيل ألفا؟

- Gen Alpha are children born after 2010. جيل ألفا هم الأطفال الذين ولدوا بعد عام ٢٠١٠.

2. Why are they called "digital natives"?

- Because they use technology naturally from a very young age. لأنهم يستخدمون التكنولوجيا بشكل طبيعي منذ سن مبكرة جداً.

3. What devices do they use?

ما الأجهزة التي يستخدمونها؟

- They use tablets, smartphones, computers, and sometimes smart TVs. يستخدمون الأجهزة اللوحية والهواتف الذكية وأجهزة الكمبيوتر وأحياناً التلفزيونات الذكية.

4. Why do they use social media?

لماذا يستخدمون وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي؟

- To chat with friends and share pictures. للتحدث مع الأصدقاء ومشاركة الصور.
- To watch videos and follow trends. لمشاهدة الفيديوهات ومتابعة الترنكات.

5. How much time do they spend online?

كم من الوقت يقضونه على الإنترنت؟

- Some spend many hours every day using technology. يقضى بعضهم ساعات عديدة يومياً في استخدام التكنولوجيا.

6. What kind of content do they enjoy?

ما نوع المحتوى الذي يستمتعون به؟

- Cartoons, YouTube videos, games, and music. الرسوم المتحركة، وفيديوهات يوتيوب، والألعاب، والموسيقى.
- Learning videos can help them study. يمكن لفيديوهات التعلم مساعدتهم على الدراسة.

7. How can Gen Alpha use technology in a healthy way?

كيف يمكن لجيل ألفا استخدام التكنولوجيا بطريقة صحية؟

- Use it for learning and fun, not for too long. استخدمها للتعلم والمتعة، وليس لفترة طويلة جداً.
- Take breaks and do outdoor activities too. أخذ فترات راحة وممارسة الأنشطة الخارجية أيضاً.

اقرأ هذا النموذج المجاب عنه لإضافة أفكار جديدة ولتعلم منه:

"Gen Alpha's digital life"

Gen Alpha are children born after 2010. They are called "digital natives" because they use technology naturally from a very young age. They often use tablets, smartphones, and computers for learning, games, and videos. Many children like to use social media to chat with friends, share pictures, and watch fun videos. They enjoy cartoons, YouTube videos, music, and learning videos. Sometimes they spend too much time online, which can make them tired or hurt their eyes. Parents and teachers help them use technology safely and wisely.



نص الاستماع
في نهاية الكتاب.

1 A) Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Gen Alpha are children born after
a) 2005 b) 2010 c) 2000 d) 1995
2. Gen Alpha often use before they can read.
a) toys b) technology c) books d) bicycles
3. They should balance screen time with
a) homework b) outdoor play c) music d) reading stories

B) Listen again and answer the following questions:

4. What do Gen alpha enjoy doing?
.....
5. Who should encourage them to balance screen time with outdoor play?
.....

2 Complete the following dialog:

Mona asks Samir about using technology.

Mona: How often do you use technology?

Samir: (1).....

Mona: How much screen time do you usually have each day?

Samir: (2).....

Mona: Wow! (3).....?

Samir: I watch cartoons, YouTube videos, listen to music and use social media.

Mona: Why do they use social media?

Samir: (4).....

Mona: (5).....?

Samir: No, I don't think my classmates use technology wisely.

3 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

generation – express – spend – memes – explore

Members of Gen Alpha are constantly discovering new ways to learn. They love to (1) digital games and enjoy time with their community. Screen time can be fun, but teachers should remind them to play outside and stay healthy. This young (2) often follows the latest trend on social media. Every day, they (3) their feelings through pictures, videos, and sometimes (4)

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. My little sister is a true; she can use a tablet better than my dad.
a) trend b) tool c) digital native d) skill
2. YouTube is a famous for sharing videos.
a) farm b) form c) frame d) platform
3. The cat is on the fence, and it a bird in the tree.
a) watch b) watches c) are watching d) is watching
4. The woman is at the bus stop, and she for bus number 10.
a) wait b) are waiting c) is waiting d) waits

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Bilal (drink) a glass of fresh orange juice with his breakfast now.
2. My parents (not/watch) the news; they are watching a movie.
3. The gardener (cut) the tall grass in the park this morning.
4. Essam (fly) to another country for work this week.

6 Find the mistake in the following sentences and correct it:

1. Adam play with his new toy car right now. (.....)
2. Hesham and his brother isn't fighting over the video game right now. (.....)
3. Rania doesn't wearing her new shoes to school today. (.....)
4. The baby smiling in his sleep right now. (.....)

7 Write a paragraph of (90-100) words on:

"Gen Alpha"

.....

.....

.....



Challenging Questions

مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب.

Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets:

1. The chef is making the meal at the moment. (is)
.....
2. Zahra reads a very interesting storybook. (at the moment)
.....
3. Osama has his ticket, so he will watch the new superhero movie tonight. (is watching)
.....

Assess your progress ★★★★★

< 50% Study again

50 : 64% Practice more

65 : 84% Take more exams

85 : 100% Well done!

A VOCABULARY LESSON 3

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

bridge (n)	جسر/كوبري	include (d) (v)	يتضمن/يشمل
case (n)	قضية/حالة	online creator (n)	صانع محتوى على الإنترنت
connect (ed) (v)	يتواصل/يوصل	smartphone (n)	هاتف ذكي
Gen Z-Alpha (n)	الجيل زد/ألفا	unite (d) (v)	يوحد/يتحد

Additional Vocabulary المفردات الإضافية

affect (ed) (v)	يؤثر على	newspaper (n)	جريدة
board games (n)	ألعاب الطاولة	pet (n)	حيوان أليف
device (n)	جهاز	side (n)	جانب
fairness (n)	عدل	support (ed) (v)	يساند/يدعم

Language Expressions & Prepositions التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

care about	يهتم بـ	on YouTube	على يوتيوب
do activities	يمارس أنشطة	popular with	محبوب لدى
each other	بعضهم البعض	share thoughts	يشارك الأفكار
far apart	على مسافة بعيدة	support cases	يدعم قضايا
in common	مشترك	treat ... with	يعامل ... بـ

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past simple	Past participle
speak يتحدث	spoke	spoken
understand يفهم	understood	understood

Read and complete with a word from the list:

share – with – do – unite

- The new library is popular local students who are looking for a place to read.
- The manager worked hard to the two companies into a successful one.
- Eman felt comfortable enough to her thoughts with her best friend.

LESSON 4

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

annoy (ed) (v)	يضايق/يزعج	passionate (adj)	شغوف/متحمس
curious (adj)	فضول	permission (n)	إذن/تصريح
download (ed) (v)	يحمل	responsibility (n)	مسئولية
inventor (n)	مخترع	special (adj)	مميز/خاص

Additional Vocabulary المفردات الإضافية

actions (n)	أفعال/تصرفات	present (ed) (v)	يقدم
advise (d) (v)	ينصح	punish (ed) (v)	يعاقب
afraid (adj)	خائف	strange (adj)	غريب
announce (d) (v)	يعلن/يصرح	talking robot (n)	روبوت متحدث
brave (adj)	شجاع	tease (d) (v)	يضايق/يسخر من
choices (n)	اختيارات	warn (ed) (v)	يحذر
Creative Fair (n)	معرض للمبدعين	weak (adj)	ضعيف
machine (n)	آلة/مكيئة	wire (n)	سلك

Language Expressions & Prepositions التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

admire about	يعجب بخصوص	make sure	يتأكد
believe in	يؤمن بـ/يثق بـ	passionate about	شغوف/متحمس بـ
be yourself	كن على طبيعتك	stay safe online	يبقى آمناً على الإنترنت
full of	ممتلئ بـ	take steps	يتخذ خطوات/إجراءات
laugh at	يسخر من		

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past simple	Past participle
build	built	built
think	thought	thought

Read and complete with a word from the list:

take – in – at punish – in

- The teacher had to the student for making noise.
- It's not nice to laugh other people.
- To get better at playing the piano, you need to steps to practice every day.

Generation Z (Gen Z)

الجيل زد

المولودون تقريباً بين ١٩٩٧ و ٢٠١٢. يعدّون أول جيل رقمي، نشأوا مع الإنترنت والهواتف الذكية ووسائل التواصل الاجتماعي.

Gen Z-Alpha

الجيل زد/ألفا

يشمل المولودين تقريباً من عام ١٩٩٧ حتى اليوم. نشأ هذا الجيل في عالم شديد الرقمية، محاطاً بالإنترنت ووسائل التواصل الاجتماعي والهواتف الذكية والتطبيقات، وصولاً إلى الذكاء الاصطناعي.

Vocabulary Builder

ادرس مفردات اللغة جيداً
حيث إنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.



Definitions التعريفات

connect	يتصل	to join or link ⁽¹⁾ with someone or something	(1) يربط
curious	فضول	wanting to know or learn something	
fair	معرض	an event ⁽²⁾ when people gather ⁽³⁾ to show something	(2) حدث
far apart	بعيداً	being in a distant ⁽⁴⁾ place	(3) يتجمع
identity	هوية	this is who you are	
include	يتضمن	to be part of something	(4) بعيد
in common	في أمور مشتركة	having the same ideas and interests ⁽⁵⁾	
passionate	شغوف/متحمس	very strong feeling or excitement ⁽⁶⁾ about something	(5) اهتمامات
permission	إذن	being allowed ⁽⁷⁾ to do something	(6) إثارة
smartphone	هاتف ذكي	a mobile phone that people use to connect to the internet	
special	خاص	different from others in a good way	(7) مسموح

Words and Synonyms الكلمات ومرادفها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
afraid (adj)	خائف	scared	خائف
annoy (ed) (v)	يضايق/يزعج	upset	يضايق/يزعج

Suffix اللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Suffix اللاحقة	الوظيفة Function	The new word الكلمة الجديدة
create (v)	يبتكر	-or	تحول الفعل إلى اسم فاعل	creator (n) مبتكر
fair (adj)	عادل	-ness	تحول الصفة إلى اسم	fairness (n) عدل

B Reading & Listening Skills

Lesson 3

Pre-reading questions:

- 1 How often do you use the internet?
- 2 What do you use it for?

 Read the following text.

SB page 18

The Gen Z-Alpha Bridge: How Digital Trends Unite Young Generations

Generation Z and Generation Alpha are two young generations in the world today. Gen Z **includes**⁽¹⁾ people born between 1997 and 2012. Gen Alpha includes children born from 2010 till now. Even though they are different ages, they have some important things **in common**⁽²⁾—they are growing up in a digital world.

Both generations use **smartphones**⁽³⁾, tablets, and computers every day. They like watching videos on YouTube, using apps, and playing online games. Social media and online games help them **connect**⁽⁴⁾, learn, and have fun with others - even if they live **far apart**⁽⁵⁾.

Digital trends like short videos, emojis, and memes are popular with both groups. Many Gen Z and Gen Alpha kids also care about the environment, being kind, and treating people with fairness. They often use technology to share their thoughts and support important **cases**⁽⁶⁾.

Even though Gen Z is older than Gen Alpha, both generations speak the same digital language. Technology helps them understand each other and work together to make the world a better place.

Post-reading questions:

SB

Read the text again. Then, in pairs choose the correct answer.

- 1 What is the passage mostly about?
 - a) Playing sports.
 - b) Digital trends connecting Gen Z and Gen Alpha.
 - c) Traveling to different countries.
 - d) How to use a computer.
- 2 When were Gen Z people born?
 - a) 2000 to 2020.
 - b) 1990 to 2000.
 - c) 1997 to 2012.
 - d) 2010 to 2025.
- 3 What do Gen Z and Gen Alpha both enjoy?
 - a) Riding bikes.
 - b) Using digital devices and apps.
 - c) Reading newspapers.
 - d) Playing only board games.



(1) يشمل

(2) مشترك

(3) هواتف ذكية

(4) يتواصل

(5) على مسافة بعيدة

(6) قضايا/حالات

Pre-reading questions:

- 1 Is it good or bad to be curious?
- 2 What should you do before downloading something from the internet?

 Read the following text. Why do children call Amal "strange"? **SB page 20**

CHAPTER ONE:

The Creative Fair

In a colorful village, there lived a **curious**⁽¹⁾ girl named Amal. Amal loved to build things. Her room was full of old toys, **wires**⁽²⁾, and little **machines**⁽³⁾ she had created. Sometimes, the other children **annoyed**⁽⁴⁾ her and said, "You are strange." But Amal's parents always told her, "Your identity is what makes you special. Never be afraid to express who you are."

What did Amal love doing?

One day, the teacher **announced**⁽⁵⁾ a "Creative Fair"⁽⁶⁾. Each child had to present something they were **passionate**⁽⁷⁾ about. Amal decided to build a talking robot! She was excited but also worried. "What if others laugh at me again?" she thought. Her best friend, Yara, encouraged her, "Just be yourself, Amal. We believe in you."

What did Amal decide to build?

Amal started working day and night. She also made sure to use the internet safely while looking for ideas, remembering her digital **responsibility**⁽⁸⁾. She asked for **permission**⁽⁹⁾ before downloading anything and never shared her personal information.

What do you think we should do to stay safe online?



- | | | |
|-----------|-------------|-----------------|
| (1) فضولى | (2) أسلاك | (3) آلات |
| (4) أزعج | (5) أعلن عن | (6) معرض إبداعي |
| (7) شغوف | (8) مسئولية | (9) إذن |

Story Time Q & A

Answer the following questions:

1. What kind of things did Amal like to build?

ما أنواع الأشياء التي كانت أمل تحب بناءها؟

- Amal liked to build things with old toys, wires, and little machines.

2. How did Amal feel when she thought other children would laugh at her?

كيف شعرت أمل عندما اعتقدت أن الأطفال الآخرين سيضحكون عليها؟

- Amal felt worried that others would laugh at her.

3. What was the "Creative Fair" about?

عن ماذا كان «المعرض الإبداعي»؟

- The "Creative Fair" was an event where each child had to present something they were passionate about.

4. How did Yara help Amal feel better?

كيف ساعدت يارا أمل على أن تشعر بتحسن؟

- Yara encouraged Amal and told her to just be herself.

5. What steps did Amal take to stay safe online?

ما هي الخطوات التي اتخذتها أمل للبقاء آمنة على الإنترنت؟

- Amal asked for permission before downloading things and never shared her personal information.

Critical thinking questions:

1. What do you think of Amal?

ما رأيك في أمل؟

- Amal is a creative and brave girl who is not afraid to be herself.

2. Why did Amal ask for permission before downloading anything?

لماذا طلبت أمل الإذن قبل تنزيل أي شيء؟

- She asked for permission to be safe online and to show digital responsibility.

3. What do you admire about Amal's actions and choices?

ماذا يعجبك في تصرفات أمل وخياراتها؟

- I admire that Amal is passionate and brave even when she is worried.

4. Why do you think it's important to have a friend like Yara?

لماذا تعتقد أنه من المهم أن يكون لديك أصدقاء مثل يارا؟

- Because he encourages me to be myself and believe in me.

5. How do you think the "Creative Fair" will change how the other children see Amal?

كيف تعتقد أن المعرض الإبداعي سيغير نظرة الأطفال الآخرين إلى أمل؟

- It shows them that Amal's interests are special and interesting.



1 Match the words from column A with their meanings from column B:

A

1. identity
2. passionate
3. permission
4. curious
5. fair
6. special

B

- a) wanting to know or learn something
- b) an event when people gather to show something
- c) very strong feeling or excitement about something
- d) this is who you are
- e) being allowed to do something
- f) different from others in a good way

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Amal was
 a) lazy b) shy c) curious d) weak
2. Amal's parents always advised her to herself.
 a) tease b) express c) punish d) face
3. Yara Amal to be herself.
 a) shared b) believed c) encouraged d) warned
4. Amal asked permission before downloading anything.
 a) on b) in c) at d) for

3 Answer the following questions:

1. What kind of things did Amal like to build?

2. How did Amal feel when she thought other children would laugh at her?

3. What was the "Creative Fair" about?

4. How did Yara help Amal feel better?

5. What steps did Amal take to stay safe online?

6. What do you think of Amal?

7. Why did Amal ask for permission before downloading anything?

8. What do you admire about Amal's actions and choices?

1 Vocabulary building:

Meaning/Synonym – Opposite/Antonym

ارجع للقطعة ص 30-31 وحاول أن تستخرج منها كلمات متشابهة أو متضادة في المعنى للكلمات التالية:

Meaning/Synonym		Opposite/Antonym	
include	يشمل/يتضمن	young	صغير
annoy	يضايق	important	هام
start	يبدأ	far	بعيد

2 Comprehension strategies:

في هذا الجزء سنقدم مهارة التفكير النقدي وكيفية التعامل مع أسئلتها:

- What is critical thinking?

ما مهارة التفكير النقدي؟

- هي عملية تحليل وتقييم المعلومات التي جمعت من خلال الملاحظة وبناء رأي نقدي شخصي على ما تم قراءته من معلومات في النص، ودائمًا ما تكون إجابة هذه النوعية من الأسئلة غير مرتبطة بإجابة واحدة، ولكن تعتمد الإجابة على فهمك وتحليلك للمعلومات الواردة بالفقرة أو النص.

FOR EXAMPLE:

Amal started working day and night. She also made sure to use the internet safely while looking for ideas, remembering her digital responsibility. She asked for permission before downloading anything and never shared her personal information.

- Why do you think Amal is a careful girl?

(مهارة التفكير النقدي)

.....

.....

.....

.....

3 Translation:

A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

اختر الترجمة العربية الصحيحة:

- Gen Alpha includes children born from 2010 till now.

☐

- يشمل جيل ألفا الأطفال المولودين من عام ٢٠١٠ حتى الآن.

☐

- يشمل جيل ألفا الشباب المولودين قبل عام ٢٠١٠ فما قبل.

B) Choose the correct English translation:

اختر الترجمة الإنجليزية الصحيحة:

- بدأت أمل العمل ليلاً ونهارًا.

☐

Amal started working day and night.

☐

Amal started working only in the morning.

LESSON

3

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The new will connect the two parts of the city.
 a) pyramid b) bridge c) tower d) park
- My dream is to become a/an and make fun cartoons for children.
 a) tennis player b) online creator c) doctor d) teacher
- means wanting to know or learn something.
 a) Lazy b) Shy c) Curious d) Usual
- The scientist invented a/an that could turn salt water into fresh water.
 a) idea b) dream c) advice d) device
- It is important to the wires correctly for the lamp to turn on.
 a) discover b) connect c) invent d) contact
- Good friends always care each other's feelings.
 a) about b) over c) into d) against
- The price of the ticket a drink and a small snack.
 a) explores b) encourages c) includes d) wonders
- Volunteers should to help the community.
 a) unite b) represent c) fail d) feel
- The bad weather will our plans for a picnic in the park today.
 a) explore b) encourage c) affect d) wonder
- A is like a small computer that you can hold in your own hand.
 a) fan b) smartphone c) television d) keyboard

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

unite – creator – far – affect – include

The Gen Z-Alpha bridge is built through digital tools that help young people stay close, even when they live (1) apart. Many children today use a smartphone not only for fun, but also for learning new things. An online (2) on YouTube may encourage them to try new hobbies. These activities (3) games, music, and art that connect different sides of life. This digital bridge helps (4) generations.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Loud noise me when I am studying.
a) learns b) annoys c) creates d) makes
2. Children are always and ask many questions about the world.
a) weak b) curious c) worried d) afraid
3. I want to a new game onto my tablet to play during the break.
a) upload b) erase c) download d) face
4. Small can make a big difference.
a) actions b) games c) toys d) wires
5. The teacher will the exam result before the bell rings.
a) take b) appear c) announce d) punish
6. You must your fears to become a stronger person inside.
a) face b) present c) tease d) warn
7. games are a great way to spend free time.
a) Board b) Work c) Afraid d) Fair
8. My mother will me for drawing on the wall.
a) present b) admire c) stay d) punish
9. It is not nice to your little brother. Be kind to him.
a) tease b) announce c) advise d) stay
10. Salma and Jana are sisters, so they have a lot common.
a) in b) on c) at d) for

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

admired – did – built – in – tease

Mona was always curious about how machines worked. One day, she
 (1) a small car using wires and a battery. Her brother tried to
 (2) her, but she didn't feel annoyed. Instead, she smiled and said, "I
 believe (3) my ideas." Later, she showed her project at the Creative Fair.
 Everyone (4) her strong identity as a young inventor.



Talking about the activities that both Gen Z and Gen Alpha do a lot
الحديث عن الأنشطة التي يمارسها كل من الجيل زد والجيل ألفا كثيرًا



What digital devices do you think both generations Z and Alpha use?

ما هي الأجهزة الرقمية التي تعتقد أن الجيل زد والجيل ألفا يستخدمانها؟

I think they both use smartphones, tablets, and computers every day.

أعتقد أنهم يستخدمون الهواتف الذكية والأجهزة اللوحية وأجهزة الكمبيوتر يوميًا.



How do popular trends or online creators affect what young people like or do?

كيف تؤثر الاتجاهات الشعبية أو صناع المحتوى على الإنترنت على ما يحبه الشباب أو يفعلونه؟

They show new ideas, games, and activities, and children often try them.

إنهم يعرضون أفكارًا جديدة وألعابًا وأنشطة، وغالبًا ما يجرب الأطفال هذه الأشياء.



What are some good and bad sides of using a lot of screen time?

ما هي بعض الجوانب الجيدة والسيئة لاستخدام الكثير من الوقت أمام الشاشات؟

Good sides: learning, fun, and connecting with friends.

Bad sides: tired eyes, less exercise, and distraction.

الجوانب الجيدة: التعلم، المرح، التواصل مع الأصدقاء. الجوانب السيئة: إرهاق العينين، قلة الحركة، التشتت.



What do you use the internet for?

لمَ تستخدم الإنترنت؟

I use it to watch videos, play games, and learn new things.

أستخدمه لمشاهدة الفيديوهات، ولعب الألعاب، وتعلم أشياء جديدة.

Speaking Exercise

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analyzing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Complete the following dialog:

► Sara likes to watch funny cartoons. She is asking Ahmed.

Ahmed : What do you like to do after school?

Sara : I like to play video games. What about you?

Ahmed : (1).....

Sara : Oh, I watch videos on YouTube, too! (2).....?

Ahmed : I like channels about science and experiments. And you?

Sara : (3).....

Ahmed : (4).....?

Sara : Yes, I do. I ride it every weekend.

Ahmed : We have a lot in common, don't we?

Sara : (5).....

Writing about How Digital Trends Unite Young Generations

الكتابة عن كيف توحد الاتجاهات الرقمية الأجيال الشابة

- 1. How do Gen Z and Gen Alpha use digital devices?** كيف يستخدم كلا الجيلين الأجهزة الرقمية؟
 • They use smartphones, tablets, and computers to watch videos, play games, and learn new things.
 يستخدمون الهواتف الذكية والأجهزة اللوحية وأجهزة الكمبيوتر لمشاهدة الفيديوهات ولعب الألعاب وتعلم أشياء جديدة.
- 2. What do online creators do?** ماذا يفعل صناع المحتوى على الإنترنت؟
 • Online creators make videos, share ideas, and teach skills on platforms like YouTube.
 يصنع صناع المحتوى الفيديوهات، ويشاركون الأفكار، ويعلمون المهارات على منصات مثل يوتيوب.
- 3. What activities do both generations share?** ما الأنشطة التي يشترك فيها كلا الجيلين؟
 • They share activities like watching videos, playing online games, reading, doing experiments, or learning new skills.
 يشتركان في أنشطة، مثل: مشاهدة الفيديوهات، ولعب الألعاب على الإنترنت، وقراءة الكتب، وإجراء التجارب، أو تعلم مهارات جديدة.
- 4. Why is it important to stay safe online?** لماذا من المهم البقاء آمنًا على الإنترنت؟
 • It is important because it protects personal information and helps us enjoy digital activities safely.
 لأنه يحمي المعلومات الشخصية ويساعدنا على الاستمتاع بالأنشطة الرقمية بأمان.
- 5. How can students start their paragraph?** كيف يمكن للطلاب أن يبدعوا فقرتهم؟
 • They can start with: "Digital trends help young generations connect and share ideas."
 يمكنهم البدء بـ: «الاتجاهات الرقمية تساعد الأجيال الشابة على التواصل ومشاركة الأفكار.»
- 6. What can be the last sentence of the paragraph?** ماذا يمكن أن تكون الجملة الأخيرة في الفقرة؟
 • A good ending is: "These trends unite Gen Z and Alpha and help them learn, play, and enjoy together."
 جملة مناسبة للنهاية: «توحد هذه الاتجاهات الجيل زد والجيل ألفا وتساعدهم على التعلم واللعب والاستمتاع معًا.»

استخدم الأفكار السابقة لكتابة فقرتك:

"How Digital Trends Unite Young Generations"

Digital trends help children from Gen Z and Gen Alpha connect and share ideas. Both generations use smartphones, tablets, and computers to watch videos, play games, and learn new things. Online creators make fun and educational videos that teach skills and show new activities. These trends give children common interests even if they are far apart. They can share thoughts, support each other, and enjoy fun activities safely. Digital trends help young generations unite, learn, play, and have fun together every day.

1 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

announced – special – colorful – do – be

Sara was passionate about drawing. Her notebook was always full of (1) pictures. When her friends would laugh at her designs, she stayed strong. She whispered to herself, "Always (2) yourself." At the school show, the teacher (3) her name and presented her with a prize. Sara's actions showed that creativity and confidence are always (4)

2 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

The bridge between Gen Z and Gen Alpha is stronger than many people think. Technology has created a case where generations can stay close, even if they live in different places. Smartphones and other devices allow them to talk, play, and learn together. Online creators on YouTube include music, stories, and games that are popular with both sides. But children are not always online. They enjoy board games, sports, and reading. Pets are another way they care about life around them. Both generations treat each other with kindness and fairness, which unites them even more.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The passage mainly tells us that Gen Z and Alpha
a) only play online games
b) are united through technology and values
c) never care about pets
d) don't enjoy board games
- Online creators include that children enjoy.
a) games and music
b) bikes
c) fairness
d) newspapers

B) Answer the following questions:

3. Give a suitable title to the passage.

4. What does the underlined pronoun "them" refer to?

5. How can pets help teach responsibility to young people?

6. Summarize the text in two sentences.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. It is good to your thoughts with a parent when you feel worried.
a) have b) share c) think d) do
2. You need from your parents to go on the trip.
a) decision b) permission c) action d) opinion
3. We must be very quiet because we to our teacher now.
a) are listening b) is listening c) listen d) listens
4. I to my friend's house to play video games tomorrow as prepared.
a) go b) am going c) is going d) went

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Hazem (wait) for the school bus at the corner now.
2. That man (not/paint) the fence; he is fixing it.
3. (Does) Basmala taking a photo of the beautiful sunset?
4. My mother (buy) vegetables at the market right now.

5 Write a paragraph of (90-100) words on:

"How digital trends work as a bridge"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



Challenging Questions

مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب.

Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets:

1. Huda works on her school project about ancient Egypt. (at this moment)
.....
2. Eman sings songs every afternoon with her music group. (now)
.....
3. Said has arranged to have a big party for his birthday next week. (is having)
.....
4. Hend writes a nice letter to her best friend. (right now)
.....

Assess your progress ★★★★★

< 50% Study again

50 : 64% Practice more

65 : 84% Take more exams

85 : 100% Well done!

A VOCABULARY LESSONS 5&6

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

chat (ted) (v)	يحدث	describe (d) (v)	يصف
control (led) (v)	يتحكم في	left out (adj)	مستبعد/مُهمَل
daily (adj/adv)	يومي/يوميًا	research (ed) (v)	يجري بحثًا

Additional Vocabulary المفردات الإضافية

advice (n)	نصيحة	health (n)	صحة
blog (n)	مدونة	including (prep)	مشملاً/بما في ذلك
blogger (n)	مُدَوِّن	meal (n)	وجبة
funny (adj)	مضحك	tips (n)	نصائح/إرشادات
handle (d) (v)	يتعامل مع		

Language Expressions & Prepositions التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

add to	يضيف إلى	handle ... with	يتعامل مع ... بـ
agree with	يتفق مع	in my opinion	في رأيي
build digital habits	يكون عادات رقمية	on a screen	على الشاشة
check social media	يتفقد وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي	put ... away	يُبْعِد
do sports	يمارس الرياضة	refer to	يشير إلى
find a balance	يجد توازناً	stay balanced	يبقى متوازناً
follow online trends	يتبع الترندي عبر الإنترنت	thanks for	شكراً على
from a very young age	منذ سن مبكرة جداً		

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past simple	Past participle
let يسمح/يدع	let	let
send يرسل	sent	sent

Words and Opposites الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
agree	يوافق	disagree	لا يوافق
careful	حذر/حريص	careless	مهمل
healthy	صحي	unhealthy	غير صحي
outside	خارج	inside	داخل

Checkpoint

Read and complete with a word from the list:

funny – tips – feel – follow

- 1 Here are some easy to follow to help you grow plants.
- 2 A lot of teenagers love to online trends to find new styles.
- 3 The cartoon is full of characters.

Language Notes

- 1 **a + year-old + اسم مفرد** (السن هنا صفة للاسم الذي بعده)
• We're talking to Saja, a 14-year-old student.

- 2 **let + inf.** يسمح/يدع
• Don't let social media control you.

Vocabulary Builder

Definitions التعريفات

ادرس مفردات اللغة جيداً
حيث إنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.



blog	مدونة	an online journal or website where someone writes regularly about a topic
blogger	مدون	a person who writes a blog

Words and Synonyms الكلمات ومرادفها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
daily (adj/adv)	يومي/يومية	everyday/every day	يومي/يومية
left out (adj)	مستبعد/مُهمَل/غير مدرج	ignored	مهمل

Suffix اللاحقة

Word الكلمة	Suffix اللاحقة	Function الوظيفة	The new word الكلمة الجديدة
balance (v/n) يوازن/توازن	-ed	تحويل الاسم/الفعل إلى صفة	balanced (adj) متوازن
care (n) رعاية/حذر	-less	تحويل إلى العكس	careless (adj) مهممل
include (v) يتضمن	-ing	تحويل الفعل إلى صفة	including (prep) مشتمل/بما في ذلك

Prefix البادئة

Prefix البادئة	Word الكلمة	Function الوظيفة	The new word الكلمة الجديدة
dis-	agree (v) يوافق	تحويل إلى العكس	disagree (v) لا يوافق
un-	healthy (adj) صحي		unhealthy (adj) غير صحي

B Reading & Listening Skills

Pre-reading question:

- How do you try to balance your screen time with other activities you do?

 Read the following dialog.

Lesson 5

SB page 22

Finding Balance - An Interview About Digital Habits

Host Today we're talking to Saja, a 14-year-old student, about how her generation, often called digital natives, is handling life with technology. Hi, Saja!

Saja Hi! Thanks for having me with you today.

Host So, how much screen time do you usually have each day?

Saja I think around 5 to 6 hours, including homework. I use my smartphone for doing my homework, researching, chatting, and sometimes watching memes or short videos.

Host Many students follow online trends or post using emojis. Do you think that's good or bad?

Saja I think that using emojis and memes can be funny and creative.

Host Do you ever try to find a balance between real life and screen time?

Saja Yes, I try. I put my phone away during meals. In my opinion, we should limit screen time before bed. I also try to spend more time outside with friends or do sports.

Host That's great advice! Any tips for other students?

Saja Just be careful! It's okay to enjoy your screen, but don't let it control you.



Post-reading questions:

SB

- How does Saja describe her daily screen time?
- Do you agree with Saja's tips about using screens carefully? Why or why not?

Lesson 5

SB page 23

 Read the short conversation below. Then switch roles:

Student A I think our screen time is fine. We're digital natives! It's how we learn, chat, and have fun.

Student B That's true, but too much time on smartphones can be unhealthy. I think we need more balance in our day.

Student A I love checking social media and sending emojis and funny memes.

Student B I get it, but we should also enjoy life offline.

Lesson 5

SB page 23

 Practice:

Zeinab Hey Lujain, how many hours do you spend on your screen time every day?

Lujain Hmm ... maybe four or five hours. I like watching videos and sending memes and emojis to my friends.

Zeinab I get it, but don't you think that's too much use of your **smartphone**?

Lujain Maybe! But we're digital natives. Our **generation** grew up with phones and tablets. It's normal!

Zeinab That's true, but we still need balance. Too much screen time isn't good for our health.

Lujain I understand, but it's also how I **connect** with people. I don't want to feel left out.

Zeinab I know. I just think we should build better **digital habits** like putting the phone away during meals or before bed.

Lujain Yeah, you're right. That's a good idea. Some **trends** online are fun, but we also need real-life time together.

Pre-reading questions:

1 How is today's young generation changing the way we live and communicate?

.....

2 Does Gen Alpha spend a day without using technology?

.....

 Read the following blog and complete with a suitable word from the box above.

SB page 24

Sunday October 3rd

How wonderful the generation of today is! Gen Alpha refers to children born around 2010. They are true **digital** natives because they grow up using technology from a very young age. They follow the latest **trends**, like watching short videos, using **emojis**, and playing online **games**. They spend a lot of screen time on their **smartphones**, tablets, and computers. This makes them connect with others and learn new things. Many Gen Alpha kids have things **in common** with Generation Z, like caring about the environment and using technology in daily life. They are learning to find a **balance** between using screens and enjoying real-world activities.

Post-reading questions:

SB

1 What does the text say about Generation Alpha's relationship with technology?

.....

2 According to the text, what are some of the online trends that Gen Alpha kids follow?

.....

3 How does using technology help Generation Alpha?

.....

LESSONS

586

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Fatima likes to memes and emojis to her friends daily.
a) send b) do c) enjoy d) watch
- I use an app to with people around the world.
a) describe b) chat c) change d) send
- Parents often try to how much time their children spend on phones.
a) send b) let c) feel d) control
- Some children feel when their friends do not invite them to games.
a) funny b) left out c) unhealthy d) healthy
- Many teenagers online trends to stay updated with new challenges.
a) feel b) do c) follow d) send
- The recipe is simple and delicious, fruits, vegetables, and grains for nutrition.
a) paying b) appearing c) including d) taking
- Eating fruits and vegetables every day helps children stay strong and
a) healthy b) unhealthy c) careful d) careless
- Friends sometimes share for solving problems quickly and avoiding mistakes.
a) tips b) habits c) types d) meals
- My sister wrote a about her favorite hobbies and weekend activities.
a) blog b) tip c) meal d) board
- Children should a balance between studying and playing daily.
a) do b) find c) send d) enjoy

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

daily – chat – meal – handle – tips

Finding balance is very important when using technology daily. Fatima likes to (1) with her friends online, but she also knows she should do sports to stay healthy. Her teacher gave her some (2) on how to control screen time. She also writes in her blog about her (3) routine. Fatima tries to enjoy a screen with balance and always has a healthy (4) before bedtime.

PRACTICE MORE



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1. Reading e-books a screen needs short breaks to avoid hurting eyes.
a) on b) in c) of d) during
2. Basmala likes to memes and videos for entertainment after homework.
a) do b) watch c) fear d) wash
3. Children should avoid playing games smartphones for too many hours daily.
a) during b) in c) at d) on
4. my opinion, music makes people happy and relaxed.
a) For b) At c) In d) On
5. Parents often remind kids to social media safely.
a) build b) watch c) check d) feel
6. Students who are with their homework often lose marks for mistakes.
a) healthy b) careful c) careless d) unhealthy
7. Children should digital habits from a very young age for safe use.
a) send b) do c) see d) build
8. We should put our electronic devices when we don't use them.
a) in b) away c) on d) at
9. It is important to safe online.
a) enjoy b) stay c) do d) send
10. She knows how to difficult situations.
a) let b) use c) fear d) handle

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

including – away – to – find – researches

Samir wants to build digital habits that help him stay balanced. He often (1) online about health and time management. Sometimes, he watches memes for fun, (2) some funny clips that make him laugh. He knows he should put his phone (3) during homework. In my opinion, it's good to (4) a balance between online games and outdoor activities.



Using polite disagreement to express your opinion

استخدام عدم الاتفاق المهذب للتعبير عن رأيك

- **In my opinion, ...** ففي رأيي, ...
In my opinion, we should limit screen time before bed.
- **I think ...** أعتقد ...
I think our screen time is fine. We're digital natives!
- **For example, ...** على سبيل المثال, ...
For example, I stop using my phone one hour before I sleep.
- **True, but ...** صحيح, ولكن ...
True, but too much time on smartphones can be unhealthy.
- **That's true, but in my opinion ...** هذا صحيح, ولكن في رأيي ...
That's true, but in my opinion we still need balance.
- **I understand, but I prefer...** أفهم, ولكن أفضل ...
I understand, but I prefer playing a quick game first to relax.
- **I get it, but ...** أفهم, ولكن ...
I get it, but we should also enjoy life offline.
- **I understand, but ...** أفهم, ولكن ...
I understand, but it's also how I connect with people.

Speaking Exercise

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analyzing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Complete the following dialog:

► Ali and Sara are discussing spending the afternoon.

Ali : Do you think we should play video games all afternoon?

Sara : (1)..... I prefer playing outside first.

Ali : Really? But the game is so fun!

Sara : (2)....., we need exercise, too.

Ali : Okay! (3).....?

Sara : That's a good idea! I prefer playing after a walk, too.

Ali : (4).....?

Sara : Yes, we can. I have got my football.

Ali : Fine! Let's meet this afternoon.

Sara : (5).....

How to balance your digital habits كيف توازن بين عاداتك الرقمية

1. What are digital habits?

ما هي العادات الرقمية؟

- Digital habits are the ways we use phones, tablets, computers, and the internet every day.
- العادات الرقمية هي الطرق التي نستخدم بها الهواتف، الأجهزة اللوحية، الكمبيوتر، والإنترنت كل يوم.

2. Why is it important to balance your digital habits?

لماذا من المهم موازنة العادات الرقمية؟

- It is important because too much screen time can be unhealthy, and balance helps us stay happy and healthy.
- هذا مهم لأن الإفراط في استخدام الشاشات قد يكون غير صحي، والموازنة تساعدنا على البقاء سعداء وأصحاء.

3. How much time should we spend on screens daily?

كم من الوقت يجب أن نقضيه أمام الشاشات يوميًا؟

- Maybe one or two hours for learning and entertainment, not all day.
- ربما ساعة أو ساعتان للتعلم والترفيه، وليس طوال اليوم.

4. What can we do to control screen time?

ماذا يمكننا أن نفعل للتحكم في وقت استخدام الشاشات؟

- We can put devices away before bed, do sports, and plan screen time carefully.
- يمكننا إبعاد الأجهزة قبل النوم، ممارسة الرياضة، والتخطيط لوقت استخدام الشاشات بعناية.

5. What are some healthy habits to follow online?

ما هي بعض العادات الصحية التي يجب اتباعها على الإنترنت؟

- Checking social media politely, sending emojis or memes carefully, and following online trends safely.
- تفقد وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي بأدب، إرسال الرموز التعبيرية أو الميمز بحذر، واتباع الترنكات عبر الإنترنت بأمان.

استخدم الأفكار السابقة لكتابة فقرتك:

"Balancing digital habits"

In my opinion, digital habits are how we use phones, tablets, and computers every day. It is important to balance screen time because too much can be unhealthy. We can put devices away before bed, do sports, and enjoy videos or games in moderation. Checking social media politely and following trends safely helps us use technology smartly. During meals or before sleep, we should focus on resting or eating. By building good digital habits, we can enjoy both online fun and real-life activities.

Lessons (5 & 6)

Omar : (5)

Every day, Laila checks her social media carefully. She likes to (1) _____ emojis to her friends and chat for a short time. She follows her favorite (2) _____ online and reads interesting posts. Parents remind her to (3) _____ her time on smartphones. She tries to do sports in the morning and always eats a healthy meal (4) _____ bed. Maybe one day, she will write her own blog about digital habits.

d) funny

3. I wrote down all the teacher's about homework to read later carefully.

a) habit

b) advice

c) blog

d) meal

4. Manal shared a meme with her friends; they liked it so much.

a) funny

b) bad

c) healthy

d) silly

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Are you (go) to the library with your dad this afternoon?

2. The sun (shine) very brightly this morning.

3. My mom (cook) a special dinner for us tonight right now.

4. He (not/feel) well, so he is resting in bed today.

5 Write a paragraph of (90-100) words on:

"How to balance screen time"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



Challenging Questions

مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب.

Find the mistake in the following sentences and correct it:

1. The baby crying because he wants his bottle of milk. (.....)

2. The birds sings sweetly outside my bedroom window right now. (.....)

3. Shahd and her sister is making a snowman in the garden. (.....)

Assess your progress ★★★★★

< 50% Study again

50 : 64% Practice more

65 : 84% Take more exams

85 : 100% Well done!

A

Reading

1 Read the short text and answer the questions:

Gen Alpha spends a lot of time online. They like watching videos, creating content, and chatting with friends. They also use emojis and memes to show how they feel. Many parents try to limit screen time, but also want kids to learn important digital skills.

(A) What things does Gen Alpha like doing online? Name 2.

1.

2.

(B) Why do you think parents want to limit screen time?

.....

B

Vocabulary

2 Match the words from column A with their meanings from column B:

A

1. digital native
2. trend
3. emoji
4. connect
5. screen time

B

- a) the amount of time spent using a device
- b) join or link with someone
- c) a small icon or image to show feelings online
- d) someone who grows up using technology
- e) a popular new idea or style

C

Language

3 Choose the correct verb tense:

1. Heba (used/is using) social media now.
2. Right now, Ahmed (watches/is watching) short videos.
3. Look! They (share/are sharing) memes with their friends.
4. At the moment, I (do/am doing) my homework online.
5. I (do/am doing) my homework online at the moment.

Vocabulary

annoy (v) (ied) (v)	يضايق/يزعج
balance (d) (v)	يوازن
communicate (d) (v)	يتواصل
connection (n)	اتصال
constantly (adv)	باستمرار
content (n)	محتوى
control (led) (v)	يتحكم فيه
curious (adj)	فضول
digital native (n)	مواطن رقمي
download (ed) (v)	يتحمل
encourage (d) (v)	يشجع
explore (d) (v)	يستكشف
generation (n)	جيل
identity (n)	هوية
include (d) (v)	يتضمن/يشمل على
left out (adj)	مستبعد/مهمّل
online creator (n)	صانع محتوى على الإنترنت
passionate (adj)	شغوف/متحمّس
permission (n)	إذن/تصريح
personal (adj)	شخصي
powerful (adj)	قوي
real-life (adj)	حياة واقعية
research (ed) (v)	يجري بحثاً
responsibility (n)	مسئولية
sail (ed) (v)	يسبح
unite (d) (v)	يوحد/يتحد
wonder (ed) (v)	يتعجب/يتساءل

Language

The Present Continuous Tense

لزمان المضارع المستمر

Form:

Subject + am/is/are + v + ing

e.g. I am watching TV now.

The baby is sleeping at the moment.

Look! The birds are flying in the sky.

Negative:

Subject + am not/isn't/aren't + v + ing

e.g. I'm not eating my breakfast right now.

Your younger brother isn't crying.

The children aren't studying for their exams these days.

a) Yes/No question:

Am + I + v + ing ...?

e.g. Am I making too much noise?

Is + am/are/he/she/it + v + ing ...?

e.g. Is Ali working on the project right now?

Are + am/are/we/they + v + ing ...?

e.g. Are the children coming over for dinner?

b) Wh-questions:

Q. word + is + am/he/she/it + v + ing ...?

e.g. When is Hala meeting her friend for coffee?

Q. word + are + am/are/we/they

+ v + ing ...?

e.g. Where are they going on their vacation?

Skills

1. Expressing opinion on Gen Alpha's digital life

A: What do you know about Gen Alpha?

B: They're digital natives because they learn to use technology before they can read.

A: Why do Gen Alpha children use social media?

B: They use social media to connect with friends, share ideas, and have fun.

A: Why is Gen Alpha called "digital natives"?

B: Because they grow up with technology and use it naturally every day.

2. Asking and answering questions about

students' own and others' digital lives

A: How often do you use technology?

B: I use it every day for school, games, and talking to friends.

A: How much screen time do you usually have each day?

B: I spend more than 8 hours using technology devices.

A: What kind of content do you watch or listen to?

B: I watch cartoons, YouTube videos, and listen to music.

3. Using polite disagreement to express your opinion

In my opinion, ...

In my opinion, we should limit screen time before bed.

I think ...

I think our screen time is fine. We're digital natives!

For example, ...

For example, I stop using my phone one hour before I sleep.

True, but ...

True, but too much time on smartphones can be unhealthy.

That's true, but in my opinion ...

That's true, but in my opinion we still need balance.

I understand, but I prefer ...

I understand, but I prefer playing a quick game first to relax.

I get it, but ...

I get it, but we should also enjoy life offline.

I understand, but ...

I understand, but it's also how I connect with people.

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

device – connect – affect – effect – share

In many families, Gen Z and Alpha children care about fairness when they play or (1)..... ideas online. Sometimes, a board game teaches patience, while a digital (2)..... allows them to chat instantly. The new case of children spending more time online shows how technology can (3)..... friendships. But the important part is that these tools (4)..... people, build trust, and unite young generations together.

4 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

Gen Alpha is the youngest generation today. They were born after 2010 and are growing up with technology all around them. They are sometimes called **digital natives** because they use tablets, phones, and computers from a very young age. Gen Alpha loves to explore new apps and games. They also like to communicate with friends using emojis and short messages. But teachers and parents often remind them to **balance** screen time with real-life activities. For example, they are encouraged to play sports, read books, or join fun activities in the community. Gen Alpha is powerful in shaping new trends, such as sharing memes or creating videos. They are currently changing the way people connect with each other across the world.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The main idea of the passage is that Gen Alpha
a) always plays sports b) is growing up with technology
c) writes many letters d) never uses social media
- Gen Alpha are called "**digital natives**" because they
a) travel a lot b) use technology from a young age
c) enjoy farming d) do not like books

B) Answer the following questions:

- What does Gen Alpha use to communicate with friends?
- What does the underlined word "**balance**" mean in the passage?
- Who encourages Gen Alpha to do activities outside of screens?
- Do you think spending too much time on screens is a good idea? Why or why not?

5

1. A strong internet is needed to watch a video without stopping.
a) skill b) community c) activity d) connection
2. Football is a sport. It's played all over the world.
a) global b) national c) local d) useless
3. This is a where we must be patient and wait for our turn to come.
a) role b) time c) position d) case
4. The child was to swim in the deep end of the pool without help; he is too young.
a) strong b) easy c) ready d) afraid
5. The children are happy because they a fun game now.
a) play b) is playing c) are playing d) plays
6. My sister her birthday party at the park next Saturday.
a) have b) has c) are having d) is having

6

1. I (not/do) my science project; I am working on my math homework.
2. What are Abdullah and Mostafa (talk) about so quietly?
3. I (get) ready for my friend's party at the moment.
4. The artist (not/draw) a person; she is drawing a house.

5

1. What did Amal love to do in her free time?
2. How did Amal's parents support her when other children annoyed her?

B

3. Amal's room was full of old toys, wires, and little she had created.
a) machines b) gardens c) stories d) books
4. Yara encouraged Amal to herself and believe in her abilities.
a) ignore b) hide c) be d) change

8

Unit 2

MY DIGITAL FOOTPRINT



LEARNING OUTCOMES

Reading

- Identify key details, main ideas, synonyms, antonyms, and words with prefixes in informational texts.
- Answer comprehension questions about online safety.

Listening

- Identify main ideas and supporting details from an audio.
- Demonstrate understanding by answering questions based on an audio content.

Speaking

- Engage in pair and group discussions about online habits and safety.
- Perform role-play scenarios, practicing how to respond to online risks.

Language

- Recognize and correctly use the present simple passive voice in context.
- Form passive voice sentences for giving advice or describing actions online.

Writing

- Write clear, well-organized tips for staying safe online using target vocabulary.
- Revise and proofread writing based on peer and self-feedback.
- Use correct spelling and grammar when expressing advice or opinions about online safety.

A VOCABULARY LESSON 1

• قم بدراسة المفردات الرئيسية جيدًا لدرجة الإلمان؛ حيث إنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.
• قم باختيار حفظك للمفردات عن طريق الرجوع إلى ملحق التقييم وتسميع الكلمات الخاصة بالدرس.

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

data (n)	بيانات	protected (adj)	مُحمى
digital age (n)	عصر رقمي	remove (d) (v)	يزيل
digital footprint (n)	البصمة الرقمية	secure (adj)	آمن/مؤمن
effect (n)	تأثير	setting (n)	إعداد
password (n)	كلمة مرور / كلمة سر	stranger (n)	غريب (شخص)
post (ed) (v)	ينشر	symbol (n)	رمز
privacy (n)	خصوصية	trace (n)	بصمة/ أثر
protect (ed) (v)	يحمي	updates (n)	تحديثات

Additional Vocabulary المفردات الإضافية

address (n)	عنوان (مكان)	information (n)	معلومة/معلومات
app (n)	تطبيق	phone number (n)	رقم الهاتف
change (d) (v)	يغير/يتغير	share (d) (v)	يشارك
exactly (adv)	بالفعل	website (n)	موقع إلكتروني

Language Expressions & Prepositions التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

careful about	حذر بشأن	follow tips	يتبع نصائح
talk to	يتكلم إلى/مع	leave a trace	يترك أثرًا/بصمة
think about/of	يعتقد/يفكر في	stay safe	يبقى آمنًا

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past simple	Past participle
keep يحافظ/يحتفظ	kept	kept
leave يترك/يفادر	left	left

Words and Opposites الكلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym) عكسها
hard صعب	easy سهل
remember يتذكر	forget ينسى
safe آمن	dangerous خطير
strong قوى	weak ضعيف

(n) = noun (adj) = adjective (prep) = preposition
(v) = verb (adv) = adverb (conj) = conjunction

لاحظ الاختصارات الآتية:

Read and complete with a word from the list:

on – about – follow – password

- 1 Please be careful crossing the street.
- 2 Never share your with anyone; it is a secret.
- 3 Make sure you these tips to stay safe online.

LESSON 2

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

adult (n/adj)	بالغ/راشد	respectful (adj)	محترم (لغيره)
block (ed) (v)	يحظر/يمنع/يسد	safety (n)	أمان/سلامة
breadcrumb (n)	فتات الخبز	secret code (n)	كود سري
experience (d) (v/n)	يمر بـ/تجربة/خبرة	security (n)	أمن/سلامة
guardian (n)	حامٍ/حارس/وصي	superhero (n)	بطل خارق
ignore (d) (v)	يتجاهل/يهمل	trail (n)	مسار/أثر
podcast (n)	حلقة صوتية/بودكاست	trusted (adj)	موثوق
private (adj)	خاص/شخصي		

Additional Vocabulary المفردات الإضافية

absolutely (adv)	تمامًا/حقًا/فعلاً	join (ed) (v)	ينضم إلى
account (n)	حساب	profile (n)	ملف شخصي
ads (n)	إعلانات	rule (n)	قاعدة
allow (ed) (v)	يسمح	upload (ed) (v)	يرفع/يحمل
behavior (n)	سلوك	web (n)	شبكة الإنترنت
completely (adv)	كليًا/بالكامل	widely (adv)	على نطاق واسع

Language Expressions & Prepositions التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

leave behind	يترك وراء/ يترك أثرًا	create a strong password	ينشئ كلمة مرور قوية
check privacy settings	يتحقق من إعدادات الخصوصية	have an effect	يحدث تأثيرًا
control privacy	يتحكم في خصوصية	leave a digital footprint	يترك بصمة رقمية
create a digital trail	ينشئ أثرًا رقميًا		

Read and complete with a word from the list:

to – for – private – rules

- 1 We stayed in a room at the hospital.
- 2 Teachers explain the school on the first day.
- 3 Welcome this exciting journey into space.

Language Notes

1 It's + adj. + to + inf.

- It's **important** to stay safe online.

2 keep/stay + adj.

يحافظ/يبقى

- To **keep** your information **safe**, you should use strong passwords.
- You should **stay** **safe** online.

3 allow (someone) + to + inf.

يسمح

- Privacy settings **allow** us to **block** ads completely.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Parents sometimes allow children tablets for learning.

a) using	b) use
c) to using	d) to use
- 2 It's helpful questions when you don't understand.

a) ask	b) asking
c) to ask	d) asked
- 3 Please keep your hands while the machine is working.

a) safe	b) safety
c) safely	d) unsafe



Definitions التعريفات

digital footprint بصمة رقمية	the path ⁽¹⁾ or history of your activities online	(1) ممر
privacy خصوصية	the state ⁽²⁾ of being free from public attention ⁽³⁾	(2) حالة
secure آمن	free from danger ⁽⁴⁾ or risk	(3) الاهتمام العام
password كلمة المرور	a secret ⁽⁵⁾ word or phrase used to access ⁽⁶⁾ personal information	(4) خطر
data بيانات	information processed ⁽⁷⁾ or stored ⁽⁸⁾ by a computer	(5) سرى
trace أثر/بصمة	a mark or impression ⁽⁹⁾ left by something	(6) يدخل
setting إعدادات	the environment in which something is set	(7) معالجة
private خاص	something that is personal and not meant to be shared with everyone	(8) مخزنة
trusted موثوق	believed to be honest ⁽¹⁰⁾	(9) انطباع
experience تجربة/خبرة	the knowledge ⁽¹¹⁾ or skill that you get from doing, seeing, or feeling things	(10) أمين
adult بالغ	a person who is fully grown up	(11) معرفة

Words and Synonyms الكلمات ومرادفها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
effect (n)	تأثير	impact	تأثير
remove (v)	يزيل	delete	يلغي

Suffix اللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Suffix	اللاحقة	Function	الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
inform (v)	يبلغ	-ation		تحويل الفعل/الصفة إلى اسم		information (n)	معلومة/معلومات
secure (adj)	آمن/مؤمن	-ity				security (n)	أمن/سلامة
respect (v/n)	يحترم/احترام	-ful		تحويل الفعل/الاسم إلى صفة		respectful (adj)	محترم (لغيره)
wide (adj)	واسع	-ly		تحويل الصفة إلى حال		widely (adv)	على نطاق واسع

B Reading & Listening Skills

Lesson 1

Pre-reading questions:

- 1 Do you use the internet?
- 2 What do you use it for?

 Read the following text. Guess the meanings of the words in bold. **SB page 28**

In today's world, the internet is a big part of our lives. We use it for school work, talking to friends, and having fun. But it's important to stay safe online. Here are some tips to help you protect your **privacy**⁽¹⁾ and keep your information **secure**⁽²⁾. Everything you do online leaves a **trace**⁽³⁾, like a **footprint**⁽⁴⁾. This includes the websites you visit and the things you post. Be careful about what you post because it can be hard to remove later. So, be careful about your digital footprint. To keep your information safe, you should use strong **passwords**⁽⁵⁾. A strong password has letters, numbers, and symbols. Don't use easy words like your name. Change your passwords every now and then and don't share them with anyone.



- | | |
|------------------|---------------|
| (1) خصوصية | (2) آمن |
| (3) أثر | (4) بصمة |
| (5) كلمات المرور | (6) الإعدادات |
| (7) بيانات | (8) تحديثات |

Most websites and apps have **settings**⁽⁶⁾ to help you control who sees your information. You should check these settings to make sure your privacy is protected, if you don't, your **data**⁽⁷⁾ might be seen by people you don't know.

Think before you share photos or **updates**⁽⁸⁾ online. You shouldn't share personal data like your address or phone number. If you don't want a stranger to know something, don't post it.

By following these tips, you can enjoy the internet safely. Always think about what you do online and remember that your actions can have real effects.

Post-reading questions:

SB

- 1 What is the main idea of this text?
- 2 What is a digital footprint?
- 3 Why is it important to have a strong password?
- 4 Find a word from the text that is an antonym of "careless".
- 5 How can your actions online affect your life?

Pre-listening questions:

1 What should you do before posting something online?

2 What should your strong password include?

Listen to a short podcast about "Online Safety".



Lesson 2

SB page 30

Staying Safe Online

Host 1 Welcome to "Web Guardians⁽¹⁾," where we learn how to stay safe online! I'm Adam.

Host 2 And I'm Nadia. Today, we're going to explore how to be superheroes of the internet!

Host 1 Nadia, have you ever thought about what it means to leave a digital footprint⁽²⁾ online?

Host 2 Yes, Adam! A digital footprint is like a trail of breadcrumbs⁽³⁾ you leave behind when you're online. Everything you do, from visiting websites to sharing posts, leaves a trace of your online experience.

Host 1 Exactly! And that's why it's so important to keep your personal information private⁽⁴⁾.

Host 2 Right, Adam. If you share personal information online, it can be seen by others. So, you should always think before you post to keep your privacy⁽⁵⁾ secure.

Host 1 And what makes a password strong?

Host 2 A strong password is like a secret code⁽⁶⁾ that only you know. If your password is easy to guess, your information might not be safe. So, you should create a strong password to protect your accounts.

Host 1 That's a great point! Did you know that most websites and apps have settings to help you control your privacy?

Host 2 Yes, and if these settings aren't used, your information might be shared more widely than you want. So, always check your privacy settings.

Host 1 Absolutely! And remember, if you ever feel uncomfortable about something online, you should talk to a trusted⁽⁷⁾ adult.

Host 2 That's right, Adam. What you do online can have real effects⁽⁸⁾, so always think carefully about your actions.

Host 1 Today, we learned how to protect our digital footprint and stay safe online. Keep your privacy secure and use strong passwords, everyone.

Host 2 Thanks for joining us on "Web Guardians." Stay safe and see you next time!



(1) خدمة الإنترنت

(2) البصمة الرقمية

(3) أثر من فتات الخبز

(4) خاص

(5) الخصوصية

(6) كود سري

(7) موثوق

(8) مؤثرات

Post-listening questions:

SB

1 What is meant by the term "digital footprint" in the text?

2 Why is it important to keep your personal information private online?

1 Vocabulary building:

Meaning/Synonym – Opposite/Antonym

ارجع للقطعة ص 62-63 وحاول أن تستخرج منها كلمات متشابهة أو متضادة في المعنى للكلمات التالية:

Meaning/Synonym	Opposite/Antonym
keepers حراس	untrusted غير موثوق
acts تصرفات	weak ضعيف
delete يمحذف	danger خطر

2 Comprehension strategies:

من الأسئلة الأساسية في القطعة يمكن إعطاء الفكرة الرئيسية (أي ما يدور حوله النص)، ويكون السؤال كالتالي:

- What's the main idea of the passage?
- What does the passage talk about?
- What is the passage about?

To find the main idea easily, you should follow these steps:

1. If there is a title, pay attention to it. لتجد الفكرة الرئيسية بسهولة، عليك اتباع الخطوات التالية:
2. Read the first sentence. إذا كان هناك عنوان، فانتهبه له.
3. Read the last sentence. اقرأ الجملة الأولى.
4. Look for repeated words or phrases. اقرأ الجملة الأخيرة.

FOR EXAMPLE:

To keep your information safe, you should use strong passwords. A strong password has letters, numbers, and symbols. Don't use easy words like your name. Change your passwords often and don't share them with anyone.

- What's the text about?

(إعطاء الفكرة الرئيسية)

3 Translation:

A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

اختر الترجمة العربية الصحيحة:

- Be careful about what you post because it can be hard to remove later.

☐

- كن حذرًا بشأن ما تنشره لأنه قد يكون من الصعب إزالته لاحقًا.

☐

- كن حذرًا بشأن ما تنشره لأنه قد يكون من السهل إزالته سابقًا.

B) Choose the correct English translation:

اختر الترجمة الإنجليزية الصحيحة:

- إذا قمت بمشاركة معلوماتك الشخصية عبر الإنترنت، فيمكن للآخرين رؤيتها.

☐

If you share your personal information online, others can see it.

☐

If you hide your personal information online, nobody can see it.

LESSON

1

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Nour wanted to bake cookies, so she had to the tips from her mom.
a) jump b) follow c) feel d) hide
- The digital is like a shadow that follows you on the internet.
a) footprint b) stranger c) effect d) app
- Nour does not share private information with any on the internet.
a) stranger b) password c) digital d) number
- Aida is always careful crossing the busy road every morning.
a) about b) on c) to d) for
- Please change the on the phone to the silent mode.
a) setting b) seat c) app d) deleting
- The park is because many guards are always standing there.
a) secure b) near c) far d) cheap
- Nada the secret information by keeping it safe in her phone.
a) changes b) leaves c) protects d) posts
- Teachers use projectors أجهزة العرض in classrooms thanks to the we live in.
a) website b) digital age c) ancient age d) screen
- We should respect other people's
a) privacy b) noise c) update d) setting
- Ahmed downloaded a new for learning English words on his phone.
a) email b) update c) app d) sitting

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

secure – shake – footprint – check – privacy

We live in a digital age where people use websites and apps every day. When you post a photo online, it becomes part of your digital (1) Even small data can leave a trace that others may see. To protect your (2) , never share your address or phone number with a stranger. Always (3) the settings on your account to make sure your information is (4) and protected.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

► 1. Passwords help keep our accounts safe for

- a) app b) attack c) journey d) security

2. Lina wanted to keep her diary so no one could read it.

- a) private b) open c) hard d) respectful

3. Mariam said riding a horse was a very fun for her.

- a) privacy b) experiment c) code d) experience

4. A small fell onto the floor when he ate the sandwich.

- a) water b) breadcrumb c) nest d) liquid

5. The news channel provides live every hour.

- a) journeys b) homework c) companies d) updates

6. The teacher advised Sami to update his online.

- a) profile b) web c) file d) rule

7. Yasmeen learned to rude comments on the internet.

- a) ignore b) allow c) upload d) think

8. The teacher was happy with Omar's good in class today.

- a) account b) rule c) behavior d) mistakes

9. Sara listened to a about space on her phone.

- a) rule b) podcast c) behavior d) picture

10. Omar will a digital trail when he shares his game scores.

- a) welcome b) create c) delete d) check

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

create – private – check – trusted – block

Staying safe online is very important for children and teenagers. If you are not sure about something, always ask a (1) adult for help. Never share your (2) information, like your address or phone number, on social media. You should (3) a strong password to protect your account. You should also check privacy settings often. If someone is rude, (4) them immediately and stay safe.

C Language

1 The Present Simple Passive

المضارع البسيط في المجهول

Remember

Present Simple Active

Subject الفاعل + inf. المصدر / inf. + s, es, ies (Active مبنى للمعلوم)

e.g. The teacher **explains** a new lesson clearly every morning.

Present Simple Passive

Form

التكوين

Object المفعول + am/ is/ are + P.P. (Passive مبنى للمجهول)

e.g. A digital trail **is created** by people.

• New schools **are built** by the government every year.

Negative

النفى

Object + isn't/ aren't + P.P.

e.g. Milk **isn't sold** in that small shop.

• Cats **aren't fed** by Ali.

Yes/No question

السؤال بمعنى هل

Is/Are + object + P.P.?

e.g. **Is** Egypt **visited** by millions of tourists every year?

• **Are** the floors **cleaned** carefully every morning by the workers?

Wh- question

السؤال بأداة الاستفهام

Q. word + is/are + object + P.P.?

e.g. How **are** modern toys usually **made** in the factory?



Got it ?

تمكنت هذه الجزئية من التعرف على كيفية إجابة سؤال
تصحيح الخطأ مدعمة بأسباب الإجابة لتعزيز فهمك للدرس.



Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1 A lot of cars (make) every day.

- الإجابة الصحيحة هي (are made) لأن الجملة مبنية للمجهول في المضارع البسيط.

2 A: (Does) your phone made in China? B: No, it's made in Egypt.

- الإجابة الصحيحة هي (Is) لأن السؤال مبنى للمجهول في المضارع البسيط والمفعول مفرد.

Remember

Modal Verbs Active

(can, could, will, would, shall, should, may, might, must, ought to)

Subject + modal verb الفعل الناقص + inf. (Active)

e.g. The coach might choose new players for the football team.

Modal Verbs Passive

Form

التكوين

Object + modal verb الفعل الناقص + be + P.P. (Passive)

e.g. • A bigger house will be bought if we have more money.

• The old bridge may be repaired by the workers next month.

Negative

النفى

Object + modal verb الفعل الناقص + not + be + P.P.

e.g. Safety rules mustn't be broken during experiments in the science lab.

Yes/No question

السؤال بمعنى هل

Modal verb الفعل الناقص + object + be + P.P.?

e.g. • Should the classroom rules always be followed by everyone?

• Will a new hospital be built in our village soon?

Wh- question

السؤال بأداة الاستفهام

Q. word + modal verb الفعل الناقص + Object + be + P.P.?

e.g. When will the homework be corrected by the teacher?



Got it ?

تمكنت هذه الجزئية من التعرف على كيفية إجابة سؤال
تصحيح الخطأ مدعمة بأسباب الإجابة لتعزيز فهمك للدرس.



Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1 Will the hospital (design) by Mr. Adam?

- الإجابة الصحيحة هي (be designed) لأن الجملة مبنية للمجهول.

2 Your problem is simple, it can (solve) by our teacher.

- الإجابة الصحيحة هي (be solved) لأن الجملة مبنية للمجهول.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Where are the toys usually in the classroom?
a) placed b) placing c) place d) places
- Passwords by users often. SB
a) should change b) should be changed
c) are changing d) change
- The sports uniforms are for the team every week.
a) washed b) washing c) wash d) washes
- The classroom doors aren't during the daytime lessons.
a) locked b) locking c) lock d) locks
- How the birthday cakes sometimes decorated for the party?
a) is b) are c) has d) were
- Why should the classroom rules explained to new students?
a) be b) is c) are d) been
- Will the test papers be by Mr. Omar today?
a) check b) checked c) checks d) checking
- The doors locked during playtime because children go outside.
a) should not be b) should not c) is not d) was not
- Important data by the system every hour. SB
a) is saved b) are saving c) be saved d) saves
- How the songs be practiced before the school show?
a) may b) is c) are d) was

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- The classroom windows (must/open) during the lesson for fresh air.
- The homework (can/complete) before dinner every evening.
- The broken bike (could/repair) by Emad's uncle this weekend.
- Pizza (eat) by my family every Thursday night.
- The school gate (not/should/lock) during school hours.

3 Find the mistake in the following sentences and correct it:

- Is the books given to the children after class? (.....)
- The toys are play with only after class ends. (.....)
- The windows are wash every week by the workers. (.....)
- The names of winners will announce tomorrow. (.....)
- Where should we be kept the old storybooks safely? (.....)

PRACTICE MORE



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- ▶ 1. The children's shoes are neatly outside the playroom.
a) placed b) placing c) place d) places
2. The homework ought to finished before Mira plays with her toys.
a) be b) is c) are d) been
3. The classroom floor is every morning before lessons start.
a) cleaned b) cleaning c) clean d) cleans
4. Online profiles carefully.
a) should design b) is designed c) should be designed d) designed
5. The windows every morning to let in fresh air.
a) are opened b) is opened c) was opened d) should open
6. All the windows should closed before the school is locked.
a) be b) is c) was d) were
7. The tables are carefully before the children arrive.
a) arranged b) arranging c) arrange d) arranges
8. The classroom floor must be by the students every day.
a) clean b) cleans c) cleaned d) cleaning

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- ▶ 1. Fresh bread (bake) in the bakery every day.
2. The classroom floors (sweep) by the cleaner after school.
3. The cat (feed) by my brother, Adam, twice a day.
4. The party music (may/play) loudly in the big hall.

3 Rewrite the following sentences using word(s) in brackets:

- ▶ 1. People upload their videos on social media. (are uploaded) SB
.....
2. You should protect your privacy on the internet. (be) SB
.....
3. We use strong passwords to protect our data. (used) SB
.....
4. Students should follow the school rules. (should be) SB
.....

لحل المزيد من التدرّيات، قم بإجابة الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درسين في ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.





Asking and answering questions about "How to stay safe online"

طرح الأسئلة والإجابة عليها حول «كيفية البقاء آمنًا على الإنترنت»



online



Why is it important to stay safe online? لماذا من المهم أن تبقى آمنًا على الإنترنت؟

It is important because it protects me from dangers and keeps my information safe.

إنه مهم لأنه يحميني من المخاطر ويحافظ على معلوماتي آمنة.



What should you do to stay safe online? ماذا يجب أن تفعل لتبقى آمنًا على الإنترنت؟

I should use strong passwords, be careful with strangers, and check privacy settings.

يجب أن أستخدم كلمات مرور قوية، وأكون حذرًا مع الغرباء، وأفحص إعدادات الخصوصية.



What shouldn't you do to stay safe online?

ماذا لا يجب أن تفعل لتبقى آمنًا على الإنترنت؟

I shouldn't share my personal data or talk to people I don't know.

لا يجب أن أشارك بياناتي الشخصية أو أتحدث مع أشخاص لا أعرفهم.



What should your strong password include? ماذا يجب أن تحتوى كلمة مرورك القوية؟

My strong password should include letters, numbers, and special symbols.

يجب أن تحتوى كلمة مروري القوية على حروف وأرقام ورموز خاصة.



Speaking Exercise

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analyzing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating



Complete the following dialog:

► Ali is asking Sara about how to form a password.

Ali : Do you use a password when you log into your computer?

Sara : (1)..... I always use a strong password.

Ali : (2).....?

Sara : I use letters, numbers, and symbols in my password.

Ali : Do you think it is safe to use your name as a password?

Sara : (3)..... That is very easy for others to guess.

Ali : (4).....?

Sara : I should share my password with my parents.

Ali : Why don't you tell anyone your password?

Sara : (5).....

How to write about staying safe online كيفية الكتابة عن كيفية البقاء آمن عبر الإنترنت

1. Why do children use the internet every day? لماذا يستخدم الأطفال الإنترنت كل يوم؟

- Children use the internet every day to study, play games, and talk to friends. يستخدم الأطفال الإنترنت كل يوم للدراسة ولعب الألعاب والتحدث مع الأصدقاء.

2. Why is it important to stay safe when using the internet? لماذا من المهم أن نبقي آمين عند استخدام الإنترنت؟

- It is important to stay safe because the internet has dangers like strangers and fake websites. من المهم أن نبقي آمين؛ لأن الإنترنت يحتوي على مخاطر مثل الغرباء والمواقع المزيفة.

3. What should you do with your personal information online? ماذا يجب أن تفعل بمعلوماتك الشخصية على الإنترنت؟

- I should keep my personal information secret and never share my full name, address, or phone number. يجب أن أحافظ على معلوماتي الشخصية سرية؛ وألا أشارك اسمي الكامل أو عنواني أو رقم هاتفي.

4. What kind of password should you make for your accounts? ما نوع كلمة المرور التي يجب أن تنشئها لحساباتك؟

- I should make a strong password with numbers, capital letters, and special signs. يجب أن أنشئ كلمة مرور قوية تحتوي على أرقام وحروف كبيرة وعلامات خاصة.

5. What should you do if someone sends you a strange message online? ماذا يجب أن تفعل إذا أرسل لك شخص رسالة غريبة على الإنترنت؟

- If someone sends me a strange message, I should block them and tell a trusted adult. إذا أرسل لي شخص رسالة غريبة، يجب أن أحظره وأخبر شخصًا بالغًا موثوقًا فيه.

6. What should you never do with people you don't know online? ما الذي لا يجب أن تفعله أبدًا مع أشخاص لا تعرفهم على الإنترنت؟

- I should never talk to strangers or meet them in real life. لا يجب أن أتحدث أبدًا مع الغرباء أو أقابلهم في الحياة الحقيقية.

اقرأ هذا النموذج المجاب عنه لإضافة أفكار جديدة ولتعلم منه:

"Staying safe online"

Many children use the internet for learning, playing games, and chatting with friends. It is very important to stay safe online because it protects us from dangers. To stay safe, we should use strong passwords, keep our personal information secret, and check if websites are trusted. We must not share our address or phone number. Before posting anything, we should make sure it is kind and respectful. Staying safe online helps us enjoy the internet without problems and keeps us protected.

TEST YOURSELF

Lessons (1 & 2)



نص الاستماع
في نهاية الكتاب.

1 A) Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- What does every online post create?
 - A symbol.
 - A digital footprint.
 - An app.
 - A stranger.
- How can data be kept safe?
 - By sharing it.
 - By using secure passwords.
 - By forgetting it.
 - By removing updates.
- Who should not get personal information?
 - A stranger.
 - A teacher.
 - A parent.
 - A cousin.

B) Listen and complete:

- Every you share online becomes part of your digital footprint.
- Always check your privacy
- Make sure your account is

2 Complete the following dialog:

Omar and Lina are discussing how to stay safe online.

Omar : Do you give your address to people online, Lina?

Lina : (1)

Omar : (2)

Lina : It is dangerous to share my address online because strangers can use it.

Omar : Do you share your phone number with people you don't know?

Lina : (3) I only tell my real friends.

Omar : What should you do if someone asks for your phone number?

Lina : (4)

Omar : (5)

Lina : The best person to tell is my father.

3 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

check – share – respectful – adult – have

When you use the web, remember that your safety is important. A trusted (1) can help if you don't know what to do. Sometimes, people may send you ads that look fun, but they can (2) an effect on your account. Always (3) privacy settings to control privacy. If someone is not (4), you can block them. Staying private online is absolutely the best choice.

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Amira wrote her home on the paper for the delivery boy.
a) updates b) stranger c) address d) size
2. The phone shows new every time the app changes something important.
a) data b) updates c) privacy d) password
3. Sara used the to find a nice cake recipe online.
a) web b) ads c) rule d) account
4. Nour the football team because he loved playing every weekend.
a) shared b) uploaded c) allowed d) joined
5. The lights in the corridor turned on every night.
a) are b) is c) will d) have
6. The lost pencils be found by the teacher tomorrow morning.
a) will b) have c) are d) do

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. The computer lab must (lock) after the students leave.
2. The school trip (could) canceled if the bus is broken.
3. When (does) the housework done at your house?
4. The old tree (not/climb) because it is not safe.

6 Find the mistake in the following sentences and correct it:

1. The desks must arrange neatly in straight rows. (.....)
2. The reading list can share with the children today. (.....)
3. We shouldn't shouted at hospitals. (.....)
4. The doors are locks carefully after everyone leaves the building. (.....)

7 Write a paragraph of (90-100) words on:

"Staying safe online"



Challenging Questions

مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب.

Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets:

1. Salma answers all the questions in class. (are answered)
.....
2. The company produces nice wooden toys for children. (Nice wooden toys)
.....
3. Nada should post the letters at the post office quickly. (The letters)
.....

Assess your progress ★★★★★

< 50% Study again

50 : 64% Practice more

65 : 84% Take more exams

85 : 100% Well done!

A VOCABULARY LESSON 3

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

active footprints (n)	بصمات نشطة	online identity (n)	هوية رقمية
clue (n)	دليل	passive footprints (n)	بصمات سلبية
forever (adv)	إلى الأبد/للأبد	platform (n)	منصة رقمية
manage (d) (v)	يدير/يتحكم/يمكن	smart (adj)	ذكي/أنيق/شيك

Additional Vocabulary المفردات الإضافية

coin (n)	عملة معدنية	last (ed) (v)	يدوم/يستمر
collect (ed) (v)	يُجمع	stamp (n)	طابع بريد
details (n)	تفاصيل	super (adj)	رائع/ممتاز/مذهل
difference (n)	اختلاف	super important	مهم للغاية
happen (ed) (v)	يحدث	thief (n)	لص/حرامي

Language Expressions & Prepositions التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

build an online identity	يبني هوية رقمية	go for walks	يذهب للتنزه
careful with	حذر مع/حريص على	leave behind clues	يترك أدلة وراءه
do your best	ابذل قصارى جهدك	make up	يشكل/يُكوّن/يؤلف
focus on	يركز على	manage my time	أدير وقتي

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past simple	Past participle
choose يختار	chose	chosen
find يجد	found	found

Words and Opposites الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
appear	يظهر	disappear	يختفي
important	هام	unimportant	غير هام
kind	عطوف/طيب	unkind	غير عطوف
safe	آمن	unsafe	غير آمن

Read and complete with a word from the list:

manage – in – go – on

- 1 My mom and I like to for walks together.
- 2 I try to my time to finish homework.
- 3 We need to focus the teacher's lesson.

LESSON 4

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

blink (ed) (v)	يرمش	frustrated (adj)	محبط
copy (y) (ied) (v)	يقلد	persevere (d) (v)	يثابر/يواصل المحاولة
empathy (n)	تعاطف	trustworthy (adj)	أمين/موثوق

Additional Vocabulary المفردات الإضافية

anger (n)	غضب	laugh (ed) (v)	يضحك
check (ed) (v)	يتحقق/يراجع	source (n)	مصدر
confusion (n)	ارتباك/حيرة	surprise (n)	دهشة
expect (ed) (v)	يتوقع	warm (adj)	دافئ/حار قليلاً
fix (ed) (v)	يصلح		

Language Expressions & Prepositions التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

behind her back	خلف ظهرها	little by little	قليلاً قليلاً
cheer with joy	يهتف بفرح	make mistakes	يرتكب أخطاء
come closer	يقترّب أكثر	show empathy	يظهر التعاطف
get shorter	يصبح أقصر	stay true to her values	تتمسك بقيمها

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs تمريرات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past simple	Past participle
break ينكسر/يكسر	broke	broken
feel like يشعر برغبة/يود	felt like	felt like
give up يتخلى عن/يئس	gave up	given up
hide يختفي	hid	hidden

Read and complete with a word from the list:

do – make – sources – frustrated

- 1 It is okay to mistakes when you learn.
- 2 I feel when I can't solve a puzzle.
- 3 We must find sustainable of energy.

Language Notes

1 choose + to + inf.

يختار أن

- Active footprints happen when you **choose to share** something online.

2 keep + (v + ing)

يستمر في

- **Keep doing** your best!

3 stop + (v + ing)

يتوقف عن

- Never **stop trying**. Keep working hard.

4 feel like + (v + ing)

يود/يرغب في

- Amal **felt like** giving up.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Please stop so much noise in the library.

a) to make	b) making
c) make	d) makes
- 2 You should choose a good friend.

a) to be	b) to being
c) be	d) been
- 3 I feel like pictures all day long.

a) drawing	b) to draw
c) draws	d) drew
- 4 I need to keep the piano if I want to get better.

a) to practice	b) practice
c) practicing	d) to practicing

Vocabulary Builder

ادرس مفردات اللغة جيداً
لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.

Definitions التعريفات

clue	دليل	small piece of information that helps you solve a problem
collect	يجمع	to gather items, usually over time
forever	للأبد	for all time; always
online identity	الهوية عبر الإنترنت	the way a person presents themselves on the internet

Words and Synonyms الكلمات ومرادفها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
expect (ed) (v)	يتوقع	guess	يخمن
forever (adv)	إلى الأبد/للأبد	for life	مدى الحياة
manage (d) (v)	يدير/يتحكم/يمكن	control	يتحكم في

Suffix اللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Suffix	اللاحقة	Function	الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
confuse (v)	يربك/يحيّر	-ion		تحول الفعل إلى اسم		confusion (n)	ارتباك/حيرة
differ (v)	يختلف	-ence				difference (n)	اختلاف

Prefix البادئة

Prefix	البادئة	Function	الوظيفة	Word	الكلمة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
un-		تعطي عكس المعنى		important (adj)	مهم	unimportant (adj)	غير مهم
				kind (adj)	عطوف/طيب	unkind (adj)	غير عطوف

تطبيق الأضواء

إجابات 100% : راجع إجاباتك من خلال
تنزيل وطباعة نسختك من الإجابات الكاملة
لكتاب الأضواء من داخل التطبيق.

نزل التطبيق أو ادخل على موقع الأضواء:
www.aladwaa.com



B Reading & Listening Skills

Lesson 3

Pre-reading questions:

- 1 What platforms do you use for social media?
- 2 How important do you think privacy settings are?

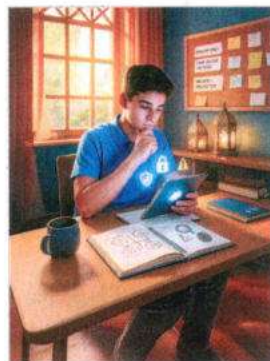
Read the following text. What do you think happens when you use social media, like posting or liking something?

SB Page 32

Social Media and Your Digital Footprint

When you use social media - like posting pictures, writing **comments**⁽¹⁾, or liking videos - you leave behind clues about what you like, what you think, and who you are. These **clues**⁽²⁾ make up something called your digital footprint. There are two types: **Active footprints**⁽³⁾ these happen when you choose to share something online. **Passive footprints**⁽⁴⁾—these happen without your knowing, like when websites collect information about what you look for. Everything you do online helps build your online **identity**⁽⁵⁾. People—like your friends, teachers, or even future schools—might look at your posts and get an idea of who you are.

That's why it's super important to think before you share. Social media is fun and exciting, but it's also **forever**⁽⁶⁾. Be smart, be kind, and be careful with what you post!



(1) تعليقات

(2) أدلة

(3) بصمات نشطة

(4) بصمات سلبية

(5) هوية

(6) إلى الأبد/للأبد

Post-reading questions:

SB

- 1 What is the difference between active and passive footprints?
- 2 What can happen if you post something unkind or unsafe online?
- 3 Why is your digital footprint important?

The Little Inventor

Lesson 4

Pre-reading question:

- Is it the right thing to give up when you face a problem? Why/ Why not?

 Read the second part of the story. What do you expect Amal will do next?

SB page 34

CHAPTER TWO:

Never Stop Trying

As the fair day came closer, Amal faced many problems. The robot wouldn't talk, and the wires kept breaking. Some children even laughed behind her back.

Amal felt like giving up. But then she remembered her parents' words and decided to **persevere**⁽¹⁾.

"I won't give up. I will fix this," she said.

What problems did Amal face?

Yara helped her by giving ideas. She showed **empathy**⁽²⁾ when Amal felt **frustrated**⁽³⁾.

"It's okay to make mistakes," she told her. "You can do it."

How did Yara support Amal when she felt frustrated?



- | | | |
|-----------|-----------|----------|
| (1) يثابر | (2) تعاطف | (3) محيط |
| (4) مصادر | (5) مؤثوف | |

Little by little, Amal fixed the problems. She checked her **sources**⁽⁴⁾ online to make sure she was learning from safe, **trustworthy**⁽⁵⁾ places. She stayed true to her values and never copied others' work without permission.

How did Amal make sure she was learning safely and honestly while fixing the problems?

Finally, on the night before the fair, the robot blinked its eyes and said, "Hello!" Amal and Yara cheered with joy.

How did Amal and Yara feel when the robot finally worked?

Answer the following questions:

1. What problems did Amal face as the fair day came closer?

SB

ما المشاكل التي واجهتها أمل عندما اقترب يوم المعرض؟

- Amal's robot wouldn't talk, the wires kept breaking, and some children laughed at her. سخروا منها.

2. Who helped Amal when she felt frustrated?

SB

من ساعد أمل عندما شعرت بالإحباط؟

- Yara helped Amal by giving ideas and encouraging her.

3. Why did Amal decide not to give up?

لماذا قررت أمل ألا تستسلم؟

SB

- Amal remembered her parents' words and decided to keep trying.

4. What did Amal do to make sure she was learning from safe sources?

ماذا فعلت أمل لتتأكد من أنها تتعلم من مصادر آمنة؟

- She checked her sources online to make sure they were safe and trustworthy.

5. What happened to the robot on the night before the fair?

ماذا حدث للروبوت في الليلة التي سبقت المعرض؟

- The robot blinked its eyes and said, "Hello!"

6. How did Amal and Yara celebrate when the robot finally worked?

كيف احتفلت أمل ويارا عندما عمل الروبوت أخيراً؟

- Amal and Yara cheered with joy.

Critical thinking questions:

1. "It's okay to make mistakes." Why was this an important thing for Yara to say to Amal?

SB

«لا بأس أن نخطئ». لماذا كان من المهم أن تقول يارا هذا لأمال؟

- It was important because it helped Amal feel okay about making mistakes and kept her trying.

2. Amal faced many challenges, but she didn't give up. What does this tell us about her?

SB

واجهت أمل العديد من التحديات لكنها لم تستسلم. ماذا يخبرنا هذا عنها؟

- It shows that Amal is brave, strong, and does not give up easily.

3. Why do you think it was important for Amal to persevere even when some children laughed at her?

لماذا تعتقد أنه كان من المهم أن تواصل أمل العمل رغم سخرية بعض الأطفال؟

- It was important because she kept trying and learned that she could succeed despite what others said.

4. How do you think Amal felt when the robot finally said "Hello!" and why?

كيف تعتقد أن أمل شعرت عندما قال الروبوت «مرحباً!» ولماذا؟

- Amal felt very happy and excited because her hard work made the robot work.



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Amal faced many problems as the fair day came closer, such as the robot didn't talk and the wires
 a) changed colors b) kept warm c) kept breaking d) got shorter
- When Amal felt like giving up, she remembered her parents' words and decided to
 a) go home b) persevere c) hide d) cry
- Yara helped Amal by giving ideas, and she showed when she felt frustrated.
 a) anger b) surprise c) empathy d) confusion
- Amal made sure she never copied others' work without
 a) thinking b) permission
 c) trying d) asking a question

2 Answer the following questions:

- What problems did Amal face as the fair day came closer?

- Who helped Amal when she felt frustrated?

- Why did Amal decide not to give up?

3 Critical thinking questions:

- "It's okay to make mistakes." Why was this an important thing for Yara to say to Amal?

- Amal faced many challenges, but she didn't give up. What does this tell us about her?

1 Vocabulary building:

Meaning/Synonym – Opposite/Antonym

ارجع للقطعة ص 79-80 وحاول أن تستخرج منها كلمات متشابهة أو متضادة في المعنى للكلمات التالية:

Meaning/Synonym	Opposite/Antonym
disappointed منحبط	sadness حزن
gather يجمع	offline غير متصل بالإنترنت
quit يستسلم	unimportant مهم غير

2 Comprehension strategies:

في هذا الجزء سنتعرف على كيفية التعامل مع أسئلة القطعة:

What does the word "....." mean?

من الأسئلة الأساسية في القطعة يمكن تخمين معنى كلمة، ومن الممكن أن يكون السؤال كالتالي:

How to guess the meaning of a word:

كيفية تخمين معنى كلمة:

هناك عدة نقاط يمكن أن تساعد في تخمين معنى الكلمة:

1. Try to understand what type of word it is. (اسم، فعل، صفة،).
2. Read the passage well. You may find synonyms, antonyms, or a definition.
اقرأ القطعة جيداً. فمن الممكن أن تجد مترادفات، متضادات أو تعريفاً للكلمة.
3. Look for clues: Point to words around the unfamiliar word that might help understand its meaning.
ابحث عن دلالات تساعدك على فهم الكلمة - اقرأ الكلمات حول الكلمة غير المألوفة لتحاول فهم المعنى.
4. Make a guess.
حاول تخمين معنى الكلمة في النص.

FOR EXAMPLE:

Social media is fun and exciting, but it's also forever. Be smart, be kind, and be careful with what you post!

- The underlined word "forever" means ".....".

(تخمين معنى كلمة)

- a) for life b) now c) the past d) at the moment

3 Translation:

A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

اختر الترجمة العربية الصحيحة:

- **Passive footprints happen without your knowing.**

- ☐ تظهر البصمات الإيجابية عندما تعرف بها. ☐ تحدث البصمات السلبية دون أن تشعر بها.

B) Choose the correct English translation:

اختر الترجمة الإنجليزية الصحيحة:

- **أظهرت يارا تعاطفها عندما شعرت أمل بالإحباط.**

- ☐ Yara showed empathy when Amal felt frustrated.
☐ Yara showed anger when Amal didn't feel frustrated.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1. Omar looked at the bright sun and
 a) copied b) persevered c) blinked d) trusted
2. Sara showed when her friend was very sad, so she helped her.
 a) empathy b) frustration
 c) anger d) trustworthiness
3. She quickly when the bright light hit her eyes.
 a) copied b) blinked c) persevered d) removed
4. Hala felt when her toy broke in the garden.
 a) trustworthy b) brave c) kind d) frustrated
5. Ali is very because he always does what he says.
 a) active b) brave c) trustworthy d) frustrated
6. Rania felt tired, but she chose to and keep going.
 a) copy b) blink c) lose d) persevere
7. Said's face turned red because of his after losing.
 a) joy b) anger c) happiness d) afraid
8. The sun is our main of light and heat.
 a) joy b) source c) surprise d) anger
9. The teacher asked the students to closer to the board.
 a) play b) take c) jump d) come

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

stayed – with – blinked – at – frustrated

Amal wanted to build a robot for the school fair. The robot (1) its lights, but it didn't move. She felt (2) and wanted to give up. Her friend Yara showed empathy and said, "It's okay to make mistakes. You can fix it!" Little by little, Amal repaired the wires and tested the robot. She (3) true to her values and never copied anyone else's work. On the night before the fair, the robot finally moved, and Amal cheered (4) joy.

How to write about managing online data

كيفية الكتابة عن إدارة البيانات عبر الإنترنت

1. What does "online data" mean?

ماذا تعني «البيانات على الإنترنت»؟

- Online data is all the things you do on the internet, like posts, pictures, and comments. البيانات على الإنترنت هي كل الأشياء التي تفعلها على الإنترنت، مثل: المنشورات، الصور، والتعليقات.

2. Why is it important to manage your online data?

لماذا من المهم إدارة بياناتك على الإنترنت؟

- It is important to keep your information safe and protect your online identity. من المهم الحفاظ على أمان معلوماتك وحماية هويتك الرقمية.

3. How can you protect your online data?

كيف يمكنك حماية بياناتك على الإنترنت؟

- You can use strong passwords, check privacy settings, and share only with trusted friends or adults. يمكنك استخدام كلمات مرور قوية، والتحقق من إعدادات الخصوصية، والمشاركة فقط مع أصدقاء موثوقين أو الكبار الموثوق بهم.

4. What should you avoid sharing online?

ما الذي يجب أن تتجنبه عند المشاركة على الإنترنت؟

- Don't share secrets, passwords, or personal details. لا تشارك الأسرار أو كلمات المرور أو التفاصيل الشخصية.

5. What can happen if you are not careful with your online data?

ماذا يمكن أن يحدث إذا لم تكن حذرًا مع بياناتك على الإنترنت؟

- Someone might use your information in the wrong way. قد يستخدم شخص ما معلوماتك بطريقة خاطئة.

اقرأ هذا النموذج المجاب عنه لإضافة أفكار جديدة ولتعلم منه:

"Managing my online data"

Managing your online data is very important. Your online data includes posts, comments, and photos. Every activity leaves a digital footprint. Active footprints happen when you post or comment, and passive footprints happen when websites track your visits. You can protect your online data by using strong passwords, checking privacy settings, and sharing information only with trusted friends or adults. Avoid posting personal details or secrets. By managing your data carefully, you can build a positive online identity and stay safe online.

1 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

came – persevered – making – doing – on

Hassan was learning to type on a computer. He kept (1) mistakes and felt frustrated. He almost gave up, but his teacher (2) closer and said, "It's okay to make mistakes. Keep trying." Hassan (3), practicing little by little and checking each word. He didn't copy others' work. He could type quickly and accurately بدقة (4) the night before the final test. His parents felt warm pride and joy.

2 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

Everyone who uses social media leaves a digital trail. Your posts, pictures, and comments form your active footprint. Passive footprints happen without your knowing, such as when websites track the pages you visit. To manage your online data, always use strong passwords and check your privacy settings. Only share personal information with trusted friends or adults. Avoid posting secrets online. By controlling your digital footprint, you can enjoy social media safely and protect your reputation. Being careful online also prevents problems and ensures your personal information stays secure. Learning how to manage your online presence is an important skill for everyone who uses the internet.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Active footprints happen when
 a) websites track your visits b) you post or comment
 c) nothing d) you sleep
- You should avoid sharing secrets online to
 a) have fun b) keep personal information safe
 c) make friends d) get likes

B) Answer the following questions:

- What is the main idea of this passage?

- How can passive footprints happen without noticing?

- Mention اذكر two steps to keep your online information safe.

- Why is managing your digital footprint important?

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. We went to the beach to seashells الأصداف البحرية.
a) look b) collect c) correct d) appear
2. My dad put a/an on the letter to send it.
a) clue b) email c) coin d) stamp
3. They need to the broken window in the kitchen soon.
a) laugh b) fix c) check d) expect
4. It was such a happy to see everyone together today.
a) source b) surprise c) empathy d) anger
5. The playground carefully before the children play.
a) is cleaned b) cleaned c) is cleaning d) cleans
6. The storybooks may be with the children after lunch.
a) share b) shared c) shares d) sharing

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Lunch is usually (prepares) by my sister.
2. A lot of modern furniture (make) by this clever carpenter!
3. The answers (should/write) neatly by all the children.
4. The floor must (sweep) before the parents arrive.

5 Write a paragraph of (90-100) words on:

"Manage your digital footprint"



Challenging Questions

مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب.

Rewrite the following sentences using word(s) in brackets:

1. Teachers ask many questions in the lesson every day. (Many questions)
2. Mahmoud waters the garden flowers every day. (are watered)
3. Lara should tidy the books in the library carefully. (should be)

Assess your progress ★★☆☆☆

< 50% Study again

50 : 64% Practice more

65 : 84% Take more exams

85 : 100% Well done!

A VOCABULARY LESSONS 5&6

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

click (ed) (v)	ينقر (بالفأرة)	regularly (adv)	بانتظام
hack (ed) (v)	يخترق	risk (n)	خطر/مخاطرة
mark (n)	علامة	scary (adj)	مخيف/مزعج
permanent (adj)	دائم	trace (d) (v)	يتتبع/يتعقب
properly (adv)	بشكل صحيح		

Additional Vocabulary المفردات الإضافية

birth (n)	ميلاد	software (n)	البرمجيات
college (n)	كلية	twice (adv)	مرتان
enter (ed) (v)	يدخل		

Language Expressions & Prepositions التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

at risk	في خطر	leave a mark	يترك علامة
hack into	يخترق	get hacked	يخترق
talk with/to	يتكلم مع/إلى	set settings	يضبط الإعدادات
worry about	يقلق على	take care	يعتنى بـ

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past participle
steal	يسرق	stole	stolen

Words and Opposites الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
simple	بسيط	complex	معقد
permanent	دائم	temporary	مؤقت

Read and complete with a word from the list:

leave – steal – at – on

- 1 The thief tried to a wallet from the man.
- 2 We should a mark on our community.
- 3 You are risk of getting cold without a coat.

Vocabulary Builder

Words and Synonyms الكلمات ومرادفها

ادرس مفردات اللغة جيدًا
لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
risk (n)	خطر/مخاطرة	danger	خطر
scary (adj)	مخيف/مرعب	frightening	مخيف

Suffix اللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Suffix اللاحقة	Function الوظيفة	The new word الكلمة الجديدة
scare (n)	رعب	-y	تحويل الاسم إلى صفة	scary (adj) مخيف/مرعب
proper (adj)	صحيح	-ly	تحويل الصفة إلى حال	properly (adv) بشكل صحيح
regular (adj)	منتظم			regularly (adv) بانتظام

تطبيق الأضواء

نماذج الاختبارات الشهرية: تقدر تستعد
لاختبارات الشهور مع الأضواء من خلال تحميل
ملف الاختبارات من خانة المراجعات.

نزل التطبيق أو ادخل على موقع الأضواء:
www.aladwaa.com



B Reading & Listening Skills

Pre-reading question:

- What do you know about your digital footprint?

 Read the following dialog.

Lesson 5

SB page 36

Staying Safe Online - A Conversation About Digital Habits

Hana Hey Salma, do you ever think about your digital footprint?

Salma Yes, I do! Everything we do online leaves a mark. It can all be **traced**⁽¹⁾, right?

Hana Exactly! That's why I try to stay secure. I use strong passwords and I don't share my personal data online.

Salma Me too. I also check my **privacy settings**⁽²⁾ regularly. If they're not set **properly**⁽³⁾, my information can be seen and shared by others.

Hana That's true. My cousin's account was **hacked**⁽⁴⁾ last year. Her passwords were too simple.

Salma Oh no! That's **scary**⁽⁵⁾. I also make sure my apps have the latest updates. Without them, your device can be at **risk**⁽⁶⁾.

Hana Same here. I've read that old software can be used to steal your data.

Salma We really have to be careful. Even things we posted years ago can be found and traced.

Hana I agree, that's why I always say - think before you post. Once it's online, it stays online forever.

Salma Good advice. Our digital lives are important, and we need to stay safe.



- | | |
|----------------|----------------------|
| (1) تتبع | (2) إعدادات الخصوصية |
| (3) بشكل مناسب | (4) اختُرق |
| (5) مخيف | (6) خطر |

Post-reading questions:

SB

- 1 According to طبقاً Hana and Salma, what is a "digital footprint"?
- 2 Why did Hana's cousin's account get hacked?
- 3 What advice does Hana give about posting things online?
- 4 According to Salma, what is one way to keep your information from being seen by others?
- 5 Why is it important to have the latest updates for your apps?

Read the short conversation below, then switch roles. **SB page 37** **Lesson 5**

Student A I don't worry much about my digital footprint. I just have fun online.

Student B That's true, I have fun, too. But I think we should all take care. Our data can be traced and used by others.

Student A I only use a few simple passwords.

Student B You should make them strong and always check your privacy settings.

Pre-reading questions:

Lesson 5

- 1 What do you think this conversation is about?
- 2 What do you already know about staying safe when you are online?

Mr. Aziz Good morning, Rody. Today, I'd like to talk with you about digital **identity**. Do you know what that means?

Rody Yes, sir. I think it's the information people can see about me online, like my social media **account** and what I post.

Mr. Aziz Exactly. Your online identity can shape how others see you, and sometimes it can even leave a **permanent**⁽¹⁾ digital mark.

Rody That sounds a bit **scary**, sir. Can people really find things I posted years ago?

Mr. Aziz Yes, they can. That's why what you share online is so important, if you're not careful, someone could even try to steal your identity or personal details.

Rody You mean like trying to **hack** into my account?

Mr. Aziz Exactly. That's why we always say **it is important** to use strong, special passwords and not share them with anyone.

Rody I usually use my name and birth year as my password; is that OK?

Mr. Aziz That's very easy to guess, Rody. Try something more **complex**⁽²⁾ to keep your account **secure**. Also, always check your account's **privacy** settings.

Rody I understand. I **believe** we should think twice before posting or clicking anything online.

(1) دائم

(2) معقد

Post-reading questions:

SB

- 1 What does Rody think a digital identity is?.....
- 2 Why is it important to use a strong password?.....

LESSONS

5&6

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Computers need to work properly and run games for children.
a) privacy b) hackers c) accounts d) software
- No one should into other people's computers; it isn't fair.
a) post b) hack c) change d) click
- Amira wanted to the camera settings for better pictures.
a) take b) put c) set d) get
- I don't like big animals; they are
a) frightening b) popular c) lovely d) proper
- You need to on that icon with the mouse to open the folder.
a) sit b) hack c) enter d) click
- The children were risk because they played near the fire.
a) at b) on c) for d) in
- What is your date of?
a) mark b) birth c) place d) trace
- The color on this wall is and can't be changed again.
a) scary b) digital c) permanent d) bright
- We can the path back home using the map.
a) hide b) trace c) click d) hack
- That movie made the children unable to sleep at night.
a) regular b) scary c) happy d) bright

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

regularly – sets – sits – mark – at

Lina always clicks carefully when she uses the internet. She knows some websites can put her (1) risk because they have viruses. She (2) her computer settings properly and only enters trusted websites. She talks with her parents about new games or apps. By following these habits (3), Lina stays safe online and avoids any hacks. She never shares her personal details and knows that a digital (4) can last forever.



Giving strong advice or opinion about online habits

تقديم نصائح أو آراء قوية حول العادات عبر الإنترنت

- It's important to ...

من المهم أن

It's important to follow safety rules online.

- I think/believe we should ...

أعتقد/أؤمن أنه يجب علينا

I believe we should always check our privacy settings.

- You should ...

يجب عليك

You should make passwords strong.

- Always > infinitive

دائماً

Always check your privacy settings.

Speaking Exercise

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analyzing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Complete the following dialog:

- Sara thinks a password should include letters, numbers, and symbols.

Ali : How can I make my online accounts safe?

Sara : (1).....

Ali : What should a strong password include?

Sara : (2).....

Ali : Should I use my name in it?

Sara : (3)..... Don't use your name or birthday.

Ali : (4).....?

Sara : No, you can't share it with friends. Keep it secret.

Ali : (5).....?

Sara : You should change it every month.

1 Complete the following dialog:

Said advises Waleed to play games on a safe website.

Waleed : I want to play a new game online.

Said : (1).....

Waleed : I (2).....?

Said : You can make sure they are safe by checking reviews on them.

Waleed : Where can I check reviews?

Said : (3).....

Waleed : On YouTube! (4).....?

Said : Yes, of course. I'll help you.

Waleed : Can I play it at home?

Said : (5)..... But only after checking safety.

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

with – for – risks – sets – regularly

Yara learned that hackers can try to hack into computers. She (1)..... her passwords carefully and changes them (2)..... . She only clicks on safe links and checks software updates to protect her devices. Yara also talks (3)..... her teacher about online rules. By following these habits, she avoids (4)..... and keeps her online identity safe.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The teacher told us to care of our books.

a) have

b) take

c) do

d) make

2. It is wrong to hack someone's computer without their permission.

a) on

b) at

c) into

d) in

3. It is a to climb trees that are very tall without a helmet.

a) risk

b) password

c) habit

d) mark

- 4.** You must the classroom quietly when the lesson begins.
a) enter b) click
c) hack d) trace
- 5.** The sign must posted by Adam before the shop closes.
a) be b) is
c) are d) been
- 6.** The chairs aren't around during the lesson.
a) moves b) moving
c) move d) moved

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Noise isn't (allowing) inside a hospital.
2. The football match (show) on TV every weekend.
3. The old books should be (give) to the library tomorrow.
4. Questions (will/ask) at the end of the lesson.

5 Write a paragraph of (90-100) words on:

“Your daily habits”

[illegible]

Challenging Questions

محباب عنه نهاية الكتاب.

Find the mistake in the following sentences and correct it:

1. The classroom walls will be painting bright colors with Basma and her friends. (.....)
2. School rules must followed carefully. (.....)
3. The new film may shown tonight. (.....)

Assess your progress ★★☆☆☆

< 50% Study again

50 : 64% Practice more

65 : 84% Take more exams

85 : 100% Well done!

A Reading**1 Read the short text and write (T) True or (F) False:**

Everything you post online becomes part of your digital footprint. Photos, comments, and personal information can be seen by strangers. If you share something bad, it might affect your future, like getting a job or entering college. Once something is online, it is difficult to remove. That's why it's important to think carefully before you post anything on the internet.

1. You can always delete what you post online. (.....)
2. Digital footprints can affect your future. (.....)
3. It is safe to share personal information with strangers. (.....)
4. Thinking before you post is important. (.....)

B Vocabulary**2 Fill in the spaces using the words from the box:**

footprint – password – privacy – share – secure

1. Always keep your accounts by using strong passwords.
2. Never personal information with strangers.
3. Your digital shows what you do online.
4. Good settings help you protect your information.
5. Use a strong to protect your social media accounts.

C Language**3 Find the mistake in each sentence and correct it:**

1. Emails sent to my friends every day. (.....)
2. Passwords should been chosen well. (.....)
3. These trees are cutting to build a new road. (.....)
4. Screen time should limit by teenagers. (.....)
5. Does breakfast prepared by your mom every morning? (.....)

D Writing**4 Write 3 tips to stay safe online:**

.....

.....

Vocabulary

active footprints (n)	بصمات نشطة
blink (ed) (v)	يرمش
clue (n)	دليل
data (n)	بيانات
digital footprint (n)	البصمة الرقمية
effect (n)	تأثير
empathy (n)	تعاطف
experience (d) (v/n)	يُمرّ / تجربة / خبرة
frustrated (adj)	محبط
guardian (n)	حامٍ / حارس / وصي
ignore (d) (v)	يتجاهل / يهمل
manage (d) (v)	يدير / يتحكم فيه / يتمكن
passive footprints (n)	بصمات سلبية
password (n)	كلمة مرور / سر
persevere (d) (v)	يُثابر / يواصل المحاولة
platform (n)	منصة / رقمية
podcast (n)	حلقة صوتية / بودكاست
privacy (n)	خصوصية
private (adj)	خاص / شخصي
protected (adj)	محمي
respectful (adj)	محترم (لقبره)
secret code (n)	كود سري
secure (adj)	آمن / مؤمن
security (n)	أمن / سلامة
setting (n)	إعداد
stranger (n)	غريب (شخص)
superhero (n)	بطال خارق
trace (n)	بصمة / أثر
trail (n)	مسار / أثر
trusted (adj)	موثوق
trustworthy (adj)	أمين / موثوق
updates (n)	تحديثات

Language

1. The Present Simple Passive

المطارع البسيط في المجهول

Form:

Object + am/ is/ are + P.P.

e.g. A new lesson is explained clearly by the teacher every morning.

Negative:

Object + am not/ isn't/ aren't + P.P.

e.g. Milk isn't sold in that small shop.

Question:

Is/ Are + object + P.P.?

e.g. Is a new lesson explained clearly by the teacher every morning?

Q. word + is/ are + object + P.P.?

e.g. How are modern toys usually made in the factory?

2. Modal Verbs Passive

الأفعال النمطية في المجهول

Form:

Object + modal verb + be + P.P.

e.g. A bigger house will be bought if we have more money.

Negative:

Object + modal verb + not + be + P.P.

e.g. Safety rules mustn't be broken during experiments in the science lab.

Question:

Modal verb + object + be + P.P.?

e.g. Should the classroom rules always be followed by everyone?

Skills

1. Asking and answering questions about "How to stay safe online"

A: Why is it important to stay safe online?

B: It is important because it protects me from dangers and keeps my information safe.

A: What should you do to stay safe online?

B: I should use strong passwords, be careful with strangers, and check privacy settings.

A: What shouldn't you do to stay safe online?

B: I shouldn't share my personal data or talk to people I don't know.

A: What should your strong password include?

B: My strong password should include letters, numbers, and special symbols.

2. Giving strong advice or opinion about online habits

It's important to ...

It's important to follow safety rules online.

I think/believe we should ...

I believe we should always check our privacy settings.

You should ...

You should make passwords strong.

Always > infinitive

Always check your privacy settings.

General Exercises

on Unit

2

A

Listening



نص الاستماع
في نهاية الكتاب.

1 A) Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1.** Active footprints happen when you
a) share content **b)** track visits
c) turn on your computer **d)** are hacked
- 2.** Passive footprints happen when
a) you post pictures **b)** websites track visits
c) you write messages **d)** you share content
- 3.** Who can guide you on online safety?
a) Strangers. **b)** Classmates. **c)** Trusted adults. **d)** Neighbors.

B) Answer the following questions:

4. What can protect your information?
5. What should you do before posting?
6. Give two examples of footprints.

B

Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialog:

Eslem is telling Khalid that a digital footprint is the record of everything he does online.

Khalid: What is a digital footprint?

Eslam : (1).....

Khalid: (2) _____?

Eslam : Yes, it is important. It can last forever.

Khalid : Can I delete it?

Eslam : (3) . Some things stay permanent.

Khalid: (4)

Eslam : Yes, you can post pictures.

Khalid: Can others see it?

Eslam : (5) . Always be careful.

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

surprised – giving – doing – making – persevere

Sometimes, trying something new can be hard. Omar wanted to draw a picture, but he kept (1) mistakes. He felt frustrated and thought about (2) up. His teacher came closer and gave warm advice. "Keep trying little by little," she said. Omar learned to (3) and check each part of his drawing carefully. When he finished, everyone was (4) at how good it looked.

4 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

Social media can be fun for children because they can share posts, photos, and videos with friends. However, it is very important to be careful. Some people on the internet are strangers, and they can see information if privacy settings are not used. Children should share posts only with friends or family they trust. Personal information such as addresses, phone numbers, and school names should never be shared online. Trusted adults, like parents or teachers, can help set privacy settings and explain how to stay safe. Using social media safely protects children's privacy, prevents strangers from contacting them, and helps make the internet a safer place. Children who follow these rules can enjoy online activities without danger.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The passage is mainly about
 - playing games online
 - using social media safely
 - writing homework
 - attending school
- Children should share posts only with
 - strangers
 - friends or family they trust
 - anyone online
 - classmates they do not know

B) Answer the following questions:

- What does the underlined pronoun "they" refer to?
- How does following the safety rules in the passage help a child have a good time on social media?
- Why should children not share addresses or phone numbers online?
- How does using privacy settings help children stay safe?

D Vocabulary and Structure

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The doctor used the boy's to understand why he was sick.
a) privacy b) address c) data d) settings
2. Our teacher shared a/an for learning English.
a) website b) adult c) account d) stranger
3. Please, give me some about where the party will be.
a) photos b) details c) types d) differences
4. The kids to have a fun time at the party.
a) sit b) hack c) set d) expect
5. The sandwiches be made fresh for the students every morning.
a) are b) will c) have d) do
6. Don't worry; the problem solved soon.
a) must b) are c) will d) will be

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Cartoons are (watch) by millions of children around the world.
2. Stories (be/told) by our parents before we go to sleep every night.
3. The doors (might/paint) with bright colors next week.
4. Luxor (be/visit) by lots of tourists every year.

E The Story

7 A) Answer the following questions:

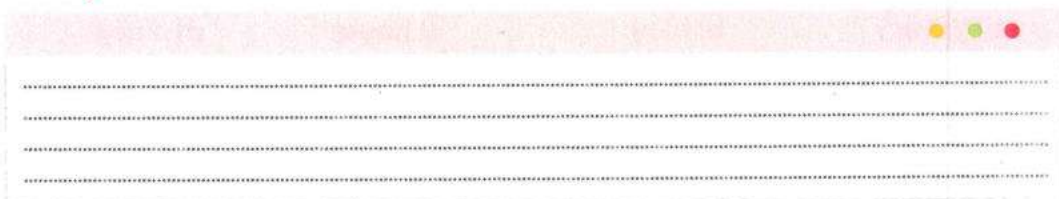
1. What problems did Amal face as the fair day came closer?
2. How did Amal feel when some children laughed behind her back?

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3. Little by little, Amal fixed the problems and finally the robot
a) blinked its eyes b) disappeared c) laughed d) broke
4. Yara said to Amal, "It's okay to"
a) make mistakes b) copy others c) give up d) hide

F Writing

8 Write an email of (90-100) words to your friend Mazen to tell him about how to stay safe online. Your name is Khalid.



17. Websites collect data like your IP address and cookies without your knowledge; this is called your footprint.
- a) active b) digital c) visible d) intentional

Language

18. Look, Ahmed memes with his friends now.
- a) share b) shares c) is sharing d) was sharing
19. I to Luxor next week.
- a) go b) goes c) went d) am going
20. Books of paper.
- a) make b) makes c) are making d) are made
21. The museum by tourists each year.
- a) is visited b) visits c) visited d) is visiting
22. English worldwide.
- a) speaks b) spoken c) is spoken d) is speaking
23. Passwords by users often.
- a) change b) changed
c) should change d) should be changed
24. Fresh bread at this bakery daily.
- a) bakes b) is baked c) should bake d) are baked
25. Now, Mom the dishes.
- a) wash b) washes c) is washing d) is washed
26. Look out, a car fast!
- a) is coming b) are coming c) come d) comes
27. You waste your time using social media.
- a) must b) should c) shouldn't d) isn't

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Listen, the children (sing) a song.
2. Nada (read) a book right now.
3. I (write) an email at the moment.
4. Look, the cat (sleep) on my bed.
5. Mom (cook) dinner right now.
6. At this moment, Salma (build) a model airplane.
7. They (play) football now.
8. I (clean) my room this afternoon.
9. Sara (paint) a picture now.
10. My dad (drive) to work this morning.
11. The baby (cry) because she is hungry.

12. Look out, that man (drive) carelessly.
13. Passwords (must keep) secret.
14. You (wear) a nice jacket today!
15. My homework (must finish) tonight.
16. Lights (should turn off) when you leave the room.
17. Teeth (must brush) before going to bed.
18. Library books (should return) on time.
19. The room should (clean) every day.
20. The letter must (send) today.
21. Doors (should lock) at night.
22. We (should) post our photos online.
23. You (shouldn't) protect your privacy on the internet.
24. School rules should (follow).
25. Screen time (should limit) by parents.
26. (Does) lunch cooked by Mom every day?

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

A)

identity – careful – Active – Passive

There are two types of digital footprints: active and passive. (1)..... footprints happen when you share something online. (2)..... footprints happen without you knowing, like when websites collect information about what you look for. Everything you do online helps build your online (3)..... You must be (4)..... when you post online.

B)

connect – digital – trends – smartphones

How wonderful the generation of today is! Gen Alpha refers to children born around 2010. They are true (1)..... natives because they grow up using technology from a very young age. They follow the latest (2)..... They spend a lot of time on their (3)....., tablets, and computers. This makes them (4)..... with others and learn new things.

C)

often – screen – balance – rarely

Gen Alpha children use so much technology. Teachers and parents (1)..... wonder how this generation will grow up with so much technology around them. Right now, many parents are trying to limit (2)..... time while also encouraging useful digital skills. Gen Alpha (3)..... spends a day without using technology, but they are also learning to (4)..... online activities with real-life connections.

4 Complete the following dialogs:

A) Aya and Salma are talking about how to be safe online.

Aya : Do you know what a digital footprint is?

Salma : (1)..... Everything you do online leaves a trace like a footprint.

Aya : (2).....?

Salma : You should use strong passwords.

Aya : (3).....?

Salma : You should think before you share posts or updates online.

Aya : What else can we do?

Salma : (4).....

Aya : Thanks for your advice!

Salma : (5).....

B) Mona and Salma are talking about technology.

Mona : Hello, Salma. (1).....?

Salma : Technology refers to smartphones, tablets, laptops, and other digital devices.

Mona : (2).....?

Salma : I spend about 6 hours a day.

Mona : Do you have a smart board at school?

Salma : (3)....., we use it to show videos.

Mona : (4).....?

Salma : Yes, I use my smartphone to connect with my friends.

Mona : What do you use your tablet for?

Salma : (5).....

C) Uncle Samy and Manar are talking about Gen Alpha.

Uncle Samy : Do you know that you are one of Gen Alpha?

Manar : (1).....!

Uncle Samy : (2).....?

Manar : They use social media to learn about the world and to connect with others.

Uncle Samy : I think Gen Alpha children spend too much time using social media.

Manar : (3).....

Uncle Samy : What (4).....?

Manar : Parents should encourage them to limit screen time.

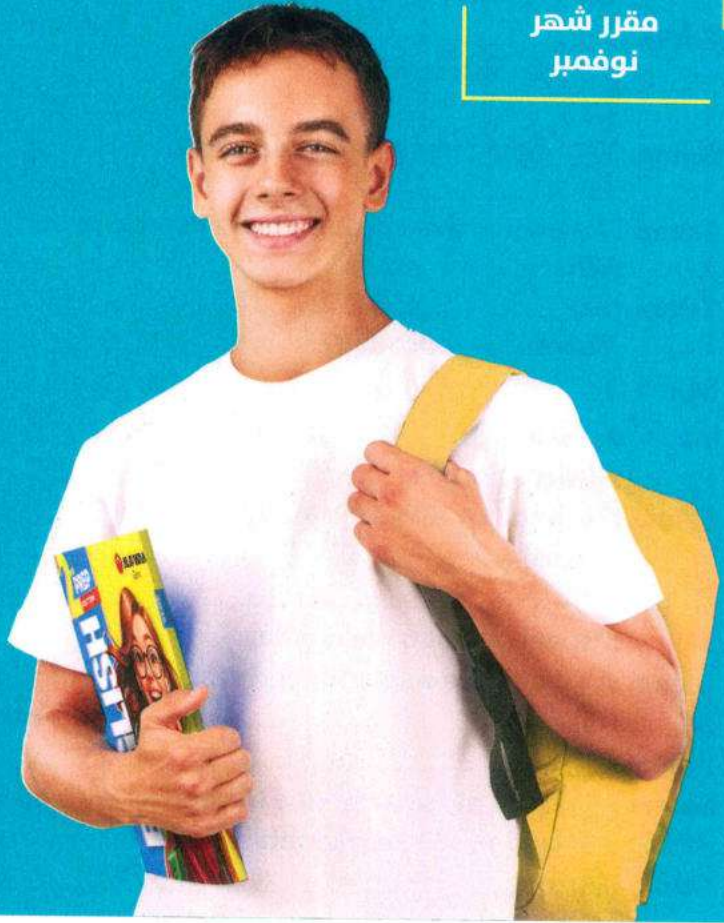
Uncle Samy : So, how much time do you spend on screen, Manar?

Manar : (5).....

2

MODULE

مقرر شهر
نوفمبر



Unit **3** Facing Challenges

Unit **4** Art and Expression

Module 2 Question Bank

Unit

3

FACING CHALLENGES

Speak
Confidently

YOU CAN
DO IT.

MISTAKE

DOUBT

MISTAKE



LEARNING OUTCOMES

Reading

Identify the main idea and supporting details in a motivational article.

Infer the meanings of new words using time expressions and context clues.

Listening

Identify the main idea and details in a spoken story.

Identify feelings and choices of speakers based on language clues.

Speaking

Describe personal or real-life challenges and explain how they are overcome.

Apply target grammar and vocabulary to discuss problems and solutions.

Connect ideas using "because, so, and although".

Language

Use the past simple and past continuous correctly to describe past events.

Use time expressions in context.

Writing

Write about a personal challenge using appropriate vocabulary and past tenses.

Organize a short text with clear sequencing using time expressions.

A VOCABULARY LESSON 1

• قم بدراسة المفردات الرئيسية جيدًا لدرجة الإقناع:
حيث إنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.
• قم باختبار حفظك للمفردات عن طريق الرجوع إلى
ملحق التقويم وتسميع الكلمات الخاصة بالدرسين.

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

challenge (n)	تحدي*	determined (adj)	مصرم/عازم
courage (n)	شجاعة	discouraged (adj)	محبط
determination (n)	عزيمة/إصرار	obstacle (n)	عقبة/عائق

Additional Vocabulary المفردات الإضافية

especially (adv)	خصوصًا	quiz (n)	اختبار قصير
improve (d) (v)	يتحسن	recently (adv)	حديثًا
notice (d) (v)	يلاحظ	solution (n)	حل
passive voice (n)	مبنى مجهول	suggest (ed) (v)	يقترح
practice (d) (v)	يمارس/يتدرب	trouble (n)	ورطة/مشكلة

Language Expressions & Prepositions التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

at a time	في كل مرة	proud of	فخور بـ
keep going	يستمر/يواصل	show determination	يظهر عزيمة
late for	متأخر على	struggle with	يكافح/يناضل مع
make posters for	يصمم ملصقات لـ	take courage	يتطلب شجاعة
make recommendations	يقدم توصيات	take it step by step	خذ الأمر خطوة بخطوة

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past simple	Past participle
become يصبح	became	become
overcome يتغلب على	overcame	overcome

Words and Opposites الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
before	قبل	after	بعد
difficult	صعب	easy	سهل
pass	ينجح في	fail	يفشل/يرسب في
possible	ممكن	impossible	مستحيل

Read and complete with a word from the list:

make – keep – show – discouraged

- 1 It's normal to feel if you don't win a game.
- 2 We will posters for our school play.
- 3 You must determination to learn a new sport.

LESSON 2

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

attitude (n)	موقف/سلوك/تصرف	disappointed (adj)	خائب الأمل/محبط
bleed (ed) (v)	ينزف	gold (n)	ذهب
bronze (n)	برونز	medal (n)	ميدالية
bump (n)	مطب/نتوء	quit (ted) (v)	يترك/يتخلى عن
chance (n)	فرصة	race (n)	سباق
compete (d) (v)	يتنافس	race helper (n)	مشرف السباق
crowd (n)	جمهور/حشد	silver (n)	فضة

Additional Vocabulary المفردات الإضافية

cheer (ed) (v)	يهتف/يشجع	nervous (adj)	عصبي/متوتر
cross (ed) (v)	يعبر	train (ed) (v)	يتدرب
finish line	خط النهاية	upset (adj)	منزعج
flat tire (n)	إطار فارغ	weather (n)	طقس
halfway (adv)	في منتصف الطريق		

Language Expressions & Prepositions التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

advice for	نصيحة لـ	practice her breathing	تتمرّن على التنفس
at a speed	بسرعة	prepare for	يستعد/يحضر لـ
at the beginning of	في بداية	take a deep breath	يأخذ نفساً عميقاً
go for a run	يذهب للجري	trip on	يتعثّر في
go well	يسير على ما يرام	win against my fear	أفهر خوفى

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past simple	Past participle
drive يقود/يسوق	drove	driven
fall يقع	fell	fallen
forget ينسى	forgot	forgotten
hurt يؤلم/يصيب/يضر	hurt	hurt
lose يخسر/يفقد	lost	lost
ring يرن	rang	rung
shake يهز	shook	shaken
stand up يقف	stood up	stood up
teach يعلم/يُدرّس	taught	taught
wake up يستيقظ	woke up	woken up

Read and complete with a word from the list:

tire – for – at – medal

- 1 I received a gold for winning my race.
- 2 My bicycle has a flat I can't ride it to the park.
- 3 You must prepare the big test.

Language Notes

1 Time expressions:

(أخيراً/في النهاية finally, ثم then, بعد ذلك after that)

They help us understand the order of events in a story.

إنها تساعدنا على فهم ترتيب الأحداث في القصة.

- I went to the market, **after that** I returned home.
- I woke up early, **then** I had my breakfast.
- We studied hard, and **finally** we passed the exam.

2 become/stay + adj.

يصبح/يبقى

- Grammar lessons **became** very difficult.
- What helped you **stay** strong?

ادرس مفردات اللغة جيداً لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.



Definitions التعريفات

courage	شجاعة	being brave ⁽¹⁾ when facing difficulties ⁽²⁾	(1) شجاع
challenge	تحدي	a difficult situation ⁽³⁾ or task ⁽⁴⁾	(2) صعوبات
determination	عزيمة	not giving up easily	(3) موقف
obstacle	عقبة	something that blocks your path ⁽⁵⁾	(4) مهمة
			(5) طريق

Words and Synonyms الكلمات ومرادفها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
courage (n)	شجاعة	bravery	شجاعة
crowd (n)	جمهور/حشد	many people	كثير من الناس
discouraged (adj)	محبط	disappointed	خائب الأمل/محبط

Suffix اللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Suffix	اللاحقة	Function	الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
determine (v)	يضع	-ation		تحول الفعل إلى اسم		determination (n)	عزيمة/إصرار
nerve (n)	عصب	-ous		تحول الاسم إلى صفة		nervous (adj)	عصبي/متوتر

Prefix البادئة

Prefix	البادئة	Word	الكلمة	Function	الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
dis-		encouraged (adj)	مشجع	تحول للعكس		discouraged (adj)	محبط
im-		possible (adj)	ممكّن			impossible (adj)	مستحيل

تطبيق الأضواء

محتواك الرقمي مجاناً مع الكتاب:
امسح الكود الشخصي بالغلاف الداخلي في
نهاية الكتاب، واحصل على محتوى المادة
الرقمي من تطبيق الأضواء.



نزل التطبيق أو ادخل على موقع الأضواء:
www.aladwaa.com



B Reading & Listening Skills

Lesson 1

Pre-reading questions:

- 1 What challenge have you faced recently?
- 2 How did you feel before and after facing this challenge?

 Read the following text. In pairs, guess the meanings of the words in bold.

SB page 42

Soha always enjoyed English, but this year she faced a new **challenge**⁽¹⁾ — grammar lessons became very difficult. She especially **struggled**⁽²⁾ with **the passive voice**⁽³⁾. Understanding the rules felt impossible, and after failing a quiz, she felt **discouraged**⁽⁴⁾.

"This is too hard," Soha thought. But instead of giving up, she showed **determination**⁽⁵⁾. Her teacher noticed her struggle and said, "Take it step by step. Focus on one rule at a time. Don't be afraid to ask for help.

"With determination, Soha started to work harder. She watched videos, practiced with a friend, she made grammar posters for her room. Each grammar rule felt like an **obstacle**⁽⁶⁾, but she didn't stop.

It took time, but Soha slowly began to improve. She passed her next quiz and felt proud of herself.

"I'm not perfect yet, but I'm trying," she said. "It takes **courage**⁽⁷⁾ to **keep going**⁽⁸⁾, even when something feels difficult."



(1) تحدّ

(2) عانت

(3) المصنوع للمجهول

(4) متحبط

(5) إصرار

(6) عقبة

(7) شجاعة

(8) يستمر

Post-reading questions:

SB

- 1 What challenge did Soha face in her English class?

- 2 How did Soha show determination?

- 3 What lesson can we learn from Soha's experience?

Pre-listening questions:

- 1 What is the most difficult thing you have ever faced?
- 2 What helped you stay strong and not give up?



Lesson 2

Listen to Laila's story. How did Laila prepare for the race before race day?

SB page 44

Advice for Facing Challenges

Laila had been training for six months to run a long race in her city. Every morning, she went for a run in the park. She practiced her **breathing**⁽¹⁾ and tried to eat healthy food so she would have enough energy for race day. Finally, the big day came. Laila woke up feeling excited, but also a little nervous. She had never run such a long race before. At the start, everything went well. The weather was nice, the **crowd**⁽²⁾ was **cheering**⁽³⁾, and she ran at a good speed. But halfway through the race, something happened. Laila **tripped**⁽⁴⁾ on a small **bump**⁽⁵⁾ in the road and fell down. Her knee started to **bleed**⁽⁶⁾, and she felt weak and upset. A race helper ran to her and asked, "Do you want to stop?" Laila shook her head and said, "No. I worked too hard to **quit**⁽⁷⁾ now." She stood up slowly, took a deep breath, and started running again. Her knee hurt with every step, but she kept going because she didn't want to give up after so many months of training. In the end, she crossed the **finish line**⁽⁸⁾. She was slower than she wanted to be, but the crowd cheered loudly, and she felt proud. Later, she said, "I didn't win the race or a medal ... but I won against my **fear**⁽⁹⁾."



- | | |
|------------|----------------|
| (1) التنفس | (2) الجمهور |
| (3) يهتف | (4) يتعثر |
| (5) مطب | (6) يئرف |
| (7) يستسلم | (8) خط النهاية |
| (9) خوف | |

Post-listening questions:

SB

- 1 What challenge did Laila face at the beginning of the story?
.....
- 2 How long had Laila been training for the long race?
.....
- 3 How did Laila feel on the race day?
.....
- 4 What lesson does the story teach you?
.....

1 Vocabulary building:

Meaning/Synonym – Opposite/Antonym

ارجع للقطعة ص 112-113 وحاول أن تستخرج منها كلمات متشابهة أو متضادة في المعنى للكلمات التالية:

Meaning/Synonym	Opposite/Antonym
block عقبة	persevere يثابر
observe يلاحظ	content قانع
take part يشارك	calm هادئ

2 Comprehension strategies:

من الممكن أن يطلب منك وضع عنوان للفقرة بدلاً من السؤال عن الفكرة الأساسية، ولذلك سنقدم في هذا الجزء كيفية وضع عنوان لفقرة:

To give a title to a passage, you should:

- Read the passage carefully: Understand what the passage is mainly about—what the main idea is.

اقرأ القطعة بعناية وحاول أن تفهم الفكرة الرئيسية لها.

- Pick out keywords: Choose 2–3 important words from the passage that relate to the topic. استخرج الكلمات المهمة التي ترتبط بالموضوع.

- Keep it short and clear: A good title is usually 3–7 words. Make it catchy and meaningful. اجعل العنوان قصيراً وواضحاً، فعادة ما يكون من ٣ إلى ٧ كلمات. اجعله جذاباً وله معنى. لاحظ أنه عندما نقوم بإعطاء عنوان نضع الكلمات الرئيسية بحروف كبيرة.

FOR EXAMPLE:

Soha always enjoyed English, but this year she faced a new challenge—grammar lessons became very difficult. She especially struggled with the passive voice. Understanding the rules felt impossible, and after failing a quiz, she felt discouraged.

- The best title for the passage is “.....” (إعطاء عنوان مناسب للنص)

a) The Passive Voice

b) Grammar Lessons

c) Soha’s Challenge

d) Failing a Quiz

3 Translation:

A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

اختر الترجمة العربية الصحيحة:

- Don’t be afraid to ask for help.

☐ - اذكر من طلب المساعدة.

☐ - لا تخف من طلب المساعدة.

B) Choose the correct English translation:

اختر الترجمة الإنجليزية الصحيحة:

- وفي النهاية، عبرت ليلي خط النهاية.

☐ In the end, Laila crossed the finish line.

☐ In the end, Laila ran away from the finish line.

LESSON

7

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Karim found a to fix his bike quickly at home.
a) solution b) challenge c) obstacle d) courage
2. Rania felt to win the race, so she trained daily.
a) discouraged b) determined c) funny d) shy
3. Adam learned to ride his bike and tried to it step by step.
a) take b) throw c) read d) hide
4. The team's helped them practice football every morning.
a) solution b) fear c) attitude d) determination
5. Omar faced a big when he tried to climb the high mountain.
a) challenge b) chance c) courage d) solution
6. Ahmed needed to ask the teacher for more help in math. He's shy.
a) trouble b) posters c) obstacles d) courage
7. Raneem looked after forgetting her homework at home again.
a) noisy b) proud c) discouraged d) hungry
8. Jana faced a/an when her computer did not turn on.
a) quiz b) answer c) obstacle d) solution
9. Amar tried not to struggle the long test, but it was difficult.
a) at b) with c) to d) into
10. The teacher asked students to recommendations about books they enjoyed.
a) make b) think c) take d) do

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

solution – of – to – discouraged – showed

Amal faced a big challenge at school when she tried a difficult project. She felt (1) at first, but her friend suggested some ideas to her. Amal practiced every day and (2) determination. She learned to take it step by step and finally found a (3) Her teacher was proud (4) her, and Amal began to enjoy the success. It especially made her confident.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The red car drove a speed of fifty miles.
 a) with b) in c) at d) on
2. You need to drive slowly in that street; it has a lot of
 a) rivers b) chances c) games d) bumps
3. If you hurt yourself, you may from a small cut.
 a) bleed b) drive c) shake d) feel
4. The children will for the first place in the race.
 a) compete b) take c) give d) complete
5. Lama decided to her bad habit of being late.
 a) start b) quit c) keep d) disappear
6. The crowd loudly as the runner finished the race.
 a) shared b) checked c) cheered d) shook
7. My friend has a good towards learning new things.
 a) problem b) attitude c) struggle d) mistake
8. You have one left to finish your project.
 a) medal b) chance c) bump d) race
9. Kamel won a/an medal for second place in the race.
 a) gold b) silver c) bronze d) iron
10. I felt when I couldn't finish my homework on time.
 a) proud b) disappointed c) excited d) sad

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

cheered – faced – nervous – line – challenges

Ali trained for a running race in the park. At the start, he felt (1) because the path had many bumps. His coach gave him advice for keeping balance and staying focused. Ali kept going, even when he fell once and hurt his knee. The crowd (2) for him, giving him energy for the last part. Ali crossed the finish (3) and won a bronze medal. He learned that courage and determination help overcome (4)

C Language

The Past tenses

أزمنة الماضي

Grammar story:



Yesterday, Omar **walked** (1) to the store with his sister. They **bought** (2) some fruit and snacks. Afterward, they **watched** (3) a movie together. They **enjoyed** (4) their day.

-Try to write the infinitive form of the bold verbs.

1. walk
2.
3.
4.

1 The Past Simple Tense

زمن الماضي البسيط

Usage الاستخدام

We use the past simple to talk about actions that started and finished in the past.

نستخدم زمن الماضي البسيط للحديث عن الأفعال التي بدأت وانتهت في الماضي.

e.g. Laila **passed** her last quiz.

Form

التكوين

Affirmative

الإثبات

Subject + الفاعل +
التصريف الثاني من الفعل المنتظم أو غير المنتظم

- e.g. • They **visited** their grandparents last weekend.
• Samir **ate** breakfast early this morning.

Negative

النفي

Subject + الفاعل + **didn't** + inf.

- e.g. • They **didn't visit** their grandparents last weekend.
• Samir **didn't eat** breakfast early this morning.

Interrogative السؤال

Did + subject + الفاعل + inf. ...?

e.g. A: Did you **watch** the football match yesterday? B: Yes, I **did**. / No, I **didn't**.

Q. word + أداة الاستفهام + did + subject + inf. ...?

e.g. A: When **did** your sister **finish** painting the picture? B: She **finished** last night.

Time Expressions

التعبيرات الزمنية

تستخدم هذه التعبيرات مع زمن الماضي البسيط.

from 1999 to - سنة ماضية + in - منذ ago + وقت الماضي - عدد + وقت + last - أمس yesterday
- (إذا تم الانتهاء من فترة الصباح (if it's already finished هذا الصباح 2010 - this morning
في الماضي in the past - في يوم من الأيام one day - أمس the other day

e.g. We had a picnic last weekend.

I ate breakfast early this morning.

One day, I found a little puppy in the garden.

My dad traveled abroad in 2020.



Got it ?

تمكنت هذه الجزئية من التعرف على كيفية إجابة سؤال
تصحيح الخطأ مدعمة بأسباب الإجابة لتعزيز فهمك للدرس.



Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1 My grandma (teach) me how to play the guitar. It was three years ago.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (taught) لوجود ago الدالة على أن الجملة في زمن الماضي البسيط.

2 Last year, I (not/travel) to Alexandria. I went to Hurghada.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (didn't travel) لوجود Last الدالة على أن الجملة في زمن الماضي البسيط والجملة هنا منفية.

3 Why did the coach (asked) Omar to join the team?

- الإجابة الصحيحة (ask) لوجود did التي يتبعها مصدر الفعل.

4 Salma visited her grandmother (next) weekend.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (last) لوجود visited فعل في زمن الماضي البسيط.

2

The Past Continuous Tense

زمن الماضي المستمر

Form

التكوين

Affirmative

الإثبات

Subject + was/were +
ing + مصدر الفعل

(was) مع الاسم المفرد والضمائر (I, he, she, it)
(were) مع الاسم الجمع والضمائر (you, we, they)

e.g. Laila was running when she fell.

You were watching TV all day
yesterday.

Negative

النفي

Subject + wasn't/weren't +
ing + مصدر الفعل

e.g. I wasn't sleeping last Friday
evening.

My parents weren't watching
the movie last night at 9.

Question

السؤال

A) Yes/No questions:

السؤال ب (هل)

Was + (I, he, she, it, اسم مفرد) + **inf.** مصدر الفعل + **ing**?

e.g. A: **Was** Aya **sleeping** yesterday afternoon?

B: Yes, she was.

B: No, she wasn't.

Were + (we, you, they, اسم جمع) + **inf.** مصدر الفعل + **ing**?

e.g. A: **Were** they **watching** TV?

B: Yes, they were.

B: No, they weren't.

B) Wh- questions:

السؤال بأداة استفهام

Q. Word + **was/were** + **subject** الفاعل + **inf.** مصدر الفعل + **ing**?

e.g. A: **What were** you doing at 5:00 yesterday?

B: I **was playing** football.

Usage

الاستخدام

We use the past continuous to describe an action in progress at a particular moment in the past.

نستخدم الماضي المستمر لوصف فعل كان مستمراً في وقت محدد تماماً في الماضي.

e.g. I **was reading** a book at 7 p.m. yesterday.

• The kids **were playing** all day yesterday.

We use the past continuous to describe two actions happening at the same time in the past.

نستخدم الماضي المستمر لوصف فعلين يحدثان في نفس الوقت في الماضي.

e.g. While I **was studying**, my brother **was watching** TV.

We use the past continuous to describe a longer action interrupted by a shorter action in the past.

نستخدم الماضي المستمر لوصف فعل طويل انقطع بواسطة فعل قصير في الماضي البسيط.

e.g. I **was doing** my homework when Hala **returned** home.

Conjunctions الروابط

يمكن الربط بين الماضي البسيط والماضي المستمر باستخدام الروابط التالية:

When عندما - **While/As** أثناء / بينما

1. **While/As** + **past continuous** , **past simple**
e.g. **While** I **was reading** a book, the phone **rang**.
2. **Past simple** + **while/as** + **past continuous**
e.g. Grandfather **arrived** **while** Mom **was cooking**.
3. **When** + **past simple** , **past continuous**
e.g. **When** it **rained**, I **was cycling** to school.
4. **Past continuous** + **when** + **past simple**
e.g. My father **was watching** TV **when** the light **turned off**.

لاحظ

١- إذا لم يتبع **While** فاعل فيأتي الفعل بعدها **inf. + ing** بشرط أن يكون الفاعل واحدًا في الجملتين.

1. **While** + **inf. مصدر الفعل + ing** , **past simple**
e.g. **While** **returning** home, I **met** my old friend, Rami.

٢- للتعبير عن حدثين مستمرين في نفس الوقت في الماضي دون أن يقطع أحدهما الآخر.

2. **While/As** + **past continuous** , **past continuous**
e.g. **While/As** my mom **was cooking**, I **was cleaning** the house.



Got it ?

تتمكنك هذه الجزئية من التعرف على كيفية إجابة سؤال تصحيح الخطأ مدعمة بأسباب الإجابة لتعزيز فهمك للدرس.

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- 1 While John was playing the guitar, Linda (come) in.
- الإجابة الصحيحة (came) لأن الجملة التي تتبع **While** تأتي في زمن الماضي المستمر، أما الجملة الأخرى فتأتي في زمن الماضي البسيط.
- 2 We (not/cycle) all day yesterday.
- الإجابة الصحيحة (weren't cycling) لوجود **all day yesterday** ويأتي معها ماضٍ مستمر.
- 3 Was Laila (played) computer games all day yesterday?
- الإجابة الصحيحة (playing) لوجود **Was** التي يتبعها فعل مضاف إليه **ing**.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. While Eman the puzzle, the telephone rang.
 a) was solving b) solved c) was solved d) solve
2. My little brother a big ice cream after school yesterday.
 a) eat b) eats c) eating d) ate
3. At three o'clock yesterday, the children in the garden happily.
 a) play b) was playing
 c) were played d) were playing
4. Did he the glass while he was washing the dishes carefully?
 a) break b) broke c) breaking d) was breaking
5. Was the boy the picture when he dropped the colors suddenly?
 a) color b) colored c) coloring d) colors
6. Lara was drawing a picture when her friend the room.
 a) was enter b) was entering c) entered d) enters
7. As Dalia her bike, she saw a plane in the sky.
 a) ride b) rode c) riding d) was riding
8. Was the girl a nice picture at six o'clock last evening?
 a) draw b) drew c) draws d) drawing
9. Ahmed was sleeping when the loud noise him up.
 a) wake b) wakes c) waking d) woke
10. As Amina her homework, the lights went out suddenly.
 a) do b) did c) doing d) was doing

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. My little sister (eat) at a restaurant yesterday afternoon.
2. Hana was painting a picture when her friend (enter).
3. Did the bell (rang) while the kids were eating lunch?
4. At three o'clock yesterday, the kids (play) in the park.
5. While Marwa (clean) her room, she heard a loud cry.

3 Find the mistake in the following sentences and correct it:

1. Zeinab buys a big pizza last night. (.....)
2. Dina was reading a story when the lights go off. (.....)
3. They playing basketball at five o'clock yesterday. (.....)
4. As I was walking to school, it begin to rain. (.....)
5. As Omar rode his bike, he fell down suddenly. (.....)

PRACTICE MORE



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- ▶ 1. While Ali a story, his eyes closed slowly with sleep.
a) read b) reading c) reads d) was reading
2. Mona a beautiful picture for her mom last weekend.
a) draws b) draw c) drew d) drawing
3. Who did you while you were shopping at the store yesterday?
a) see b) saw c) seeing d) sees
4. While Basel breakfast, the school bus arrived early that day.
a) eat b) ate c) eating d) was eating
5. The baby was the toy when it fell down.
a) shake b) shook c) shaking d) shakes
6. As the kids games, mom called them for dinner.
a) play b) played c) playing d) were playing
7. The girl did not fast in the race yesterday.
a) run b) ran c) running d) runs
8. What was Huda when her father entered the room?
a) paint b) painted c) painting d) paints

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- ▶ 1. Did Omar (singing) a happy song at the party?
2. The kids were playing outside when the rain (start) to fall.
3. Nada was drinking juice when her brother (call) her.
4. While we (have) dinner, the phone rang loudly twice.

3 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets:

- ▶ 1. Omar plays tennis every Friday. (last)
.....
2. Karim drinks milk every morning. (yesterday morning)
.....
3. The bell rang while Amira was singing a song. (when)
.....
4. I walked to school. It began to rain. (while)
.....
5. He played the piano. His mom called. (As)
.....

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بالإجابة عن الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درس في ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.





Expressing problems and suggesting solutions

التعبير عن المشاكل واقتراح الحلول

1. Expressing Problems:

التعبير عن المشاكل:

a) It's difficult to (inf.) ...

من الصعب أن ...

• It's difficult to finish my homework when the TV is on.

b) I have trouble with (v + ing/noun) ...

أواجه مشكلة مع ...

• I have trouble with solving math problems.

c) The problem is ...

المشكلة هي ...

• The problem is the computer isn't working properly.

2. Suggesting Solutions / Making Recommendations:

اقتراح الحلول / تقديم التوصيات:

a) It might be a good idea to (inf.) ...

قد تكون فكرة جيدة أن ...

• It might be a good idea to ask the teacher for help.

b) How about ... (v + ing/noun)?

ماذا عن ...

• How about working together with a friend to finish the project?

c) Maybe we should (inf.) ...

ربما يجب علينا ...

• Maybe we should go for a walk to clear our minds.

d) I suggest (v + ing) ...

أقترح ...

• I suggest reading the instructions carefully before starting.

Speaking Exercise

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analyzing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating



Complete the following dialog:

► Amal has trouble with reading long stories. She gets tired quickly.

Lina : Why do you look upset, Amal?

Amal : (1).....

Lina : (2).....?

Amal : I get tired quickly.

Lina : (3).....

Amal : That could work. I'll read a few pages every day.

Lina : (4).....?

Amal : Good idea! I may ask my sister to read with me.

Lina : (5).....

Amal : Yes! I will try making reading fun with pictures.

How to write about a personal challenge

كيفية الكتابة عن تحدي شخصي

1. What problem did you have today?

ما المشكلة التي واجهتها اليوم؟

- I had trouble finishing my homework because the TV was on.

واجهت صعوبة في إنهاء واجبي لأن التلفاز كان يعمل.

2. How did that problem make you feel?

كيف شعرت بسبب هذه المشكلة؟

- I felt frustrated and a little upset.

شعرت بالإحباط وقليل من الانزعاج.

3. What solution did you try first?

ما الحل الذي جربته أولاً؟

- I turned off the TV to focus on my homework.

أوقفت التلفاز لأركز على واجبي.

4. What other solutions did you consider?

ما الحلول الأخرى التي فكرت بها؟

- I decided to do my homework a little at a time.

قررت أن أنجز واجبي خطوة خطوة.

5. How did the solutions help you?

كيف ساعدتك هذه الحلول؟

- They helped me finish my homework quickly and feel proud.

ساعدتنني على إنهاء واجبي بسرعة والشعور بالفخر.

6. What advice would you give to someone with the same problem?

ما النصيحة التي تعطيها لشخص يواجه نفس المشكلة؟

- I suggest turning off distractions and making a plan.

أقترح إيقاف عوامل التشيت ووضع خطة للعمل.

اقرأ هذا النموذج المجاب عنه لإضافة أفكار جديدة وتتعلم منه:

“A problem you had”

Today, I had trouble finishing my homework because the TV was on. I felt frustrated and a little upset. First, I turned off the TV to focus. Then, I decided to do my homework a little at a time. These solutions helped me finish quickly and feel proud. I realized that taking small steps is better than rushing. If someone has the same problem, I suggest turning off distractions and making a plan. This made my work easier and more enjoyable.

TEST YOURSELF

Lessons (1 & 2)



نص الاستماع
في نهاية الكتاب.

1 A) Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Who suggested Amal practice climbing?
 - Her brother.
 - Her friend.
 - Her father.
 - Her teacher.
- Amal faced many while climbing.
 - challenges
 - friends
 - schools
 - games
- Amal finally felt of herself.
 - proud
 - tired
 - sad
 - angry

B) Listen and complete:

- Amal learned to take it by step.
- She going every day.
- Amal began to the amazing view.

2 Complete the following dialog:

Sara has trouble with solving math problems.

Tariq : Hey Sara, why do you look sad?

Sara : (1).....

Tariq : (2).....?

Sara : I find them hard for me.

Tariq : (3).....?

Sara : No, my mom doesn't help me.

Tariq : How about practicing a few problems every day?

Sara : (4).....

Tariq : (5).....

Sara : I like your suggestion! Let's study together after school.

3 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

determination – tripped – flat – depended – crowd

Tariq joined a cycling race with his team. At first, he felt discouraged because his bike had a (1) tire. He took a deep breath and fixed it carefully. During the race, he (2) on a bump, but he stood up and continued. The (3) cheered him on, giving him energy for the last part. Tariq finished the race and won a bronze medal. He learned that (4) and a good attitude are key to face challenges.

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Rami eating pizza instead of burgers for lunch.
a) practices b) suggests c) notices d) faces
2. The children liked the fair, the big rides with flashing lights.
a) especially b) quickly c) recently d) slowly
3. The car was very fast and exciting to watch.
a) group b) class c) race d) chance
4. The prize for first place was a huge medal.
a) plastic b) silver c) bronze d) gold
5. The kids were playing outside when the rain suddenly.
a) fall b) falls c) falling d) fell
6. What were the kids when their aunt arrived?
a) do b) did c) doing d) does

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. The bird was flying high as the cat (jump) up high.
2. Who did the girl (meeting) while she was walking home?
3. Last evening at six, Heba (draw) a nice picture.
4. What did you (found) while you were walking in the park?

6 Find the mistake in the following sentences and correct it:

1. While Hana eating, her cat jumped on the table. (.....)
2. As Amr was reading, the phone rings loudly. (.....)
3. Islam read a story at nine last night. (.....)
4. Esraa was brushing her teeth when the water stop running. (.....)

7 Write a paragraph of (90-100) words on:

"A challenge you faced"



Challenging Questions

مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب.

Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets:

1. Hala plays with her doll every day. (last night)
2. The teacher called while the kids were jumping rope. (when)
3. I read a story. My mom entered. (while)

Assess your progress ★★★★★

< 50% Study again

50 : 64% Practice more

65 : 84% Take more exams

85 : 100% Well done!

A VOCABULARY LESSON 3

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

electric train (n)	قطار كهربائي	traffic (n)	حركة المرور
flyover (n)	كوبرى علوى	traffic jam (n)	ازدحام مرورى
monorail (n)	قطار أحادى الخط	transportation (n)	مواصلات/نقل
pollution (n)	تلوث	tunnel (n)	نفق
stressed (adj)	متوتر/مضغوط		

Additional Vocabulary المفردات الإضافية

air (n)	هواء	passage (n)	ممر
airport (n)	مطار	peace (n)	سلام
blocked (adj)	مسدود/مغلق	rail (n)	قضيب سكة حديد
cause (d) (v)	يسبب	reduce (d) (v)	يقلل
freedom (n)	حرية	result (n)	نتيجة
public (adj)	عام	single (adj)	واحد/مفرد
highway (n)	طريق سريع	plan (n)	خطة
metro line (n)	خط مترو		

Language Expressions & Prepositions التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

move around	يتجول/يتنقل	get blocked	يسد (الطريق)
on highways	فى الطرق السريعة	build roads	يبنى الطرق
stuck in	عالق فى	Tahya Misr Bridge	كوبرى تحيا مصر
build a train	يصنع قطارًا		

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past simple	Past participle	Present	Past simple	Past participle
get يحصل على	got	got	sell يبيع	sold	sold

Words and Opposites الكلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym) عكسها	Word الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym) عكسها
above فوق	below أسفل	clean نظيف	dirty متسخ

Read and complete with a word from the list: **stressed – get – reduce – clean**

- 1 The road started to blocked by a huge amount of snow.
- 2 It's easy to get when you have too many things to do at once.
- 3 We should all try to the amount of waste we produce.

LESSON 4

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

admire (d) (v)	يعجب بـ	honesty (n)	صدق/أمانة
competition (n)	مسابقة/منافسة	inspire (d) (v)	يلهم
creativity (n)	إبداع	inspiring (adj)	مُلهم
criticize (d) (v)	ينتقد	presentation (n)	عرض تقديمي
display (ed) (v)	يعرض	success (n)	نجاح
honest (adj)	صادق/أمين		

Additional Vocabulary المفردات الإضافية

clap (ped) (v)	يصفق	proudly (adv)	بفخر
humor (n)	فكاهة/مزاح	question (ed) (v)	يسأل
indifference (n)	لا مبالاة	responsibly (adv)	بشكل مسئول
prize (n)	جائزة	sadness (n)	حزن

Language Expressions & Prepositions التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

come up with	يبتكر/يأتي بـ (فكرة)	make a noise	يحدث ضوضاء
react to	يتفاعل مع	stay true to	يبقى وفيًا لـ
follow dreams	يتبع أحلام	work hard	يعمل بجد

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past simple	Past participle	Present	Past simple	Past participle
show يبين	showed	shown	stand يقف	stood	stood

Words and Opposites الكلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym) عكسها
honesty الأمانة	dishonesty عدم الأمانة

Read and complete with a word from the list: **prize – inspire – to – for**

- 1 The teacher wanted to her students to read more books.
- 2 It was great to win a in the school science fair.
- 3 I didn't know how to react the surprising news.

Vocabulary Builder

ادرس مفردات اللغة جيداً
لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.



Definitions التعريفات

flyover	كوبرى علوى	a road that passes ⁽¹⁾ over another road on a bridge	(1) يمر
monorail	قطار أحادي الخط	a train that runs on a single rail, usually above the ground	(2) ضغط (3) أصلي (4) موثوق
move around	يتجول	to travel or go from place to place	(5) يكذب (6) يخدع
stressed	مضغوط/متوتر	feeling worried, nervous, or under pressure ⁽²⁾	(7) قدوة
traffic jam	ازدحام مروري	long lines of cars that cannot move or are moving very slowly	
tunnel	نفق	a passage built under the ground or through a mountain	
creativity	إبداع	coming up with new and original ⁽³⁾ ideas	
display	يعرض	to show something so others see it	
honestly	بأمانة/بصدق	in a trustful ⁽⁴⁾ way; not lying ⁽⁵⁾ or deceiving ⁽⁶⁾	
inspire	يلهم	to be a role model ⁽⁷⁾ for others in doing good things	
determination	إصرار	not giving up, even when there are difficulties	

Words and Synonyms الكلمات ومرادفها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
busy (adj)	مزدحم	crowded	مزدحم
reduce (v)	يقلل	decrease	يقلل

Suffix اللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Suffix	اللاحقة	Function	الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
free (adj)	حر	-dom		تحويل الكلمة إلى اسم		freedom (n)	حرية
compete (v)	يتنافس	-ition				competition (n)	مسابقة/منافسة
creative (adj)	مبدع	-ity				creativity (n)	إبداع
honest (adj)	أمين	-y				honesty (n)	صدق/أمانة
sad (adj)	حزين	-ness		تحويل الصفة إلى حال		sadness (n)	حزن
proud (adj)	فخور	-ly				proudly (adv)	بفخر
honest (adj)	أمين					honestly (adv)	بأمانة
responsible (adj)	مسئول					responsibly (adv)	بمسؤولية

B Reading & Listening Skills

Lesson 3

Pre-reading questions:

- 1 What traffic problems do you see in your city?
- 2 How do traffic problems affect people's lives?

 Read the following text.

SB page 46

Traffic Problems in Cairo and Their Solutions

Cairo is a very busy city. Every day, there is a big **traffic jam**⁽¹⁾ on streets and highways. Many people drive cars, and roads get blocked. This causes pollution, making the air dirty, it also makes people feel **stressed**⁽²⁾ and tired from waiting.

Egypt is working to solve this problem. New metro lines like Line 3 and Line 4 were built. Projects such as Tahya Misr Bridge and 6th of October Bridge help cars move faster. The country is building an electric train and a monorail to give people more ways to travel.

Egypt also made **flyovers**⁽³⁾ and **tunnels**⁽⁴⁾. These plans make the roads better.

Now, traffic is a little better. People use public transportation more. Egypt wants to build more roads, bridges, and train lines in the future. This will help Cairo become cleaner and easier to **move around**⁽⁵⁾.



- | | |
|-------------------|-----------|
| (1) ازدحام المرور | (2) مضغوط |
| (3) كبارى علوية | (4) أنفاق |
| (5) يتجول | |

Post-reading questions:

SB

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 What is one result of traffic jams in Cairo?
a) Clean air. b) Less travel. c) Pollution. d) Empty streets.
- 2 Which bridge helps solve traffic problems?
a) Nile River Bridge. b) Tahya Misr Bridge.
c) Peace Bridge. d) Freedom Bridge.
- 3 What public transport projects are being built in Egypt now?
a) New airports. b) More taxis.
c) Electric train and monorail. d) Highway cameras.
- 4 Why does Egypt want more metro lines and roads?
a) To sell more cars. b) To make travel easier and cleaner.
c) To reduce walking. d) To stop people from driving.

Pre-reading question:

- Do you think Amal will win the competition?

3. Read the following text.

SB page 48

CHAPTER THREE:

Inspiring Success

On the day of the fair, all the children displayed⁽¹⁾ their work. Amal stood proudly⁽²⁾ with her robot. When she presented it, the robot spoke: "Be yourself. Never give up!"

What special message did Amal's robot share during the fair?

Everyone clapped. The children who once laughed now admired Amal's hard work and creativity⁽³⁾. The teacher smiled and said, "Amal, you showed determination⁽⁴⁾ and honesty⁽⁵⁾. You worked hard without giving up, and you stayed true to who you are."

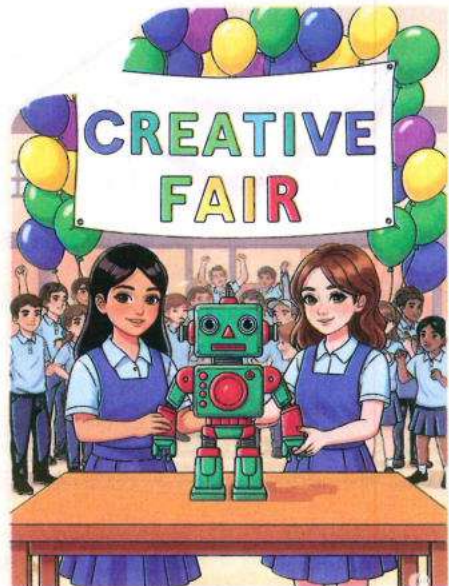
How did the teacher describe Amal's qualities after her presentation?

Amal felt proud, not because she won a prize, but because she had expressed herself honestly, used digital tools responsibly⁽⁶⁾, and showed empathy to others.

Why did Amal feel proud?

From that day on, Amal inspired others to follow their dreams, express themselves, and help one another.

In what ways did Amal inspire others after the fair?



(1) يعرض

(2) بفخر

(3) إبداع

(4) إصرار/عزيمة

(5) أمانة

(6) بمسؤولية

Answer the following questions:

1. What message did Amal's robot give at the fair?

ما الرسالة التي قدمها روبوت أمل في المعرض؟

- The robot said, "Be yourself. Never give up!"

2. How did the children who once laughed at Amal react to her presentation?

كيف كان رد فعل الأطفال الذين سخروا من أمل عندما قدمت مشروعها؟

- They clapped and admired Amal's hard work and creativity.

3. How did Amal inspire others to follow their dreams?

كيف ألهمت أمل الآخرين ليتبعوا أحلامهم؟

- She showed them the importance of being honest, working hard, and helping one another.

4. What did the teacher say about Amal?

ماذا قال المعلم عن أمل؟

- The teacher said Amal showed determination and honesty.

5. Why was Amal proud even though she didn't win a prize?

لماذا شعرت أمل بالفخر رغم أنها لم تفز بجائزة؟

- Because she expressed herself honestly, used digital tools responsibly, and showed empathy.

Critical thinking questions:

1. What do you think changed the children's opinions of Amal?

ما الذي تعتقد أنه غير آراء الأطفال حول أمل؟

- They saw her talent, determination, and the success of her robot.

2. What lesson can we learn from Amal's story?

ما الدرس الذي يمكن أن نتعلمه من قصة أمل؟

- We should never give up, always be ourselves, and support others.

3. Why do you think honesty was important in Amal's success?

لماذا تعتقد أن الصدق كان مهماً في نجاح أمل؟

- Because it helped her stay true to herself and gain respect from others.

4. If you were one of Amal's classmates, how would you show support for her?

إذا كنت أحد زملاء أمل، كيف ستظهر دعمك لها؟

- I would clap, cheer, and tell her how amazing her work was.

5. How can Amal's story encourage you in your own life?

كيف يمكن لقصة أمل أن تشجعك في حياتك الخاصة؟

- It can encourage me to work hard, believe in myself, and never give up on my dreams.



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- On the day of the fair, Amal stood proudly with her robot, and when she presented it, the robot
 a) sang a song b) made a noise c) spoke d) fell over
- The children who once laughed at Amal now her hard work and creativity.
 a) ignored b) questioned c) admired d) criticized
- The teacher told Amal she showed determination, and
 a) a bad attitude b) sadness c) great humor d) honesty
- Amal felt proud because she had expressed herself honestly, used digital tools responsibly, and showed to others.
 a) anger b) indifference c) empathy d) fear

2 Answer the following questions:

- What message did Amal's robot give at the fair?

- How did the children who once laughed at Amal react to her presentation?

- How did Amal inspire others to follow their dreams?

3 Critical thinking questions:

- What do you think changed the children's opinions of Amal?

- What lesson can we learn from Amal's story?

4 Match the words in column A with their meanings in column B:

A

- creativity
- display
- honestly
- inspire
- determination

B

- not giving up, even when there are difficulties
- coming up with new and original ideas
- to show something so others see it
- in a trustful way; not lying or deceiving
- to be a role model for others in doing good things

1 Vocabulary building:

Meaning/Synonym – Opposite/Antonym

ارجع للقطعة ص 130-131 وحاول أن تستخرج منها كلمات متشابهة أو متضادة في المعنى للكلمات التالية:

Meaning/Synonym	Opposite/Antonym
nervous متوتر/مضغوط	happiness سعادة
wander يتجول	failure فشل
show يعرض	slavery عبودية

2 Comprehension strategies:

- What does the underlined pronoun "....." refer to?
- The underlined pronoun "....." refers to

How to answer this question:

كيفية الإجابة عن هذا السؤال:

أولاً: عليك أن تعرف إلى ماذا تشير الضمائر:

Pronouns are words that refer to the closest specific noun right before them.

فالضمائر هي كلمات تشير إلى أقرب اسم محدد قبلها مباشرة.

ثانياً: عليك قراءة الجملة التي تسبق الضمير جيداً وتحديد الاسم الذي تشير إليه.

FOR EXAMPLE:

Now, traffic is a little better. People use public transportation more. Egypt wants to build more roads, bridges, and train lines in the future. This will help it become cleaner and easier to move around.

- What does the underlined pronoun "it" refer to? (فهم ما يشير إليه ضمير)

3 Translation:

A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

اختر الترجمة العربية الصحيحة:

- There is a big traffic jam on streets and highways.

- ☐ هناك ازدحام مروري كبير في الشوارع والطرق السريعة.
- ☐ هناك انسياب مروري كبير في الشوارع والطرق السريعة.

B) Choose the correct English translation:

اختر الترجمة الإنجليزية الصحيحة:

- لقد عملت بجد دون أن تستسلم.

- ☐ You worked hard without giving up.
- ☐ We worked hard without winning.

LESSON

3

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- I got stuck traffic for two hours this morning.
a) of b) around c) in d) out
- Cars move very fast on the outside the city.
a) highway b) port c) line d) plan
- The engineers will a train to connect two major cities.
a) wait b) do c) build d) travel
- The library is a place for everyone to read books.
a) stressed b) private c) public d) stuck
- The air in the big city had a lot of from cars and factories.
a) pollution b) population c) determination d) creativity
- A is often built under rivers to help people travel quickly.
a) highway b) tunnel c) train d) traffic
- The entrance of the building was by a fallen tree.
a) blocked b) free c) tired d) stressed
- The moves on a single rail above the ground.
a) boat b) monorail c) tunnel d) tram
- Buses, trains, and taxis are all kinds of
a) transportation b) population c) correction d) connection
- The school wants to noise in the classrooms.
a) reduce b) cause c) wait d) solve
- She got because of the heavy traffic.
a) blocked b) alone c) single d) stressed

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

flyovers – stuck – stick – traffic – Pollution

Traffic in a busy city can often be stressful. People get (1) in long traffic jams, especially on highways and main streets. (2) increases when cars are blocked for hours. To reduce these problems, cities can build roads, (3), and tunnels. Public transportation, such as metro lines and electric trains, helps people move around faster. Cameras are used to watch (4) and solve delays. In the future, monorails may travel above the ground, bringing more peace to city life.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- ▶ 1. Amal had to up with a new idea for her school project yesterday.
a) come b) clap c) inspire d) delete
2. Everyone should their dreams even if it is difficult to reach their goals.
a) follow b) admire c) clap d) react
3. I people who work hard and help others without asking for anything.
a) react b) admire c) look d) make
4. Students joined the art to show their creativity and skills this year.
a) presentation b) competition c) robot d) prize
5. Students showed great in designing their own classroom projects.
a) creativity b) humor c) lesson d) indifference
6. Children shouldn't noise while the teacher is giving important instructions.
a) make b) dream c) do d) admire
7. The museum will the children's artwork in a special exhibition next month.
a) look b) feel c) make d) display
8. It is not polite to other people's work without offering helpful suggestions.
a) admire b) follow c) criticize d) clap
9. The story of the brave young girl will many people to work hard.
a) inspire b) follow c) stop d) quit
10. Students should react questions carefully during tests to answer correctly.
a) in b) with c) to d) for

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

responsibly – inspiring – inspire – competitions – true

Ahmed wanted to follow his dreams of becoming a scientist. He worked hard every day, even when tasks seemed difficult. His teacher would often display (1)..... projects in the classroom to encourage students. During (2)....., Ahmed admired the creativity of his friends. He learned that staying (3)..... to his goals required patience and honesty. From that day on, he promised to give his best, respond to challenges (4)....., and clap for others' achievements.

How to write about traffic problems and their solutions

كيفية الكتابة عن مشاكل المرور وحلولها

1. What makes the roads busy in big cities?

ما الذي يجعل الطرق مزدحمة في المدن الكبيرة؟

- Traffic jams make the roads busy. الاختناقات المرورية تجعل الطرق مزدحمة.

2. What is caused by many cars on the streets?

ما الذي يحدث بسبب كثرة السيارات في الشوارع؟

- Pollution is caused by many cars. التلوث يحدث بسبب كثرة السيارات في الشوارع.

3. How can people travel faster in the city? كيف يمكن للناس أن يتنقلوا أسرع في المدينة؟

- People can travel faster by using an electric train or monorail. يمكن للناس أن يتنقلوا أسرع باستخدام القطار الكهربائي أو القطار أحادي الخط.

4. How can we reduce pollution?

كيف يمكننا تقليل التلوث؟

- We can reduce pollution by using public transportation and walking. يمكننا تقليل التلوث باستخدام المواصلات العامة والمشى.

5. What can the city build to help traffic flow?

ماذا يمكن للمدينة أن تبني لتحسين حركة المرور؟

- The city can build flyovers and tunnels. يمكن للمدينة بناء كباري علوية وأنفاق لتحسين حركة المرور.

اقرأ هذا النموذج المجاب عنه لإضافة أفكار جديدة ولتعلم منه:

“Solving city traffic problems”

Traffic problems are very common in big cities. Traffic jams make the roads busy and cause stress for drivers. Pollution also happens because many cars are on the streets. People can travel faster by using an electric train, a monorail, or public transportation. Drivers should avoid blocking streets to reduce traffic jams. The city can build flyovers and tunnels to help traffic flow. Everyone can help reduce pollution by walking, cycling, or using public transportation more. These solutions make the city cleaner and life easier for everyone.

TEST YOURSELF

Lessons (3 & 4)

1 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

criticized – admired – nervous – with – up with

Tahani participated in a school presentation about robots. She was (1)....., but decided to stay true to her work. The judges (2)..... her creativity and honesty. Her friends would proudly clap for her, and she felt inspired. Sometimes, classmates (3)..... her ideas, but she learned to react to feedback positively. The lesson she learned was that success comes from hard work, believing in one another, and coming (4)..... amazing ideas responsibly.

2 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

In a busy city, traffic jams often cause people to feel stressed and tired. Cars stuck on highways increase pollution and waiting times. Public transportation, such as metro lines, monorails, and electric trains, reduces the number of vehicles on streets. Bridges like the 6th of October Bridge or Tahya Mizr Bridge allow cars to travel above traffic. Tunnels under mountains help drivers move more quickly. Cameras monitor busy streets to solve problems. City planners plan roads and public transportation to give citizens more freedom, cleaner air, and peace. Everyone benefits when traffic is controlled and safe.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Cars stuck on highways increase
a) pollution b) happiness c) freedom d) population
2. Public transportation reduces the number of on streets.
a) vehicles b) planes c) bridges d) boats

B) Answer the following questions:

3. What is the main idea of this passage?
4. How do tunnels and bridges help drivers?
5. What does the underlined word "citizens" refer to in this passage?
6. Why can tunnels be useful to drivers?

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Roads often blocked during heavy rains or accidents.
a) move b) travel c) get d) reduce
2. Smoking can dangerous health problems for everyone around.
a) solve b) cause c) reduce d) wait

3. Teachers encourage students to about anything they do not understand clearly.
 a) work b) admire c) clap d) question
4. The school organized a to display students' creative projects in the hall.
 a) presentation b) lesson c) honesty d) success
5. The cat on the table during dinner last night.
 a) jumping b) jumps c) jump d) jumped
6. While Nader the joke, everyone started laughing out loud.
 a) tell b) told c) telling d) was telling

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. While Eman (solve) the puzzle, a piece fell under the table.
2. My car broke down as I (drive) to Alexandria.
3. My brother was not (sleep) in his bed at eight o'clock.
4. Who did you (saw) while you were shopping at the store?

5 Write a paragraph of (90-100) words on:

"How success inspires a person"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



Challenging Questions

مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب.

Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets:

1. The boys go to the park on Sundays. (yesterday afternoon)

2. Mona's mom called while she was playing with blocks. (when)

3. The baby slept quietly. The doorbell rang. (while)

Assess your progress ★★☆☆

< 50% Study again

50 : 64% Practice more

65 : 84% Take more exams

85 : 100% Well done!

A VOCABULARY LESSONS 5&6

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

bravery (n)	شجاعة	patience (n)	صبر
calm (adj)	هادئ	remind (ed) (v)	يذكّر
confident (adj)	واثق	scared (adj)	خائف
confused (adj)	متربك/حائر	shy (adj)	خجول
excitement (n)	حماس/إثارة	surprise (d) (v) (n)	يدهش/مفاجأة
glad (adj)	سعيد/مسرور	whisper (ed) (v)	يهمس

Additional Vocabulary المفردات الإضافية

accident (n)	حادث	reason (n)	سبب
clearly (adv)	بوضوح	science project (n)	مشروع علمي
dry (adj)	جاف	soil (n)	تربة
seed (n)	بذرة	yard (n)	فناء
leaves (n)	أوراق (نبات)	fear (n)	خوف

Language Expressions & Prepositions التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

at any point	في أي لحظة	get hard	يصبح صعباً
deal with	يتعامل مع	get through it	يتجاوز الأمر
go out	ينطفئ (الأضواء)	give a speech	يلقي خطاباً
stick to	يلتزم بـ	go as planned	يسير كما هو مخطط له
do research	يقوم بعمل بحث		

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past simple	Past participle
speak يتحدث	spoke	spoken

Read and complete with a word from the list:

clearly – got – seem – with

- 1 Speak so your friends can understand your wonderful ideas.
- 2 We can deal this big problem by working together.
- 3 I know it hard, but don't give up.

Vocabulary Builder

Words and Synonyms الكلمات ومرادفها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
bravery (n)	شجاعة	courage	شجاعة
scared (adj)	خائف	afraid	خائف
reason (n)	سبب	cause	سبب

Suffix اللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Suffix اللاحقة	Function الوظيفة	The new word الكلمة الجديدة
excite (v)	يثير	-ment	تحويل الفعل إلى اسم	excitement (n) حماس/ إثارة
sun (n)	شمس	-y	تحويل الاسم إلى صفة	sunny (adj) مشمس

تطبيق الأضواء

إجابات 100% : راجع إجاباتك من خلال
تنزيل وطباعة نسختك من الإجابات الكاملة
لكتاب الأضواء من داخل التطبيق.

نزل التطبيق أو ادخل على موقع الأضواء:
www.aladwaa.com



B Reading & Listening Skills

Pre-reading question:

- Is it good to give up when you face a problem? Why or why not?

 Read the following dialog. What do you think of Hany's way in facing his challenge?

SB page 50

When Things Get Hard

Samy Hi Hany, you looked really happy at school today. What happened?

Hany Oh, I gave a short **speech**⁽¹⁾ to my class about facing problems. It was a big challenge, but I'm **glad**⁽²⁾ I did it.

Samy Wow, that's great! Were you nervous?

Hany Yes, I was very nervous at first. I even felt discouraged because I made a mistake while I was speaking.

Samy So, how did you keep going?

Hany I just told myself to stay calm. I was sure I could do it.

Samy That's cool! You didn't give up.

Hany Thanks! Another challenge was when I was asked a question I was not sure of.

Samy Oh my, what did you do?

Hany Honestly, I said that I am not sure of the answer, so I will do more research.

Samy That was very brave of you. It takes a lot of **courage**⁽³⁾ to say that.

Hany Sometimes, an obstacle can surprise you, but with honesty and determination, you can get through it.

Samy I agree. Facing challenges helps us grow.



(1) خطبة

(2) سعيد

(3) شجاعة

Post-reading questions:

SB

- 1 What was Hany's challenge? How did he handle it?
- 2 Why did Hany feel discouraged while giving his speech?
- 3 How did Hany show determination during the difficult moment?
- 4 How can students use determination to overcome obstacles?



Work with a partner. Read the short conversation below, then switch roles and create your own using the bold words.

Lesson 5

SB page 51

Student A I had a big **challenge** last week during the end of year school party.

Student B Really? Did you feel discouraged at any point?

Student A **To be honest**, I forgot what to say! But I was determined to keep going.

Student B **That's great**. It takes courage to stay calm like that.

Student A I **didn't expect** that to happen because I knew my part very well. But with determination, I was able to finish my part, even though there were many obstacles.

Lesson 6

Mr. Shaker You look upset, Fatma. Is everything OK?

Fatma **To be honest**, Dad. I have to stand in front of the whole class tomorrow, and I'm really nervous.

Mr. Shaker Really? Just take a deep breath and try to relax. You've prepared well.

Fatma What if I make a mistake or forget what to say?

Mr. Shaker I **don't expect that**. But anyway, the important thing is not to be scared.

Fatma But this week has been so hard. I had to research for my science project, finish my homework, and now this!

Mr. Shaker I agree, that's not easy. But I'm proud of how you're handling everything.

Fatma Thanks, Dad. Sometimes I just feel worried when things don't go as planned.

Mr. Shaker That's when you need to remind yourself how strong you are. You're doing well - just keep trying.

Read the following paragraph about "Facing Challenges". Then, answer the questions:

SB page 52

Facing challenges helps us grow stronger and more confident. When we deal with problems, we learn new skills. Each challenge also teaches us something useful about ourselves and the world. Even when it feels hard, not giving up makes us braver. In the end, facing challenges makes us better prepared for the future.

LESSONS

5&6

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The teacher wants us to be when we speak in class.
a) absent b) sunny c) shy d) confident
- The loud music from the party filled the street with
a) excitement b) patience c) accident d) bravery
- I hope my fun party will as planned for my birthday.
a) do b) see c) make d) go
- Salma felt when she heard a strange noise in the dark.
a) confident b) glad c) scared d) calm
- My mom me to brush my teeth before I go to bed.
a) reminded b) remembered c) mentioned d) said
- The strange sound in the quiet library the student.
a) remained b) surprised c) whispered d) reminded
- Her helped her to climb to the very top.
a) excitement b) bravery c) reason d) accident
- Ahmed was that his team won the big soccer game.
a) dry b) glad c) calm d) sunny
- Waiting for your turn دورك to play the game takes some
a) skill b) speed c) patience d) luck
- Sometimes, I feel when I have to talk in front of everyone; I get confused quickly.
a) scared b) confident c) shy d) brave

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

of – to – clearly – scared – do

Facing a big challenge can help us grow. For the first time anyone may feel (1)..... I remember feeling this way about my first science project. I wasn't sure (2)..... my topic and felt very confused. However, I decided to stick to the plan. I took a deep breath to stay calm and began to (3)..... research. This patience helped me understand the task (4).....

PRACTICE MORE



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. To stay fit you should stick your healthy diet.
a) with b) to c) on d) for
2. The he was late was that the bus was slow.
a) reason b) bravery c) excitement d) joy
3. Mona's face was filled with when she opened her birthday gift.
a) joy b) fear c) patience d) accident
4. The children love to play tennis in the big
a) yard b) soil c) lake d) ceiling
5. Tamer was very sure winning the fun little race.
a) with b) off c) of d) on
6. You must plant the seeds in good for them to grow.
a) soil b) ceiling c) sail d) reason
7. Tomorrow, my dad will a speech at school.
a) give b) do c) work d) want
8. This math problem will hard if you do not listen well.
a) get b) see c) do d) know
9. The teacher explained the rules so that we all understood.
a) clearly b) badly c) quickly d) happily
10. His biggest is the dark when he is all alone.
a) fear b) joy c) bravery d) excitement

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

leaves – seed – reminded – remember – watered

My grandfather's vegetable garden taught me about challenges. He gave me a tiny (1)..... to plant in the soil. Every day, I (2)..... it, even when the weather was very dry and sunny. I had to show patience for many weeks. The joy I felt when the first green (3)..... appeared was immense! It (4)..... me that good things take time.



Talking about personal experiences

التحدث عن التجارب الشخصية

1. To be honest, ...

بصراحة - بأمانة

To be honest, I was really nervous before my first day at school.

2. I didn't expect that, but ...

لم أتوقع ذلك ولكن

The movie was in Spanish بالإسبانية, I didn't expect that, but I enjoyed it.

3. Really?

حقاً؟

A: I met the famous writer yesterday.

B: Really? What was he like?

4. I don't expect that ...

لا أتوقع أن

A: The weather will be good tomorrow. I suggest going out.

B: Wow, I don't expect that at all.

5. I agree ...

أوافق

A: That test was incredibly difficult.

B: I agree; it was much harder than I thought it would be.

6. That's great.

هذا رائع

A: I passed my driving test!

B: That's great! Congratulations!

Speaking Exercise

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analyzing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Complete the following dialog:

► Amina didn't expect that the project was hard.

Omar : Did you finish the science project, Amina?

Amina : (1)..... I finished it last night.

Omar : (2).....?

Amina : To be honest, it was harder than I thought.

Omar : Really? Did you expect that?

Amina : (3).....

Omar : (4).....?

Amina : The mountain model was the difficult part.

Omar : I think you are good at art.

Amina : (5)..... I'm good at art. I like it.

The power of facing challenges

1. What is a challenge?

ما هو التحدي؟

- A challenge is a difficult task or problem that requires effort to overcome.
التحدي هو مهمة أو مشكلة صعبة تتطلب جهداً للتغلب عليها.

2. Why are challenges important?

لماذا التحديات مهمة؟

- They are important because they help us learn, grow stronger, and become smarter.
التحديات مهمة لأنها تساعدنا على التعلم، أن نصبح أقوى، وأكثر ذكاءً.

3. What happens when you face a challenge?

ماذا يحدث عندما تواجه تحدياً؟

- When I face a challenge, I might feel nervous, but I try my best and don't give up.
عندما أواجه تحدياً، قد أشعر بالتوتر، لكنني أحاول بذل قصارى جهدي ولا أستسلم.

4. What can you learn from a challenge?

ماذا يمكنك أن تتعلم من التحدي؟

- I learn new skills, become more confident, and see that I can do difficult things.
أتعلم مهارات جديدة، أصبح أكثر ثقة، وأرى أنني أستطيع فعل الأشياء الصعبة.

5. How do you feel after overcoming a challenge?

كيف تشعر بعد التغلب على التحدي؟

- I feel proud, happy, and powerful because I succeeded.

أشعر بالفخر والسعادة والقوة لأنني نجحت.

اقرأ هذا النموذج المجاب عنه لإضافة أفكار جديدة ولتتعلم منه:

"The Power of Facing Challenges"

Topic Sentence

Supporting Sentences

A challenge is a difficult task that requires effort to overcome. Challenges are very important because they help us learn, grow stronger, and become smarter. When I face a challenge, I may feel nervous at first, but I always try my best and never give up. Through every challenge, I learn new skills and become more confident. It shows me that I can do hard things. After I overcome a challenge, I feel proud, happy, and powerful because I succeeded. This is the amazing power of facing challenges! In the end, facing challenges prepares us better for the future.

Concluding Sentence

TEST YOURSELF

Lessons (5 & 6)

1 Complete the following dialog:

Laila is asking Khalid about his birthday.

Laila : What did you do for your birthday, Khalid?

Khalid : My family had a party for me.

Laila : (1).....!

Khalid : It was! I didn't expect that at all.

Laila : (2).....? Why not?

Khalid : They said we were just going out for dinner.

Laila : (3).....?

Khalid : (4)..... . To be honest, it was the best surprise.

Laila : (5)....., surprise parties are the best.

Khalid : Thank you, it really was.

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

glad – give – fear – take – confident

I used to be too shy to speak in class. The (1)..... of making a mistake was inspiring. When my teacher asked me to (2)..... a speech, my whole body felt nervous. But I practiced in front of my mirror until I felt (3)..... . On the day, my voice didn't shake. I was so (4)..... I faced that challenge; it made me stronger.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Listening to soft music helps me feel before I go to sleep.

- a) shy b) glad c) calm d) scared

2. I was because the instructions were not very clear to me.

- a) confused b) calm c) shy d) glad

3. You have to when you are inside the library.

- a) remind b) whisper c) surprise d) cry

4. There was a small on the road, but nobody was hurt.

- a) yard b) accident c) fear d) excitement

- 5.** you washing the car when I called you?
a) Did **b)** Do
c) Are **d)** Were
- 6.** My dog was running in the park when it a cat.
a) see **b)** was seeing
c) sees **d)** saw

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. My father (travel) to London last month.
2. We were watching TV when Leila (come) in.
3. Karim (ride) his bike when he hit a big rock.
4. Was the girl (shop) at six o'clock yesterday?

5 Write a paragraph of (90-100) words on:

“What you learnt from your last challenge”

[illegible]

Challenging Questions

مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب.

Find the mistake in the following sentences and correct it:

1. Omar go to the zoo with his family yesterday. (.....)
2. Wael was drawing a car when his pencil break. (.....)
3. The children were do a new project at school yesterday morning. (.....)

Assess your progress ★★☆☆

< 50% Study again

50 : 64% Practice more

65 : 84% Take more exams

85 : 100% Well done!

A Reading

1 Read the short text and answer the questions:

Amina wanted to grow a small vegetable garden, but the soil in her yard was very dry. At first, the seeds did not grow, and she felt disappointed. However, Amina decided not to give up. Every day, she watered the soil and moved the plants to a sunnier place. After a few weeks, small green leaves began to appear. Amina felt proud because she learned that hard work and patience can help her overcome challenges.

1. What did Amina want to do?

.....

2. What problem did she face first?

.....

3. What did Amina do to solve the problem?

.....

4. What lesson did Amina learn in the end?

.....

B Vocabulary

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The company that they would open a new office next year.
 a) guessed b) whispered c) announced d) hid
2. Many people experience a feeling of when they stand on a very high place.
 a) fear b) hunger c) thirst d) boredom
3. After practicing a lot, she felt about giving her presentation.
 a) nervous b) confused c) shy d) confident
4. She was a big challenge.
 a) listening b) reading c) looking d) facing

C Language

3 Complete the sentences using the correct form of the verbs in brackets:

1. While I (walk) to school, I (see) an accident.
2. I (read) a book when my friend (call) me.

Skills

1. Expressing problems and suggesting solutions

1. Expressing Problems:

- It's difficult to (inf) ...
It's difficult to finish my homework when the TV is on.
- I have trouble with (v + ing/noun)
I have trouble with solving math problems.
- The problem is ...
The problem is the computer isn't working properly.

2. Suggesting Solutions / Making Recommendations:

- It might be a good idea to ask the teacher for help.
- How about ... (v + ing/noun)?
How about working together with a friend to finish the project?
- Maybe we should (inf) ...
Maybe we should go for a walk to clear our minds.
- I suggest (v + ing) ...
I suggest reading the instructions carefully before starting.

2. Talking about personal experiences

- To be honest, ...
To be honest, I was really nervous before my first day of school.
- I didn't expect that, but ...
The movie was in Spanish *بالإسبانية*, I didn't expect that, but I enjoyed it.
- Really?
A: I met the famous writer yesterday.
B: Really? What was he like?
A: I don't expect that ...
A: It rained heavily last night
B: Wow, I didn't expect that at all.
- I agree ...
A: That test was incredibly difficult.
B: I agree; it was much harder than I thought it would be.
- That's great.
A: I passed my driving test!
B: That's great! Congratulations!

Language

1. The Past Simple Tense

Form:

Affirmative

التعريف: الفعل في الماضي

e.g. They visited their grandparents last weekend.

Negative:

Subject + didn't + inf.

e.g. They didn't visit their grandparents last weekend.

Interrogative: السؤال

Did + subject + inf. ... ?

e.g. Did you watch the football match yesterday?

2. The Past Continuous Tense

Form:

Affirmative

Subject + was/were + v + ing

e.g. Laila was running when she fell.

You were watching TV all day yesterday.

Negative:

e.g. I wasn't watching TV at 5 yesterday.

Interrogative: السؤال

Was/Were + subject + v + ing ... ?

e.g. Was Leila running when she fell?

Conjunctions:

While / While I was watching TV, my dad arrived.

e.g. While I was watching TV, my dad arrived.

When / When my dad arrived, I was doing my homework.

e.g. When my dad arrived, I was doing my homework.

Vocabulary

admire (d) (v)	يعجب بـ
attitude (n)	موقف / سلوك / تصرف
bleed (ed)	ينزف
bravery (n)	شجاعة
bump (n)	مطبة / نتوء
challenge (n)	تحدي
confident (adj)	واثق
confused (adj)	مرتبك / حائر
courage (n)	شجاعة
creativity (n)	إبداع
criticize (d) (v)	ينتقد
crowd (n)	جمهور / حشد
determination (n)	عزيمة / إصرار
determined (adj)	محدد / عازم
disappointed (adj)	خائب / امل / محبط
discouraged (adj)	محبط
display (ed) (v)	يعرض
electric train (n)	قطار كهربائي
excitement (n)	حماس / إثارة
flyover (n)	كوبرى علوي
inspire (d) (v)	يلهم
monorail (n)	قطار أحادي الخط
obstacle (n)	عقبة / عائق
patience (n)	صبر
quit (ted) (v)	يترك / يتخلى عن
race (n)	سباق
stressed (adj)	متوتر / مضطرب
traffic jam (n)	ازدحام مروري
transportation (n)	مواصلات / نقل
tunnel (n)	نفق
whisper (ed) (v)	يهمس

General Exercises

on Unit

3

A Listening



نص الاستماع
في نهاية الكتاب.

1 A) Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. What makes streets and highways blocked?
 - a) Many cars.
 - b) Few cars.
 - c) Some bicycles.
 - d) Playgrounds.
2. Which transportation helps people travel quickly and comfortably?
 - a) Metro lines.
 - b) Taxis.
 - c) Motorcycles.
 - d) Scooters.
3. What is used to monitor traffic?
 - a) Cameras.
 - b) Bridges.
 - c) Tunnels.
 - d) Mountains.

B) Answer the following questions:

4. What is the problem in the text?
.....
5. How do tunnels and flyovers help vehicles?
.....
6. What is the goal of city planners in the future?

Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialog:

Samir is asking Baher about the last match.

Samir: Did you watch the big match yesterday, Baher?

Baheer: (1).....

Samir: (2)

Baher: I think it was amazing. Our team played so well.

Samir: (3)....., the players were fantastic.

Baher: To be honest, I thought we would lose at first.

Samir: (4).....?

Baher: I watched it with my father.

Samir: Can we watch the next match together?

Baheer: (5)..... It is my pleasure.

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

start – finish – for – crowd – practiced

Amal was nervous before her first school race. She listened carefully to her coach's advice (1)..... staying calm. At the start, she took a deep breath and (2)..... her breathing. During the race, Amal felt tired halfway, but she did not quit. The (3)..... cheered loudly, which gave her energy for the last part. Amal crossed the (4)..... line and felt proud. She learned that staying positive and following advice helps face challenges successfully.

4 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

Last month, Hatem came home very angry. He told his parents that the streets around his school were crowded with cars and people. They were dirty, too. People throw rubbish in the streets instead of putting it in bins. Hatem was a very good pupil. He decided to form a team of pupils to make these streets clean and tidy. They put bins in these streets. They cleaned the streets and grew some flowers there. They also put up some notices advising people to keep the streets clean. Teachers and parents helped the pupils by giving them advice and the money needed. Other pupils in other schools liked the idea and decided to keep the streets around their schools clean.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. People should put rubbish in
a) streets b) bins c) schools d) notices
2. The main challenge in the passage is
a) learning b) cleaning streets
c) bins d) sports

B) Answer the following questions:

3. What does the underlined word "They" refer to?
4. Why was Hatem angry?
5. How did teachers and parents help the pupils?
6. What did other pupils in other schools decide to do?

D Vocabulary and Structure

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. In science week, the students tried to posters for recycling.
a) take b) do c) show d) make
2. I hope I will the race.
a) win b) lose c) stop d) earn

3. We were late to school because of بسبب a traffic on the highway.
 a) gem b) tunnel c) jam d) rail
4. Students must always show when doing their schoolwork and exams.
 a) honesty b) success c) fear d) worry
5. While I to school, I saw an old friend. SB
 a) walked b) was walking c) walks d) have walked
6. We were eating dinner when the phone SB
 a) rang b) was ringing c) rings d) will ring
- 6 **Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:**
1. As I (ride) my bike, I fell down.
2. Mom was cooking dinner when dad (arrive).
3. They (play) football yesterday. SB
4. I broke my arm while I (ride) my bike. SB

E The Story

7 A) Answer the following questions:

1. What message did Amal's robot give when she presented it at the fair?

2. Why did Amal feel proud even though حتى لو she did not win a prize?

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3. The teacher told Amal that she showed
 a) laziness b) determination c) fear d) sadness
4. From that day on, Amal inspired others to
 a) hide their ideas b) follow their dreams
 c) stop working d) give up

F Writing

8 Write an email of (90-100) words to your friend Hana to tell her about a challenge you overcame and learnt something from it. Your name is Roquia.

●
●
●

Review 1

LESSON 1



نص الاستماع
في نهاية الكتاب.

1 Listen to the audio, then choose the correct answer:

- What can Gen Alpha do before writing?
 - Drive cars.
 - Swim professionally.
 - Scroll screens.
 - Cook meals.
- How do Alphas prefer to communicate?
 - Through long letters.
 - Using images and emojis.
 - By sending faxes.
 - With radio messages.
- What do they need help with?
 - Using apps.
 - Balancing screen time.
 - Taking selfies.
 - Finding Wi-Fi.
- What makes them "digital natives"?
 - They avoid technology.
 - They fear computers.
 - They learn technology naturally.
 - They prefer newspapers.

2 Read the following dialog:

Mom: Ali, your Gen Alpha sister uses tablets differently than you did at her age!

Ali (Gen Z): I know! She's already editing videos at 7. Mrs. Noura told us in ICT class that Gen Alpha processes information faster.

Teacher (on video call): That's correct. Research shows they can use 5 apps at the same time. But they mustn't neglect offline skills.

Little Sister: Look! I just made a reel about our cat ... and did my math homework!

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- What can Gen Alpha do well?
 - Read handwritten letters.
 - Use many apps.
 - Use typewriters.
 - Avoid social media.
- What did the teacher warn about?
 - Using too many pencils.
 - Neglecting offline skills.
 - Watching TV.
 - Eating while typing.
- How is Ali's sister different at age 7?
 - She hates technology.
 - She edits videos.
 - She prefers board games.
 - She can't use smartphones.
- What subject is discussed in this topic?
 - History.
 - ICT.
 - Physical Education.
 - Music.

3 Fill in the spaces with words from the box:

trends – safely – digital natives – footprint – communicate

Gen Alpha are true (1)..... who follow online (2)..... . They (3)..... differently from older generations. Remember! Every online action leaves a (4)....., so always post (5)..... .

4 Write a paragraph of (90-100) words on:

"Online safety"

.....
.....
.....

LESSON

2

1 Complete the following using words from the box:

passive – active – choose – collected

Your (1)..... footprint includes posts you (2)..... to share, while your (3)..... footprint includes hidden data (4)..... by websites.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. While I, I fell down.

- a) run b) am running c) was running d) ran

2. They football when it started to rain.

- a) played b) were playing c) are playing d) play

3. She her leg while she

- a) broke/skated b) was breaking/skated
c) broke/was skating d) breaks/is skating

4. When the teacher arrived, we loudly.

- a) talks b) were talking c) talk d) are talking

5. I a strange noise while I to sleep.

- a) hear/am trying b) heard/was trying
c) was hearing/tried d) heard/tried

6. The students when the fire alarm

- a) studied/was going off b) were studying/went off
c) studied/went off d) study/goes off

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Gen Alpha are true because they grew up with technology everywhere.
a) digital natives b) designers c) experts d) conflicts
2. Always think before you post online to protect your
a) creativity b) digital footprint
c) point of view d) schedule
3. Many kids use apps to with friends through short videos.
a) brainstorm b) communicate c) stress d) disappoint
4. A good online includes time for both learning and fun.
a) empathy b) balance c) notification d) moral
5. Gen Alpha often new trends faster than adults.
a) misunderstand b) discover c) frustrate d) limit
6. Showing means understanding how others feel.
a) empathy b) distraction c) integrity d) background
7. Your includes everything you choose to share online.
a) active footprint b) passive footprint
c) entertainment d) strength
8. like YouTube and Instagram are popular with Gen Z and Gen Alpha.
a) Conflicts b) Social media
c) Moral values d) Practical skills

The Story

4 A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Yara helped her friend Amal by giving her
a) tools b) books c) money d) ideas
2. Amal was a girl living in a colorful village.
a) brave b) curious c) confident d) strong

B) Answer the following questions:

3. What did Amal decide to make for the Creative Fair?
.....

4. In your opinion, how did Amal use digital tools responsibly?
.....

Unit 4

ART AND EXPRESSION

LEARNING OUTCOMES

Reading

- Identify different types of artwork mentioned in a text.
- Use context clues to understand the meaning of new words.
- Use descriptive adjectives to expand vocabulary.

Listening

- Summarize the main ideas from an interview with an artist.
- Extract specific details from a listening passage.
- Identify meanings of words from context.

Speaking

- Describe favorite types of artwork.
- Explain a favorite artwork using adjectives.

- Express ideas clearly and with enthusiasm when discussing art.

Language

- Apply descriptive adjectives to make sentences clearer.
- Use the connectors: because, so, although, and but.

Writing

- Write an email of a type of art using target language.
- Integrate unit vocabulary effectively into writing.

A VOCABULARY LESSON 1

- قم بدراسة المفردات الرئيسية جيدًا لدرجة الإتقان؛
حيث إنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.
- قم باختبار حفظك للمفردات عن طريق الرجوع إلى
ملحق التقويم وتسميع الكلمات الخاصة بالدرسين.

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

artist (n)	فنان	imagination (n)	خيال
artwork (n)	عمل فني	match (ed) (v)	يتماشى/يتطابق
gallery (n)	معرض فني	original (adj)	أصلي/مبتكر
growth (n)	نمو	sculpture (n)	تمثال/فن النحت
hidden (adj)	خفي/مخبأ	special (adj)	مميز/خاص
historical (adj)	تاريخي	valuable (adj)	قيّم/ثمين

Additional Vocabulary المفردات الإضافية

amazing (adj)	مذهل	paintings (n)	لوحات
bright (adj)	ساطع/زاهر	performances (n)	عروض أدائية
carry (y) (ied) (v)	يحمل	previous (adj)	سابق
consider (ed) (v)	يعتبر/يفكر في	shiny (adj)	لامع
emotions (n)	عواطف/انفعالات	smooth (adj)	أملس/ناعم
goal (n)	هدف	stone (n)	حجر
instructions (n)	تعليمات	style (n)	أسلوب/نمط
journey (n)	رحلة	thoughts (n)	أفكار
life skill (n)	مهاراة حياتية	topic (n)	موضوع
lively (adj)	مفعم بالحياة	traditions (n)	تقاليد
material (n)	مادة (خام)		

Language Expressions & Prepositions التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

all around us	في كل مكان حولنا	look closely	ينظر عن كثب/بتمعن
bring together	يجمع معًا	made from	مصنوع من
filled with	مملوء بـ	make works of art	يصنع أعمالاً فنية
other times	أحيانًا أخرى		

(n) = noun (adj) = adjective (prep) = preposition لاحظ الاختصارات الآتية:
(v) = verb (adv) = adverb (conj) = conjunction

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past participle
bring	يحضر	brought	brought
think	يفكر	thought	thought

Words and Opposites الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
beautiful	جميل	ugly	قبيح
joy	فرح	sorrow	حزن

Read and complete with a word from the list:

with – for – look – lively – gallery

Checkpoint

- 1 If you closely, you can see the hidden message.
- 2 We spent the afternoon exploring the modern art downtown.
- 3 The room is filled amazing paintings.
- 4 The artist used bright colors to create a painting.

LESSON 2

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

actively (adv)	بشكل فعال	incredible (adj)	لا يصدق/مذهل
alive (adj)	حي/ينبض بالحياة	innovative (adj)	مبتكر/مبدع
attractive (adj)	جذاب	installations (n)	أعمال فنية تركيبية
challenging (adj)	صعب	interactive (adj)	تفاعلي
clay (n)	صلصال/طين	message (n)	رسالة
defined (adj)	محدد	pottery (n)	فخار/خزف
element (n)	عنصر	spark (ed) (v)	يثير/يشعل شرارة
essential (adj)	ضروري/أساسي	various (adj)	متنوع/مختلف
feature (d) (v)	يعرض/يبرز/يظهر	vision (n)	رؤية

Additional Vocabulary المفردات الإضافية

area (n)	منطقة	media (n)	وسائط/إعلام
behave (d) (v)	يتصرف	outdoor (adj)	خارجي/في الهواء الطلق
definitely (adv)	قطعاً	paints (n)	دهانات/ألوان
directly (adv)	مباشرة	piece (n)	قطعة
effort (n)	مجهود	receive (d) (v)	يستقبل/يتلقى
exhibit (n)	معرض	respond (ed) (v)	يستجيب
form (n)	شكل	space (n)	مساحة
involved (adj)	مشارك/متورط	studio	استوديو
main (adj)	رئيسي		

Language Expressions & Prepositions التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

bring out	يبرز	look forward to	يتطلع إلى
engage with	يتفاعل مع	made up of	مكون من
experiment with	يجري تجارب بـ	on stage	على المسرح
fill in	يملأ	plan for	خطة لـ
give a presentation	يقدم عرضاً تقديمياً	take part	يشارك

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past simple	Past participle
begin يبدأ	began	begun
set up ينشئ/يضع	set up	set up

Words and Opposites الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
well	صحي	unwell	غير صحي

Read and complete with a word from the list:

receive – send – give – up of

- 1 A healthy meal is made a balanced food طعام متوازن.
- 2 She was nervous to a presentation in front of the whole school.
- 3 Did you the message I sent about the time of the meeting?

Vocabulary Builder

ادرس مفردات اللغة جيدًا
حيث إنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.



Definitions التعريفات

artwork	عمل فني	a piece of creative work	(1) فخر
clay	صلصال/طين	a material used for making pottery ⁽¹⁾ and sculptures ⁽²⁾	(2) تماثيل
colorful	ملون	made up of many bright ⁽³⁾ or different colors	(3) لامع
engage with	يتفاعل مع	to take part in something or become involved ⁽⁴⁾	(4) مشارك
incredible	لا يصدق/مذهل	very hard to believe; amazing	(5) نسخة
interactive	تفاعلي	allowing people to take part or respond directly	(6) يستحق
message	رسالة	information that you send to or receive from someone	
original	أصلي/مبتكر	the first copy ⁽⁵⁾ of its kind	
sculptures	تماثيل	objects made by shaping material like stone, wood, etc.	
special	خاص/مميز	more important than usual	
valuable	ثمين/قيم	worth ⁽⁶⁾ a lot of money	

Words and Synonyms الكلمات ومرادفها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
growth (n)	نمو	increase	زيادة
match (ed) (v)	يتماشى/يتطابق	suit	يناسب
original (adj)	أصلي/مبتكر	native	أصلي

Suffix اللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Suffix	اللاحقة	Function	الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
innovate (v)	يبدع	-ive				innovative (adj)	مبتكر/مبدع
origin (n)	أصل	-al		تحول الكلمة إلى صفة		original (adj)	أصلي
value (n)	قيمة	-able				valuable (adj)	قيم/ثمين

Prefix البادئة

Prefix	البادئة	Word	الكلمة	Function	الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
in-		credible (adj)	معقول/يصدق	تعطى عكس المعنى		incredible (adj)	لا يصدق/مذهل

B Reading & Listening Skills

Lesson 1

Pre-reading questions:

- 1 Do you think everyone can be an artist? Why or why not?
- 2 Why is art considered a world language?

 Read the following text. Where can you see different artworks?

SB page 59

A World of Imagination!

There is a wonderful world of art all around us! An **artwork**⁽¹⁾ is anything an artist makes to express their ideas and emotions. Sometimes, there are bright, colorful paintings, but other times, there are amazing **sculptures**⁽²⁾ made from different **materials**⁽³⁾ like smooth stone or shiny metal. Each piece shows the artist's **special**⁽⁴⁾ touch.

Artists use their **imagination**⁽⁵⁾ and creativity to make beautiful works of art. Creativity is not only important for art—it is also a **valuable**⁽⁶⁾ life skill. It helps us solve problems, think in new and **original**⁽⁷⁾ ways, and express ourselves. Creativity can also be a source of joy and personal growth.

You can see many different artworks in a **gallery**⁽⁸⁾. Although some galleries are filled with amazing paintings, there are also lively places with exciting performances. Every artwork has a special message from the artist, like a hidden story or a strong feeling. It's fun to look closely and think about what the artist wants to tell us, so there are always new and interesting things to discover in the world of art!



- | | |
|--------------|--------------|
| (1) عمل فني | (2) تماثيل |
| (3) مواد خام | (4) خاص/مميز |
| (5) خيال | (6) قيم |
| (7) أصلي | (8) معرض |

Post-reading questions:

SB

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Which of the following best describes the main goal of an artwork?
 - a) To match the colors in a room.
 - b) To express personal thoughts and feelings.
 - c) To follow artistic traditions and styles.
 - d) To copy other famous artists' works.
- 2 What message does the passage suggest every artwork carries?
 - a) A copy of the artist's previous work.
 - b) Instructions on how to make artwork.
 - c) A hidden story or emotional meaning.
 - d) A historical fact or date.

Pre-listening question:

- Imagine a painting of a busy city. What colors, people, or buildings might be in it?



Lesson 2

Listen to the interview with Youssef and match the words with their definitions.

SB page 61

Interviewer Good morning, Youssef! Wow, your studio is **incredible**⁽¹⁾! There is such amazing energy here. Thank you for having us.

Youssef My pleasure! There is always so much **creativity**⁽²⁾ buzzing around. I absolutely love sharing this **lively space**⁽³⁾.

Interviewer Your **artwork**⁽⁴⁾ is very interesting. I'm truly curious, what sparks your most amazing ideas? How does your **imagination**⁽⁵⁾ even begin these incredible pieces?

Youssef My imagination is definitely the key. I just feel a strong need to express deep feelings and visions. For me, every single artwork absolutely must carry a powerful, clear message. That's **essential**⁽⁶⁾.

Interviewer Your **sculptures**⁽⁷⁾ in the last **gallery**⁽⁸⁾ show were **stunning**⁽⁹⁾! They felt so alive. What kind of material do you actually love working with the most to create such varied works?

Youssef I actually experiment with various materials! Clay and metal are often quite challenging, but they allow for such strong, defined forms. I also **adore**⁽¹⁰⁾ working with colorful paints - they bring out a different kind of emotion. Sometimes, believe it or not, I even include **elements**⁽¹¹⁾ in my larger **installations**⁽¹²⁾.

Interviewer So, there are plans for more **interactive**⁽¹³⁾ artwork in the future?

What can we look forward to next?

Youssef Absolutely! I truly believe art should actively connect and really **engage**⁽¹⁴⁾ with people. My next big **exhibit**⁽¹⁵⁾ will feature some truly **innovative**⁽¹⁶⁾ and attractive pieces. I'm just incredibly excited about bringing them to life.

Interviewer We absolutely cannot wait to see it! Thank you so much for your time, Youssef. This was wonderful!

Youssef Thank you! My pleasure.



(1) لا يصدق

(2) إبداع

(3) مساحة نابضة بالحياة

(4) عمل فني

(5) خيال

(6) أساسي

(7) تماثيل

(8) معرض

(9) مذهل/فاتن

(10) يعشق

(11) عناصر

(12) أعمال فنية تركيبية

(13) تفاعلي

(14) يشارك

(15) معرض

(16) مبدع

Post-listening questions:

SB

Listen again to the interview with Youssef. Then read the following and write (T) True or (F) False.

- 1 Youssef enjoys sharing his studio with others. ()
- 2 Youssef believes every artwork should have a clear and strong message. ()
- 3 Youssef only works with clay for his sculptures. ()

1 Vocabulary building:

Meaning/Synonym – Opposite/Antonym

ارجع للقطعة ص 163-164 وحاول أن تستخرج منها كلمات متشابهة أو متضادة في المعنى للكلمات التالية:

Meaning/Synonym	Opposite/Antonym
exhibit معروض	usual معتاد
precious ثمين	copy تقليد/نسخ
feelings عواطف/مشاعر	bored شاعر بالملل

2 Comprehension strategies:

من الأسئلة الأساسية في القطعة يمكن وضع عنوان للقطعة، ومن الممكن أن يكون السؤال كالتالي:

To give a title to a passage, you should:

لتضع عنواناً لقطعة، يجب أن:

- Read the passage carefully: Understand what the passage is mainly about - what the main idea is. تقرأ القطعة بعناية: افهم ما الذي تدور حوله القطعة بشكل أساسي - ما هي الفكرة الرئيسية.
- Pick out keywords: Choose 2-3 important words from the passage that relate to the topic. اختار الكلمات الرئيسية: اختر 2-3 كلمات مهمة من القطعة تتعلق بالموضوع.
- Keep it short and clear: A good title is usually 3-7 words. Make it catchy and meaningful. تجعل العنوان قصيراً واضحاً: عادة ما يكون العنوان الجيد من 3 إلى 7 كلمات. اجعله جذاباً وذو مغزى.

FOR EXAMPLE:

Every artwork has a special message from the artist, like a hidden story or a strong feeling. It's fun to look closely and think about what the artist wants to tell us, so there are always new and interesting things to discover in the world of art!

- Give a suitable title for the passage.

(إعطاء عنوان للقطعة)

3 Translation:

A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

اختر الترجمة العربية الصحيحة:

- You can see many different artworks in a gallery.

☐
☐

- يمكنك رؤية العديد من الأعمال الفنية المختلفة في المعرض.
- يمكنك رؤية القليل من الأعمال الفنية المختلفة في المتحف.

B) Choose the correct English translation:

اختر الترجمة الإنجليزية الصحيحة:

- هناك دائماً الكثير من الإبداع في كل مكان.

- ☐ There is always a lot of ability everywhere.
- ☐ There is always a lot of creativity all around.

LESSON



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Bassam can works of art from old boxes and bottles.
a) draw b) show c) make d) form
- Feeling happy or sad are two very different kinds of
a) goals b) emotions c) facts d) topics
- Maher read the on the box to learn how to play.
a) performances b) goals c) instructions d) traditions
- Reem knows that paper is made the wood of trees.
a) with b) by c) in d) from
- An artist needs a good to create beautiful new things.
a) stone b) growth c) topic d) imagination
- The museum was full of sculptures from a long time ago.
a) smooth b) historical c) lively d) hidden
- The party will bring our family and friends for fun.
a) in b) with c) on d) together
- A is a building where people go to look at art.
a) goal b) fact c) gallery d) topic
- The used a big brush to paint the bright blue sky.
a) artist b) imagination c) touch d) style
- Asma has a/an to read one new book every week.
a) fact b) goal c) emotions d) topic

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

amazed – artwork – lively – amazing – closely

It was a sunny afternoon, and I decided to visit a new art gallery. The main room held an (1)..... sculpture made of glass. A skilled artist created this beautiful (2)..... that shone in the light. The whole place felt so (3)..... with people talking about the art. I walked up and looked (4)..... at the detailed work on the sculpture.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- ▶ 1. My dad bought new to make the living room walls blue.
a) toys b) paints c) areas d) forms
2. Seeing the beautiful painting will you to draw one.
a) receive b) behave c) spark d) respond
3. All the students forward to the last day of school.
a) look b) find c) see d) watch
4. My dad made a great big plan our fun family trip.
a) with b) for c) on d) at
5. means too strange to be believed, or very difficult to believe.
a) Alive b) Attractive c) Incredible d) Essential
6. Wael found the new puzzle, but he did not give up.
a) involved b) changing c) outdoor d) challenging
7. Noura loves the storybook that talks when you press buttons.
a) interactive b) defined c) active d) essential
8. You should politely and say please and also say thank you.
a) receive b) believe c) behave d) respond
9. Mirna made a small bowl for her mom as a gift.
a) effort b) space c) pottery d) piece
10. The new car has a/an design that looks very different.
a) active b) bad c) main d) innovative

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

behave – sparked – innovative – various – vary

My friend Heba is working on a new art project. She has an (1) idea to use recycled materials. She gathered (2) kinds of plastic to create her sculpture. This project has (3) a lot of interest from other students. She hopes that her art will make people think about how they (4) toward the environment.

C Language

Connectors

الروابط

Grammar story: The Little seed



Circle the correct connector:

Once upon a time, there was a tiny seed named Samy. Samy lived in a beautiful garden (because/although) a kind bird had dropped it there. Samy wanted to see the sun, (to/so) it decided to push through the dark soil. It was very hard work. (Although/From) the soil was heavy, Samy didn't give up. It was small, (with/but) it was very strong. It pushed and pushed, till it grew into a plant.

Connectors are like bridges for your ideas. They help you connect your sentences smoothly so your writing and speaking are clear and make sense!

الروابط هي بمثابة جسور لأفكارك. فهي تساعدك على ربط جملك بسلاسة، حتى تكون كتابتك وكلامك واضحين ومفهومين!

1 Connectors for CAUSE:

روابط السبب

- We use **because** to show the **reason why** something happens.

نستخدم **because** لإظهار سبب حدوث شيء ما.

Result (النتيجة) + **because** + reason (السبب)

- e.g. • Marwa smiled **because** she got a high score.
- They stayed home **because** it was raining.

Because + reason (السبب), result (النتيجة)

- e.g. • **Because** Omar skipped lunch, he felt hungry.
- **Because** the bus didn't come, we were late for school.

2 Connectors for RESULT:

روابط النتيجة

- We use **so** to show the **result** or **what happened next**.

نستخدم **so** لإظهار النتيجة أو ما حدث بعد ذلك.

Reason (السبب) + **so** + result (النتيجة)

- e.g. • Basma studied hard, **so** she passed the exam.
- Adel was very tired, **so** he went to bed early.
- I love animals, **so** I want to be a vet.
- Hatim ran fast, **so** he could catch the train.



Got it ?

يمكنك هذه الجزئية من التعرف على كيفية إجابة سؤال تصحيح الخطأ مدعمة بأسباب الإجابة لتعزيز فهمك للدرس.



Complete the sentence with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- I didn't go to school (so) I was ill.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (because) لأنها تعبر عن السبب.

- We use **but** or **although** to show a difference or **contrast** between two ideas.
نستخدم **but** أو **although** لإظهار الفرق أو التناقض بين فكرتين.

A Using "but"

main idea (الفكرة الأساسية) + **but** + unexpected result (نتيجة غير متوقعة)

- e.g. • It was sunny, **but** I felt cold.
• Sami is small, **but** he is very strong.
• She practiced every day, **but** she didn't win the race.
• I like pizza, **but** I don't eat it every day.

B Using "although"

Although + main idea (الفكرة الأساسية), unexpected result (نتيجة غير متوقعة)

- e.g. • **Although** it was sunny, I felt cold.
• **Although** Amin is young, he is very strong.

unexpected result (نتيجة غير متوقعة) + **although** + main idea (الفكرة الأساسية)

- e.g. • I felt cold **although** it was sunny.
• Amin is very strong **although** he is young.



Got it ?

تمكنت هذه الجزئية من التعرف على كيفية إجابة سؤال تصحيح الخطأ مدعمة بأسباب الإجابة لتعزيز فهمك للدرس.



Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- 1 (But) I got up late, I missed the bus.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (Although) لأنها تأتي في بداية الجملة.

- 2 He was poor, (so) he was happy.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (but) لأنها تعبر عن التناقض.

لاحظ



تضاف (,) قبل **so** & **but** عند وجودهما في منتصف الجملتين.

- e.g. • She studied hard, **so** she passed the test.
• She studied hard, **but** she didn't pass the test.

تضاف (,) بين الجملتين عندما تأتي **because** & **although** في بداية الجملتين.

- e.g. • **Because** she studied hard, she passed the test.
• **Although** she studied hard, she didn't pass the test.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- My little sister can walk, she can't run very fast.
a) although b) because c) but d) so
- Farida felt very thirsty, she drank a big glass of water.
a) although b) so c) but d) because
- Wael studied well for his test, he did not pass the exam.
a) although b) because c) so d) but
- Zain was very happy he got a new bicycle.
a) so b) because c) although d) but
- Salma can play the piano she is only six years old.
a) although b) but c) because d) so
- My mom was happy I cleaned my room by myself.
a) so b) because c) although d) but
- The boy fell down, he did not cry at all.
a) although b) because c) so d) but
- Retal read the book again she knew the end of the story.
a) although b) so c) because d) but
- I used a red pencil red is my favorite color to use.
a) because b) although c) so d) but
- I heard a funny joke, I started laughing very loud.
a) because b) so c) although d) but

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- That tall man is very strong (so) he looks very thin.
- We put the milk in the fridge (but) we want it to stay cold.
- My friend called my name, (so) I did not hear her at first.
- The children were very tired, (because) they went to bed very early.

3 Find the mistake in the following sentences and correct it:

- I am wearing my jacket but it is very cold today. (.....)
- I can see the airplane, so I cannot hear its loud sound. (.....)
- My new shoes were too small, because we took them back to the shop. (.....)
- Omar forgot his lunch at home, but he had nothing to eat at school. (.....)

PRACTICE MORE



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- I missed the bus I got up late.
a) because b) although c) so d) but
- The children went to the zoo they wanted to see the lions.
a) so b) because c) although d) but
- My little brother knows how to read, he can't read those long words.
a) although b) so c) because d) but
- Hana ate all her vegetables she didn't like them very much.
a) so that b) so c) because d) although
- He wanted to buy the game, he had no money with him.
a) although b) but c) because d) so
- Karim helped his son he was in trouble.
a) because b) so c) although d) but
- My sister was feeling very cold, she wore her jacket.
a) although b) so c) because d) but
- Ayman went to the party he felt a little bit sick.
a) although b) but c) because d) so

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- I need to wear my glasses (so) I can't see the board.
- It was my friend's birthday, (although) I made her a beautiful card.
- I want to play outside now, (because) I have to clean my room first.
- Peter knows how to play chess (but) he is only five years old.

3 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets:

- Rania is wearing her coat. The weather is cold. (because)
.....
- The story had a good start. The ending was not very good. (but)
.....
- Fadi was feeling a little sick. He went to his friend's party. (although)
.....
- Said wanted to win the race. He ran as fast as he could. (so)
.....
- Farah is sad. She cannot find her doll. (Because)
.....

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بالإجابة عن الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درس في ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.



D Skills



Speaking

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من حل أسئلة المحادثة بشكل جيد.



1. Asking and answering about art in our life السؤال والإجابة عن الفن في حياتنا



What kind of art do you like?

أي نوع من الفن تحب؟



I like colorful paintings and sculptures.

أنا أحب اللوحات الملونة والتمائيل



What can we learn from it?

ماذا يمكن أن نتعلم منه؟

We can learn how to be creative and patient. يمكننا أن نتعلم كيف نكون مبدعين وصبورين.



Why is art considered a world language?

لماذا يعتبر الفن لغة عالمية؟

Because it expresses feelings and ideas that everyone can understand.

لأنه يعبر عن المشاعر والأفكار التي يمكن للجميع فهمها.

2. Describing a painting وصف لوحة



What is your favorite painting?

ما هي لوحتك المفضلة؟

My favorite painting is "Starry Night".

لوحتي المفضلة هي «الليلة النجمية».



What is the painting about?

ما هي فكرة اللوحة؟/ما موضوع اللوحة؟

It's about a beautiful, night sky over a quiet little town.

إنها عن سماء ليلية جميلة فوق بلدة صغيرة هادئة



How does it make you feel?

كيف تجعلك تشعر؟

It makes me feel calm.

تجعلني أشعر بالهدوء.

Speaking Exercise

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analyzing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Complete the following dialog:

► Sara likes a painting that tells her to be happy.

Omar : Do you have a favorite painting, Sara?

Sara : (1).....?

Omar : (2).....?

Sara : It's about a vase full of big, yellow sunflowers.

Omar : What colors are there?

Sara : (3).....?

Omar : (4).....?

Sara : It makes me feel warm and happy.

Omar : Would you like to be an artist?

Sara : (5).....?

How to write about the importance of art in our life

كيفية الكتابة عن أهمية الفن في حياتنا

1. What is art?

ما هو الفن؟

- Art is the use of creativity and imagination to make things like paintings, music, and sculptures.

الفن هو استخدام الإبداع والخيال لصنع أشياء مثل اللوحات والموسيقى والتماثيل.

2. Why is art important?

لماذا الفن مهم؟

- It is important because it makes our world more beautiful and helps us express our feelings.

إنه مهم لأنه يجعل عالمنا أجمل ويساعدنا في التعبير عن مشاعرنا.

3. How does art help us learn?

كيف يساعدنا الفن على التعلم؟

- It teaches us about different cultures, history, and helps us think in new, creative ways.

يعلّمنا عن ثقافات مختلفة، والتاريخ، ويساعدنا على التفكير بطرق جديدة ومبدعة.

4. How can art make people feel?

كيف يمكن للفن أن يجعل الناس تشعر؟

- It can make people feel happy, calm, or excited.

يمكن أن يجعل الناس يشعرون بالسعادة، الهدوء، الإثارة.

5. Is art only in museums?

هل الفن موجود فقط في المتاحف؟

- No, art is everywhere around us—in books, buildings, music, and even the clothes we wear.

لا، الفن في كل مكان حولنا - في الكتب، المباني، الموسيقى، وحتى الملابس التي نرتديها.

اقرأ هذا النموذج المجاب عنه لإضافة أفكار جديدة ولتعلم منه:

"The Importance of Art in Our Life"

Art is very important in our lives. It uses creativity to make beautiful things like paintings and music. Art makes our world more colorful and helps us show our feelings. It also teaches us about different people and places. Art can make us feel happy, calm, or excited. We can find art everywhere, not just in museums. It is in our books, our homes, and our songs. Art is a special part of being human.

TEST YOURSELF

Lessons (1 & 2)



نص الاستماع
في نهاية الكتاب.

1 A) Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- What two materials is the sculpture made from?
 - Stone and paint.
 - Wood and metal.
 - Clay and water.
 - Paper and glass.
- What can you see if you "look closely" at the sculpture?
 - Bright lights.
 - Written words.
 - Hidden faces.
 - Animal shapes.
- Why is the artwork considered valuable?
 - It is very old.
 - It is very large.
 - It is the artist's original piece.
 - It is made of gold.

B) Listen and Complete:

- The sculpture shows the growth of a
- It tells a story about and new ideas coming together.
- The artwork feels both historical and

2 Complete the following dialog:

Ms. Amina is asking the class about art.

Ms. Amina : Class, what can we learn from art?

Khalid : (1).....

Ms. Amina : Places! Good. (2).....?

Yasmine : We also can learn about history and old times. Do you agree, Jana?

Jana : (3).....

Ms. Amina : Excellent! Art teaches us about colors, too.

Fahad : Can it teach us about people?

Ms. Amina : (4)..... It shows us how people feel.

Jana : (5).....?

Ms. Amina : Sure, art is fun.

3 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

paints – studio – works – for – on

Yesterday, we called an artist to have an interview with her. Today, we are lucky to visit her in her (1)..... . She works with various materials, from traditional (2)..... to modern digital tools. She will discuss her creative work and how she began her career. This is a great chance to see a professional (3)..... stage and ask questions. Please listen up and think how she made her (4)..... of art.

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Drinking clean water every day is for your health.
a) main b) incredible c) bad d) essential
- Did you see Wardah the stage singing her song?
a) at b) in c) with d) on
- You should closely at the picture to find the differences.
a) think b) check c) look d) behave
- The in the museum showed a man with a hat.
a) sculpture b) imagination c) message d) performance
- I like this book, it has many colorful pictures inside.
a) but b) so c) although d) because
- My friend gave me a gift, I was very happy all day.
a) although b) but c) so d) because

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- We went swimming in the sea (because) the water was very cold.
- The boy was very hungry, (so) he did not eat his breakfast.
- I was happy (but) I won the first prize.
- My little brother was crying, (but) I gave him his favorite toy.

6 Find the mistake in the following sentences and correct it:

- Ahmed is sad so he lost the race. (.....)
- I like tennis, because I can't play it. (.....)
- It began to rain heavily, but my clothes became wet. (.....)
- I went on working because I was very tired. (.....)

7 Write a paragraph of (90-100) words on:

"Your favorite art"

.....

.....



Challenging Questions

مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب.

Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets:

- My hands were full of paint. I washed them with some soap. (so)
- Mazin is careful. He makes mistakes. (but)
- The little girl was scared. She heard a strange voice. (because)

Assess your progress ★★★★★

< 50% Study again

50 : 64% Practice more

65 : 84% Take more exams

85 : 100% Well done!

A VOCABULARY | LESSON 3

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

appreciation (n)	تقدير	participate (d) (v)	يشارك
biography (n)	سيرة حياتية	peasant (n)	فلاح/قروي/ريفي
gain (ed) (v)	يكتسب	promote (d) (v)	يروج/يشجع
movement (n)	حركة	recognition (n)	تقدير/اعتراف
national (adj)	محلي	sculpt (ed) (v)	ينحت
organize (d) (v)	ينظم	sculptor (n)	فنان نحّات

Additional Vocabulary المفردات الإضافية

achievement (n)	إنجاز	statue (n)	تمثال
actively (adv)	بنشاط	exhibit (ed) (v)	يعرض
African (adj)	إفريقي	exhibition (n)	معرض
agriculture (n)	زراعة	international (adj)	دولي/عالمي
art fair (n)	معرض فني	mix (ed) (v)	يمزج/يخلط
art school (n)	مدرسة الفنون	sphinx (n)	تمثال أبو الهول
article (n)	مقال	ordinary (adj)	عادي
Asian (adj)	آسيوي	public square (n)	ميدان عام
death (n)	وفاة/موت	sandstorm (n)	عاصفة رملية
die (d) (v)	يموت	symbolize (v)	يرمز إلى
European (adj)	أوروبي	teamwork (n)	عمل جماعي

Language Expressions & Prepositions التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

hear of	يسمع عن	al-Khamaseen	رياح الخماسين
fight for	يكافح من أجل	known as	معروف بـ
symbol for	رمز لـ	play a part	يلعب دورًا

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past simple	Past participle
fight يكافح	fought	fought
hold يعقد	held	held

Words and Opposites الكلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym) عكسها	Word الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym) عكسها
birth ميلاد	death وفاة	ancient قديم	modern حديث

Checkpoint

Read and complete with a word from the list:

make – sculptor – play – achievement

- The used clay to make a statue of a cat.
- Finishing her painting was a great for the young artist.
- Everyone can a part in keeping our environment clean.

LESSON 4

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

adventure (n)	مغامرة	pack (ed) (v)	يحزم أمتعة
appreciate (d) (v)	يقدر	scenery (n)	مشاهد طبيعية
compass (n)	بوصلة	sketch (ed) (v)	يرسم
freedom (n)	حرية	thoughts (n)	أفكار
island (n)	جزيرة		

Additional Vocabulary المفردات الإضافية

beauty (n)	جمال	nature (n)	طبيعة
boss (n)	رئيس	refuse (d) (v)	يرفض
coastal (adj)	ساحلي	rule (n)	قاعدة
connected (adj)	متصل/مترابط		

Language Expressions & Prepositions التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

agree on	يتفق على	go on an adventure	يذهب في مغامرة
for the first time	للمرة الأولى		

Vocabulary Builder

ادرس مفردات اللغة جيدًا حيث إنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.

Words and Synonyms الكلمات ومرادفها

Word الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning) مرادفها
ordinary (adj)	normal عادي

Suffix اللاحقة

Word الكلمة	Suffix اللاحقة	Function الوظيفة	The new word الكلمة الجديدة
sculpt (v)	-or		sculptor (n) فنان نحّات
move (v)	-ment	تحول الكلمة لاسم	movement (n) حركة
appreciate (v)	-ion		appreciation (n) تقدير

B Reading & Listening Skills

Pre-reading questions:

- 1 Have you ever heard of the word sculptor? What does a sculptor do?
- 2 If you could create a symbol for Egypt, what would it be? Why?

 Read the following text.

Lesson 3

SB page 63

Mahmoud Mokhtar

Mahmoud Mokhtar (born in 1891) was a very important national⁽¹⁾ artist. He was one of the famous Egyptian sculptors⁽²⁾. He mixed old Egyptian art with new European styles. Mokhtar learned to sculpt⁽³⁾ as a child. He later went to art schools in Egypt and Paris. His most famous work is Nahdat Misr Statue. This sculpture shows a woman and a sphinx, symbolizing Egypt's history and agriculture⁽⁴⁾. It became a big symbol⁽⁵⁾ for Egypt and was put in a public square in Cairo in 1928.



- | | |
|----------|-----------------|
| (1) قومي | (2) نحات |
| (3) ينحت | (4) الزراعة |
| (5) رمز | (6) عواصف رملية |

Mokhtar actively participated in the art movement, using his art to promote Egyptian identity. He also wrote articles to encourage art appreciation. He gained international recognition, exhibiting his work in Paris. His piece, al-Khamaseen, shows a peasant woman battling sandstorms⁽⁶⁾. He died in 1934. Later, a museum was opened in Cairo to show his art. Mokhtar is still known as Egypt's most famous sculptor, and his art played a big part in modern Egyptian art history.

Post-reading questions:

SB

- 1 Where did Mahmoud Mokhtar go to art schools?
.....
- 2 What were Mokhtar's most famous sculptures?
.....
- 3 Why was Mokhtar's art important to Egypt?
.....

The Adventure of the Hidden Island

Pre-reading question:

- Can you tell the class about an adventure you have read or watched on "TV"?

 Read the following text.

SB page 65

CHAPTER ONE:

Different, but connected

In a quiet coastal⁽¹⁾ town, a group of friends—Hany, Faris, Malik, and Sami—loved to explore. One sunny morning, they found an old map that showed a "Hidden Island" across the sea.

What did the four friends love to do, and what did they find?

Hany, the bravest, said, "Let's go on an adventure!" Faris added, "We have the freedom to explore, but we must respect nature and each other."

They packed their things: food, water, a compass⁽²⁾, and notebooks to draw what they discovered. They also agreed on one rule: "No one is the boss. We work together and listen to everyone's ideas."

What was the one rule all the friends agreed on?

As they sailed, they sang songs and appreciated the beauty of the sea, the birds, and the fresh air. Malik, who loved drawing, sketched the scenery. Sami, who was shy, felt free to share his ideas for the first time.

They were all different, but they respected each other's thoughts.

What did Malik do during the trip, and how did Sami feel?



(1) ساحلي

(2) بوصلة

Story Time Q & A

Answer the following questions:

1. What did the group of friends find one sunny morning?

ماذا وجد الأصدقاء في صباح أحد الأيام المشمسة؟

- They found an old map that showed a "Hidden Island" across the sea.

2. Who was the bravest friend who suggested going on an adventure?

من كان الصديق الأكثر شجاعة الذي اقترح الذهاب في مغامرة؟

- Hany was the bravest friend who suggested going on an adventure.

3. What did the friends pack for their trip?

ماذا حزم الأصدقاء لرحلتهم؟

- They packed food, water, a compass, and notebooks to draw what they discovered.

4. What did Malik enjoy doing during the sailing trip?

ما الذي استمتع به مالك خلال رحلة الإبحار؟

- Malik enjoyed drawing and sketching the scenery.

5. How did Sami feel when he shared his ideas?

كيف شعر سامي عندما شارك أفكاره؟

- Sami felt free and happy when he shared his ideas for the first time.

Critical thinking questions:

1. Why do you think they agreed that "no one is the boss"?

لماذا تعتقد أنهم اتفقوا على أن «لا أحد هو الرئيس»؟

- They agreed so that everyone would feel equal, work as a team, and all ideas would be heard.

2. How did having respect help the group during their adventure?

كيف ساعد الاحترام المجموعة خلال مغامرتهم؟

- Respect helped them listen to each other, avoid arguments, and make everyone feel valued and safe.

3. Why do you think Sami felt free to share his ideas for the first time?

لماذا تعتقد أن سامي شعر بالحرية في مشاركة أفكاره لأول مرة؟

- Because his friends were kind, listened patiently, and showed that they respected his thoughts.

4. What would happen if someone in the group refused to listen to others' ideas?

ماذا سيحدث إذا رفض أحد الأفراد في المجموعة الاستماع إلى أفكار الآخرين؟

- The group might argue, make poor decisions, and some friends could feel sad or left out.

5. How did exploring the map give the friends a sense of freedom?

كيف أعطى استكشاف الخريطة الأصدقاء شعوراً بالحرية؟

- It gave them freedom because they could make their own choices, discover new places, and use their creativity.



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The friends found an old map that showed a "Hidden Island" across the
 a) mountain b) forest c) river d) sea
- Before they left, the friends agreed that no one was the boss, and they would together.
 a) argue b) work c) eat d) race
- Malik enjoyed the scenery as they sailed to the island.
 a) singing b) thinking c) drawing d) looking
- Although they were all different, the friends each other's thoughts.
 a) ignored b) criticized c) respected d) agreed

2 Answer the following questions:

- What did the group of friends find one sunny morning?

- Who was the bravest friend who suggested going on an adventure?

- How did Sami feel when he shared his ideas for the first time?

3 Critical thinking questions:

- Why do you think they agreed that "no one is the boss"?

- How did having respect help the group during their adventure?

- Why do you think Sami felt free to share his ideas for the first time?

- What would happen if someone in the group refused to listen to others' ideas?

1 Vocabulary building:

Meaning/Synonym – Opposite/Antonym

ارجع للقطعة ص 178-179 وحاول أن تستخرج منها كلمات متشابهة أو متضادة في المعنى للكلمات التالية:

Meaning/Synonym		Opposite/Antonym	
rural	قروي	disrespect	يحتقر
fight	يكافح	disagree	لا يوافق
take part	يشارك	unknown	غير معروف

2 Comprehension strategies:

اقرأ الفقرة جيدا وحاول الإجابة عن السؤالين التاليين:

Mahmoud Mokhtar died in 1934. Later, a museum was opened in Cairo to show his art. He is still known as Egypt's most famous sculptor, and his art played a big part in modern Egyptian history.

1. What does the underlined pronoun "He" refer to? (فهم ما يشير إليه الضمير)

.....

.....

.....

2. What is Mahmoud Mokhtar known as? (استخراج معلومة من النص)

.....

.....

.....

3 Translation:

A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

اختر الترجمة العربية الصحيحة:

- He mixed old Egyptian art with new European styles.

☐
☐

- لقد مزج بين الفن المصري القديم والأنماط الأوروبية الجديدة.
- لقد مزج بين الفن المصري القديم والأنماط الأوروبية القديمة.

B) Choose the correct English translation:

اختر الترجمة الإنجليزية الصحيحة:

- علينا أن نحترم الطبيعة وأن نحافظ على البيئة نظيفة.

- ☐ We must respect nature and keep the environment clean.
- ☐ We must respect nature and keep our community clean.

LESSON

3

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. She will the blue and yellow paint to make green.
a) mix b) look c) sell d) organize
2. The sky turned a strange orange color during the
a) sandstorm b) wave c) cloud d) air
3. My mom smiled with when I cleaned up my room.
a) appreciation b) suggestion c) anger d) confusion
4. October 6 is a/an holiday, so we do not have to go to school.
a) national b) international c) outside d) fresh
5. You can knowledge المعرفة by reading many different kinds of books.
a) gain b) lose c) buy d) sell
6. He was sad about the of his favorite character in the book.
a) death b) birth c) name d) color
7. The superhero will fight all the people of the city.
a) for b) to c) at d) from
8. We saw a/an of a famous king at the art museum.
a) statue b) movement
c) team d) appreciation
9. This is a/an of the first woman to fly an airplane.
a) biography b) achievement
c) museum d) sculptor

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

sculptor – sculpture – peasant – gain – clay

Omar was a clever man. He was a simple (1) who worked in the fields. He found a love for art when he began to shape sculpture from the soft (2) near his home. He worked hard every day to get better at his craft. Over time, he became a skilled (3) He was able to (4) fame and the respect of all people.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. My phone is to the internet, so I can watch online videos.
a) connected b) free c) packed d) respected
2. They ate fresh seafood at a restaurant overlooking the water.
a) coastal b) natural c) free d) connected
3. Rayan imagined a/an where he could fly like a bird.
a) adventure b) scenery c) nature d) thought
4. Mervat wants to watch a movie TV with her family tonight.
a) on b) with c) in d) at
5. The explorer used a/an to find his way through the forest.
a) compass b) rule c) island d) adventure
6. You must follow the safety when you are at the pool.
a) rule b) map c) island d) coast
7. You must your teachers and listen when they are talking.
a) respect b) refuse c) sketch d) connect
8. Bilal wants to on an adventure to find the hidden treasure.
a) go b) do c) have d) make
9. Hana looked at the of the colorful sunset over the water.
a) scenery b) compass c) island d) rule
10. She might to play the game if she doesn't know the rules.
a) refuse b) pack c) appreciate d) sketch

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

on – map – app – adventure – scenery

Sometimes, an adventure begins with a simple discovery. In a small coastal town, four very different friends found an old, dusty (1) It showed a hidden island far out at sea. This discovery sparked excitement in each of them. They knew this was a chance for a real (2) They decided to go (3) an adventure together, despite على الرغم من their differences. This map was their way to enjoy (4) and find hidden objects!

How to write a biography of an artist "Mahmoud Mokhtar"

كيفية كتابة سيرة ذاتية عن فنان (محمود مختار)

1. Who was Mahmoud Mokhtar?

من كان محمود مختار؟

- He was a famous Egyptian sculptor.

كان نحاتاً مصرياً مشهوراً.

2. What is his most famous statue?

ما هو أشهر تمثال له؟

- His most famous statue is "Nahdat Misr" (Egypt's Renaissance).

أشهر تمثال له هو «نهضة مصر».

3. Why is he important?

لماذا هو مهم؟

- He is important because he helped create modern Egyptian art and inspired national pride.

هو مهم لأنه ساعد في خلق الفن المصري الحديث وألهم الفخر الوطني.

4. Where can you see his work today?

أين يمكنك رؤية أعماله اليوم؟

- You can see his statues in museums and public squares in Egypt.

يمكنك رؤية تماثيله في المتاحف والميادين العامة في مصر.

5. What materials did he use?

ما هي المواد التي استخدمها؟

- He used stone and bronze to make his sculptures.

كان يستخدم الحجر والبرونز لصنع تماثيله.

6. When did he become famous?

متى أصبح مشهوراً؟

- He became famous in the early 20th century.

أصبح مشهوراً في أوائل القرن العشرين.

7. What was his goal as an artist?

ماذا كان هدفه كفنان؟

- His goal was to create art that made Egyptians proud of their history and culture.

كان هدفه هو ابتكار فن يجعل المصريين فخورين بتاريخهم وثقافتهم.

اقرأ هذا النموذج المجاب عنه لإضافة أفكار جديدة ولتعلم منه:

"A Biography of Mahmoud Mokhtar"

Mahmoud Mokhtar was a famous Egyptian sculptor. He became famous in the early 20th century for his beautiful statues. His most important work is "Nahdat Misr," a statue that symbolizes Egypt's strength and hope. He used stone and bronze to create his art. His goal was to make Egyptians proud of their culture and history. Today, his statues are displayed in museums and public squares. He is remembered as a great artist who loved his country very much.

Lessons (3 & 4)

compass – thoughts – pack – boss – back

The friends gathered to plan their trip. They knew they had to (1) carefully for their journey. They made a list: food, water, a (2), and notebooks. Most importantly, they had to agree on one important rule: "No one is the (3)" They promised to listen to everyone's ideas and respect each other's (4) This agreement was the key to their teamwork.

Mahmoud Mokhtar was a young boy who loved to play with clay by the river. He would sculpt small figures of animals and people. When he grew up, he became a famous sculptor. His most important statue is called "Nahdat Misr." It shows a woman lifting her veil next to a sphinx. This statue became a symbol for Egypt's hope and strength. Mokhtar used his art to show his love for his country. He wanted everyone to appreciate Egyptian culture. His work gained recognition all over the world. Today, you can see his statues in museums and public squares.

1. Mokhtar's most important statue is called Misr.

2. The statue became a symbol for Egypt's hope and
- | | |
|----------------|-------------|
| a) Ancient | b) Nahdat |
| c) Recognition | d) New |
| a) fear | b) strength |
| c) sadness | d) weakness |

3. What is the main idea of this passage?

4. What did Mokhtar sculpt when he was a boy?

5. What does the word "sculpt" mean in this passage?

6. Why do you think Mokhtar wanted to show his love for Egypt through his art?

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Your team will play my team in the final game.
a) about b) on c) against d) for
2. Good helped us finish the project on time.
a) plane b) noise c) distraction d) teamwork
3. Our trip to the farm was a fun for everyone.
a) boss b) adventure c) freedom d) map
4. We drove to the mountains to see the beautiful, green
a) scenery b) compass c) map d) desert
5. The ice cream melted it was a very hot day outside.
a) but b) so c) although d) because
6. The dress was pretty, it did not fit her very well.
a) so b) but c) because d) and

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Hadeel wore her new coat (so) it was not cold outside.
2. We stayed inside the house (although) there was a bad storm.
3. I can hear the quiet birds singing, (so) I cannot see them.
4. The story was very funny, (but) we all laughed a lot together.

5 Write a paragraph of (90-100) words on:

"A biography of an artist"

.....

.....

.....

.....



Challenging Questions

مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب.

Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets:

1. The coat looked very thin. It kept me warm all day. (Although)
2. Walid shared his nice lunch. His friend had no food. (because)
3. Amira can draw very well. She does not like to paint. (but)

Assess your progress ★★★★★

< 50% Study again

50 : 64% Practice more

65 : 84% Take more exams

85 : 100% Well done!

A VOCABULARY LESSONS 5&6

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

act (ed) (v)	يُمثل	neglect (ed) (v)	يُهمل
actor (n)	ممثل	review (n)	مراجعة
actress (n)	ممثلة	routine (n)	نظام يومي
damage (d) (v)	يتلف/يضر	star (n)	نجم (شخص مشهور)
deserve (d) (v)	يستحق	stunning (adj)	مذهل/فاتن
fabric (n)	قماش	tour guide (n)	مُرشد سياحي
laziness (n)	كسل	tourist (n)	سائح

Additional Vocabulary المفردات الإضافية

Arab world (n)	العالم العربي	perfect (adj)	مثالي/كامل/رائع
heavy (adj)	ثقيل	performance (n)	أداء
immediately (adv)	فوراً	rich (adj)	غني
meaningful (adj)	ذو معنى/مهم/هادف	role (n)	دور
musician (n)	عازف موسيقى	section (n)	قسم
opinion (n)	رأي	succeed (ed) (v)	ينجح
pleased (adj)	مسرور	talent (n)	موهبة
passion (n)	شغف	theater (n)	مسرح

Language Expressions & Prepositions التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

all over the world	في جميع أنحاء العالم	get ready	يستعد
full of	ملء بـ	make sense	يبدو منطقيًا/يعطي معنى
known for	معروف بـ	switch roles	يتبادل الأدوار
run out of	ينفذ من	take turns	يتناوب الأدوار
spend a day out	يقضي اليوم بالخارج	touch the hearts of	يؤثر في قلوب
walk through	يتجول عبر	Write back soon!	ارسل لي ردًا قريبًا!

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past participle
wear	يرتدى	wore	worn
take	يأخذ	took	taken

Words and Opposites الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
damage	يتلف/يضر	protect	يهتم
neglect	يهمل	care	يرعى/يهتم

Read and complete with a word from the list:

spent – stunning – pleased – musician

- 1 The sunset was over the ocean. I liked it.
- 2 We a day out at the beautiful beach.
- 3 My sister wants to be a and play the piano.

Language Notes

1 made of / made from

مصنوع من

made of (المادة الخام لم تتغير)

- Desks are **made of** wood.

made from (المادة الخام تغيرت أو أعيد تصنيعها)

- Bread is **made from** flour.

made up of

يتكون من

- The painting is **made up of** two different colors.

2 connect with/connect to

يتصل بـ

connect with (يتواصل مع شخص أو شيء بشكل عاطفي أو اجتماعي)

- I **connected with** my old friend yesterday.

connect to (يوصل شيء مادي بشيء آخر)

- I **connected** my phone **to** the Wi-fi.

Vocabulary Builder

Words and Synonyms الكلمات ومرادفها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
damage (d) (v)	يتلف/يضر	harm/hurt	يضر
stunning (adj)	مذهل/فاتن	beautiful/lovely	جميل
succeed (ed) (v)	ينجح (في)	pass	ينجح (في)/يجتاز

Suffix اللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Suffix اللاحقة	Function الوظيفة	The new word الكلمة الجديدة
lazy (adj)	كسول	-ness	تحول الصفة لاسم	laziness (n) كسل
music (n)	موسيقى	-ian	تحول الكلمة لاسم فاعل	musician (n) عازف موسيقى
meaning (n)	معنى	-ful	تحول الاسم لصفة	meaningful (adj) ذو معنى
perform (v)	يؤدي	-ance	تحول الفعل لاسم	performance (n) أداء

تطبيق الأضواء مجاناً

أدخل كودك الشخصي الموجود في الغلاف الداخلي في نهاية الكتاب واستخدم تطبيق الأضواء مجاناً.

نزل التطبيق أو أدخل على موقع الأضواء:
www.aladwaa.com



B Reading & Listening Skills

Lesson 5

Pre-reading questions:

- 1 Why do people enjoy art?
- 2 How do they use art to show their feelings or ideas?

 Read the following dialog. What do you think art is connected with creativity?

SB page 67

When Things Get Hard

Student Wow! I just walked through that modern art section in this museum. Some of the pieces are really stunning!

Art teacher I'm glad you enjoyed it! Many artists here use different **materials**⁽¹⁾ to create something original.

Student I saw one sculpture made from paper and metal. It looked so special—I've never seen anything like it. Do you like this style of art?

Art teacher Yes, of course. I think it's a great example of creativity. Do you know that artists use their imagination to express ideas and emotions in new ways?

Student Yes, of course. Some of this work might not be famous yet, but it's still beautiful and **meaningful**⁽²⁾.

Art teacher Absolutely. Sometimes **recognition**⁽³⁾ comes much later, because it can take time for people to connect with an artist's style.

Student That makes sense. I think even simple art can have a powerful message.

Art teacher You're right. Every piece is original in its own way, even if it isn't perfect. That's what makes art so special.



(1) مواد خام

(2) ذو معنى

(3) التقدير

Post-reading questions:

SB

- 1 What kind of materials did the artist use to make the special sculpture?
- 2 Why doesn't all art receive recognition immediately?
- 3 What does the tourist believe about simple art?
- 4 If you were an artist, what would you like to make? Why?

 Work with a partner.

SB page 68

Lesson 5

Tour Guide Welcome to the museum! You might enjoy this section - it's full of modern art.

Tourist Wow! This painting is so **original**. I love its bright colors.

Tour Guide The artist used different **materials** like **fabric** and metal. His work is very **amazing**.

Tourist It looks so special. I've never seen anything like this before!

Tour Guide Yes, he used a lot of imagination and **creativity**.

Tourist He's not very famous yet, but I think he **deserves** more **recognition**. This visit really made me think about art in a new way.

Lesson 6

 Read the following email.

SB page 69

To : Eyad
From : Ayman
Subject : Does Art Only Mean Painting?

Hi Eyad,

How are you? I'm pleased to write this email to you. I've read an amazing article about art. Art is much more than just painting. It is a way to express **imagination** and **creativity**. An **artist** can be a painter, a musician, a writer, or even an actor. In Egypt, one famous movie star is Omar Sharif. He was known all over the world and acted in many **amazing** movies. His talent and passion for acting made him a **symbol** of Egyptian cinema. Another great star is Amina Rizk, a famous Egyptian **actress** known for her strong roles in theater and movie. Her **original** roles as a kind mother touched the hearts of many people all over the Arab world. What do you think?

Write back soon,

Yours,

Ayman

LESSONS

5&6

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Ahmed Zaki was a great He played the role of a hero in many action movies.
a) writer b) actor c) tourist d) musician
- It is important not to our monuments ^{أثار}.
a) damage b) succeed c) protect d) please
- After all her hard work, Amany to win first place.
a) damaged b) neglected c) acted d) deserved
- It is important to choose strong for making school uniforms that last.
a) metal b) wood c) fabric d) paper
- He became a famous after performing ^{الأداء} in a famous music competition.
a) writer b) reader c) tourist d) musician
- is different from being tired because it stops you from trying at all.
a) Passion b) Laziness c) Routine d) Strength
- The view from the top of the mountain was so that everyone admired it.
a) heavy b) stunning c) rich d) pleased
- Ahmed was punished because he his homework for a whole week.
a) neglected b) acted c) made d) succeeded
- The tour led the group through the museum and described each artwork carefully.
a) talent b) star c) guide d) role

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

passion – performances – deserved – review – map

Going to the theater is always one of my favorite things to do. I love watching theater because it is full of talent and amazing (1) Every actor and actress tries to act with (2) so that their role touches the hearts of the audience. I once went to a theater in Cairo, and the play was stunning. The story made sense, and the actors (3) all the appreciation. I like reading a (4) after the performance to know other people's opinion.

PRACTICE MORE



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- I wanted to buy a new smartphone, so I read many to choose the best one.
a) books b) reviews c) emails d) stars
- We should attract from all over the world to visit Egypt.
a) babies b) guides c) enemies d) tourists
- Exercising is part of his daily to remain healthy and fit.
a) talent b) routine c) role d) opinion
- The practiced the piano for hours to prepare for the concert next week.
a) tourist b) guide c) musician d) writer
- He dreams of living a life full of comfort and opportunities.
a) rich b) succeeded c) poor d) pleased
- Parents play a big in the education of their children.
a) rule b) routine c) passion d) role
- Huda's for painting made her spend hours improving every small detail carefully.
a) section b) passion c) opinion d) role
- A conversation can strengthen relationships between family members and friends.
a) known b) heavy c) meaningless d) meaningful
- Teachers notice students' in music, art, and sports during school activities.
a) talent b) paper c) rule d) review
- Nader's prevented him from finishing homework on time every day.
a) talent b) laziness c) routine d) review

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

stunning – musician – for – to – get

Music is my favorite kind of art. In many times a (1) can make me feel happy. I enjoy listening to songs played with different musical instruments آلات. Some musicians are known (2) their rich talent. Besides their performance in concerts حفلات موسيقية all over the world is (3) I wish I could succeed in practicing an instrument, too. Even small practice every day helps me (4) ready for a better performance.

How to write an email about a kind of art you like most

كيفية كتابة إيميل عن نوع من الفن تحبه كثيرًا

1. What kind of art do you like most?

ما نوع الفن الذي تحبه أكثر شيء؟

- I like theater most.

أحب المسرح أكثر شيء.

2. Why do you like this art?

لماذا تحب هذا النوع من الفن؟

- Because it is full of talented actors and actresses.

لأنه مليء بالممثلين والممثلات الموهوبين.

3. What do you enjoy doing when you watch this art?

ما الذي تستمتع به عند مشاهدة هذا الفن؟

- I enjoy watching the actors act and touch the hearts of the audience.

أستمتع بمشاهدة الممثلين وهم يمثلون ويؤثرون في قلوب الجمهور.

4. Where do you usually enjoy this art?

أين عادةً تستمتع بهذا الفن؟

- I usually enjoy it at the theater in my city.

عادةً أستمتع به في المسرح في مدينتي.

5. How do you feel after enjoying this art?

كيف تشعر بعد الاستمتاع بهذا الفن؟

- I feel pleased and happy.

أشعر بالسعادة والفرح.

6. Who do you like to enjoy this art with?

مع من تحب الاستمتاع بهذا الفن؟

- I like to enjoy it with my family or friends.

أحب الاستمتاع به مع عائلتي أو أصدقائي.

اقرأ هذا النموذج المجاب عنه لإضافة أفكار جديدة ولتعلم منه:

From : ahmed

To : waleed

Subject : The kind of art I like most

Dear Waleed,

I want to tell you about the kind of art I like most. I like theater the most because it is full of talented actors and actresses. I enjoy watching the actors act and touch the hearts of the audience. I usually enjoy it at the theater in my city. After watching, I feel pleased and happy. I like to enjoy theater with my family or friends. It is a fun and meaningful way to spend a day out.

Best wishes,

Ahmed

Lessons (5 & 6)

Ali is asking Laila about the art she likes. Laila likes painting flowers and the sky.

Ali : What kind of art do you like?

Laila : (1).....

Ali : (2) ?

Laila : Because I can use many colors.

Ali : What do you like to paint?

Laila : (3).....

Ali : Where do you paint?

Laila : (4).....

Ali : (5) ?

Laila : Yes, I use different brushes.

for – fabric – opinion – through – to

Painting is a kind of art I like most. It often allows me to express my (1)..... I love using (1)..... and colors to create pictures that are full of emotion. When I walk (2)..... an art gallery, I admire the talent of artists all over the world. Some paintings are known (4)..... their stunning colors.

1. Rana was with her test results because she worked very hard.

- a) pleased b) stunning
c) rich d) heavy

2. We have milk, so we need to buy some from the store.

- a) run out of b) full of
c) known for d) run out

3. His speech will the hearts of everyone listening.

- a) touch b) switch
c) spend d) take

4. His explanation will sense when he gives some examples.
a) make b) switch
c) spend d) do
5. We were late for the party, we missed eating the birthday cake.
a) although b) but
c) so d) because
6. Omar has a new ball, he won't play with it today.
a) because b) so
c) although d) but

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Eman didn't go to school (so) she was very sick.
2. My brother was very tired, (because) he went to bed early.
3. I thought I heard a knock, (so) there was no one at the door.
4. Zaki got low marks (because) he studied hard.

5 Write an email of (90-100) words to your friend Adel to tell him about the art you like. Your name is Mousa.

To :
From :
Subject :

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

 Challenging Questions

مجاہد عنہ نہایت کتاب.

Find the mistake in the following sentences and correct it:

1. He is eating an apple, so he is feeling a little hungry. (.....)
2. He loves to go swimming, so he is afraid of deep water. (.....)
3. The glass fell on the floor, but it broke into many small pieces. (.....)

Assess your progress ★★☆☆☆

< 50% Study again

50 : 64% Practice more

65 : 84% Take more exams

85 : 100% Well done!

A Vocabulary

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The clever students a plan for the school project.
 a) created b) threw c) pointed d) neglected
2. Rodyna can her thoughts through writing stories.
 a) finish b) paint c) damage d) express
3. Children have strong to create stories.
 a) imagination b) bag c) pencil d) picture
4. They have to invent new things.
 a) model b) creativity c) routine d) laziness

B Language

2 Choose the best adjective to complete each sentence:

- a) The painting was so (amazing - boring) that everyone loved it.
- b) The gallery was full of (heavy - creative) artwork.
- c) I love how the artist used bright red and blue to make her painting (colorful - quiet).

3 Use (because - so - but, or although) to join these sentences:

- a) The painting was colorful, it didn't win the competition.
- b) She loves drawing, she takes an art class every week.
- c) He didn't finish the sculpture he ran out of time.
- d) The painting is creative, some people don't like it.

C Writing

4 Think about something interesting you learned in this unit. Your task is to write an email of (90 - 100) words about it:

✖
✕
✚

To :

From :

Subject :

.....

.....

.....

Vocabulary

actively (adv)	بشكل فعال
actor (n)	ممثل
actress (n)	ممثلة
alive (adj)	حي/نابض بالحياة
appreciation (n)	تقدير
artist (n)	فنان
artwork (n)	عمل فني
attractive (adj)	جذاب
challenging (adj)	محب
clay (n)	ملاط/طين
defined (adj)	محدد
deserve (d) (v)	يستحق
essential (adj)	ضروري/أساسي
freedom (n)	حرية
gallery (n)	معرض فني
growth (n)	نمو
hidden (adj)	خفي/مخفي
imagination (n)	خيال
incredible (adj)	لا يتصدق/مذهل
installations (n)	أعمال فنية تركيبية
match (ed) (v)	يتماشى/يتطابق مع
neglect (ed) (v)	يهمل
original (adj)	أصلي/مبتكر
participate (d) (v)	يشارك
peasant (n)	فلاح/فروسي/ريفى
promote (d) (v)	يرفع/يشجع
recognition (n)	تقدير/اعتراف
sculpture (n)	تمثال/فن النحت
stunning (adj)	مذهل/فاتن
valuable (adj)	قيّم / ثمين
various (adj)	متنوع/مختلف
vision (n)	رؤية

Language

الروابط

1. Connectors for CAUSE:

Result (النتيجة) + because + reason (السبب)

e.g. She smiled **because** she got a high score.

2. Connectors for RESULT:

Reason (السبب) + **so** + result (النتيجة)

e.g. She studied hard, **so** she passed the exam.

3. Connectors for CONTRAST:

A) Using "but"

main idea (الفكرة الأساسية) + **but** + unexpected result (النتيجة غير متوقعة).

e.g. It was sunny, **but** I felt cold.

B) Using "although"

Although + main idea (الفكرة الأساسية), unexpected result (النتيجة غير متوقعة).

e.g. **Although** it was sunny, I felt cold.

unexpected result (النتيجة غير متوقعة) + **although** + main idea (الفكرة الأساسية)

e.g. I felt cold **although** it was sunny.

Skills

1. Asking and answering about art in our life

- A: What kind of art do you like?
 B: I like colorful paintings and fun sculptures.
 A: Is art important in our life?
 B: Yes, it is very important! Art makes our world more beautiful.
 A: What can we learn from it?
 B: We can learn how to be creative and patient.
 A: How can art bring people together?
 B: People can look at the same painting and feel happy together.
 A: Why is art considered a world language?
 B: Because it expresses feelings and ideas that everyone can understand.

2. Describing a painting

- A: What is your favorite painting?
 B: My favorite painting is "Starry Night".
 A: What is the painting about?
 B: It's about a beautiful, night sky over a quiet little town.
 A: How does it make you feel?
 B: It makes me feel calm.
 A: What story might it be telling?
 B: I think it tells the story of a peaceful night while the town sleeps.

3. How to write an email about a kind of art you like most.

- From : Ahmed
 To : Waleed
 Subject : The Kind of Art I Like Most
 Dear Waleed,
 I want to tell you about the kind of art I like most. I like theater most because it is full of talented actors and actresses. I enjoy watching the actors act and touch the hearts of the audience. I usually enjoy it at the theater in my city. After watching, I feel pleased and happy. I like to enjoy theater with my family or friends. It is a fun and meaningful way to spend a day out.
 Best wishes,
 Ahmed,

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

sculpt – art – style – participated – sculpture

Mokhtar's talent was amazing. He moved to Cairo to study at the new (1) school. There he learned to (2) with stone and bronze. He (3) in all his classes actively. His teachers saw his skill and encouraged him to develop his own modern (4), which would later symbolize a new style for Egyptian art, mixing ancient themes with modern forms.

4 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

Art is a journey into a world of imagination. It is all around us, not just in galleries. You can see it in the bright colors of a birthday card, the design of a video game, or the pattern on a rug. These things are made by artists who use their thoughts and emotions. Their goal is to create something that makes us feel happy, excited, or calm. When you draw a picture from your imagination, you are an artist too. You are making an **original** artwork that is special because it came from your mind. This journey of creating is one of the most valuable **life skills**.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. According to the passage, art is
a) only in museums b) all around us
c) always very valuable d) only for adults
2. The author says that creating art is a valuable
a) emotion b) life skill c) tradition d) goal

B) Answer the following questions:

3. What is the main idea of this passage?
4. Where are three places you can find art, according to the passage?
5. What does the word "**original**" mean when describing your artwork?
6. Why is creating art considered a "**life skill**"?

D Vocabulary and Structure

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Mona visited a to see many beautiful paintings and sculptures.
a) sculpture b) gallery c) library d) supermarket
2. Emad sent a nice birthday to his best friend today.
a) clay b) pottery c) message d) area

3. Welcome Cairo; we are pleased to see you.
 a) for b) in c) on d) to
4. I all the help you gave me with my hard homework.
 a) neglect b) think c) refuse d) appreciate
5. Mazin was sleepy in class he went to bed very late.
 a) but b) so c) although d) because
6. It was raining outside, we decided to stay indoors and play.
 a) although b) because c) so d) but

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Bassam can read (so) he is just 4.
 2. The big dog looks friendly, (although) I am still a little scared.
 3. My best friend was feeling sad, (because) I told her a very funny joke.
 4. Zain could not go to the park (so) he had to do his homework.

E The Story

7 A) Answer the following questions:

1. What did the friends find one sunny morning that started their adventure?
 2. Why was it important that the friends agreed "no one is the boss"?

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3. The friends packed food, water, a compass, and to draw what they discovered.
 a) cameras b) notebooks c) telescopes d) maps
4. Sami felt when he shared his ideas for the first time.
 a) scared b) angry
 c) free and happy d) bored

F Writing

8 Write a paragraph of (90-100) words on:

"The importance of art in our life"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



هذا الجزء عبارة عن مراجعة عامة على ما تم دراسته للتهيئة للتقييمات شهر نوفمبر.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Vocabulary

- We must learn how to overcome
a) challenges b) levels c) abilities d) muscles
- Success in life needs hard work and
a) distraction b) frustration c) determination d) installation
- A is a train that runs on a single rail, usually above the ground.
a) tunnel b) flyover c) monorail d) tram
- If you have problems, don't get or give up.
a) pressed b) stressed c) dressed d) confident
- A is a road that passes over another road on a bridge.
a) tunnel b) flyover c) traffic jam d) street
- To achieve success, you must going even when something feels difficult.
a) keep b) make c) run d) walk
- When I started learning English, each grammar rule felt like a/an, but I didn't stop.
a) lesson b) obstacle c) meme d) model
- In big cities, it's easier to move using buses, bikes, or trains.
a) away b) up c) down d) around
- The company that they would open a new office next year. SB
a) guessed b) whispered c) announced d) hid
- After practicing a lot, she felt about giving her presentation. SB
a) nervous b) confused c) shy d) confident
- She was a big challenge. SB
a) listening b) reading c) looking d) facing
- We went to the art to see the new paintings.
a) information b) gallery c) symbol d) hall
- Artists use their imagination and to make beautiful works of art.
a) create b) creative c) creature d) creativity
- To is to show or tell a feeling, idea, or message.
a) express b) stress c) address d) press
- To is to make something new, like a drawing, painting, or a sculpture.
a) create b) take c) fix d) bake
- The painting was so that everyone liked it.
a) boring b) amazing c) annoying d) scary
- Amr is a great actor. His on the stage sparked everyone.
a) courage b) safety c) performance d) emotion

18. is the ability to form new ideas or pictures in your mind.
 a) Emotion b) Imagination c) Courage d) Empathy
19. Nada is not a famous actress, but I think she more.
 a) makes b) deserves c) watches d) helps
20. This artist uses different, like fabric and metal.
 a) data b) materials c) posts d) posters
21. The used clay to create a statue that showed the life of ordinary people.
 a) sculpture b) sculptor c) actor d) singer

Language

22. Hany couldn't answer the phone he was having a shower.
 a) so b) because c) although d) then
23. Tamer ran fast, he didn't win the race.
 a) so b) because c) but d) when
24. Amal faced a lot of challenges, she was determined to succeed.
 a) But b) Although c) So d) Because
25. He didn't finish the sculpture he ran out of time.
 a) but b) although c) so d) because
26. What when I called you? You sounded very busy.
 a) did you do b) does you do
 c) were you doing d) do you do
27. The students quietly when the teacher came in.
 a) were working b) is working c) work d) works
28. While I my homework, Mom was cooking lunch.
 a) do b) did c) am doing d) was doing
29. Rana was watching the film, she fell asleep.
 a) As b) While c) During d) When
30. Doaa cleaned the flat. Then she shopping.
 a) go b) goes c) went d) going
31. I watched TV. After that I to bed.
 a) go b) am going c) went d) was going
32. I my arm while I was riding my bike.
 a) break b) was broke
 c) broke d) was breaking
33. you play tennis last Friday?
 a) Do b) Does c) Did d) Is
34. A new school in our village last year.
 a) builds b) built c) was building d) was built

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. While I (walk) in the street, I saw an accident.
2. I (drive) when you called me.
3. I fell asleep when I (am studying) Arabic.
4. What were you (watch) when I phoned you?
5. The penguins (are eating) and the dolphins were jumping when we arrived.
6. I (fall) while I was going down the stairs.
7. When I saw her, she (wear) a really nice purple dress.
8. Last Saturday, we (get) up late and we missed the train.
9. I (sleep) when a loud noise woke me up.
10. (Are) you doing anything when your father arrived?
11. I (read) a novel while my mother was cooking lunch.
12. (While) the party, Salma was singing and eating.
13. My brother (finish) school in 2022.
14. I (meet) my friend Amal two days ago.
15. I was hungry, (but) I made a sandwich.
16. (But) it was raining, I went to school.
17. Hany didn't go out (so) he was very ill.
18. Nada tried hard, (although) she couldn't carry the bag.
19. While (cook) lunch, Fatima felt tired.
20. As I was doing homework, my dad (arrive) home.
21. The museum (visit) by thousands of people last year.
22. I saw a thief while I (am looking) out of the window.

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

A)

proud – first – After – overcome – sunnier

Sara wanted to grow a small vegetable garden, but the soil in her yard was very dry. At (1)....., seeds didn't grow, and she felt disappointed. However, Sara decided not to give up. Every day, she watered the soil and moved the plants to a (2)..... place. (3)..... a few weeks, small green leaves began to appear. Sara felt proud because she learned that hard work and patience can help her (4)..... challenges.

B)

Bridge – jams – flyovers – electric

Cairo is a great city. Traffic (1)..... are a big problem there. Egypt is working to solve this problem. New metro lines like line 3 and line 4 have been built. Projects such as Tahya Misr (2)..... and 6th of October Bridge help cars move faster. The country is building a monorail and an (3)..... train to give people more ways to travel. Egypt also built (4)..... and tunnels. These plans make the roads better.

C)

colorful – special – sculptures – artwork

There is a wonderful world of art all around us! An (1)..... is anything an artist makes to express their ideas and emotions. Sometimes, there are bright, (2)..... paintings. On the other hand, there are amazing (3)..... made from different materials, like smooth stone or shiny metal. Each piece shows the artist's (4)..... touch.

4 Complete the following dialog:

A) Salma and Nada are talking about Mahmoud Mokhtar.

Salma : Have you heard of Mahmoud Mokhtar?

Nada : (1).....

Salma : (2).....?

Nada : He was born in 1891.

Salma : Was he famous?

Nada : (3).....

Salma : (4).....?

Nada : He made the Nahdat Misr statue.

Salma : (5).....!

B) Ahmed is talking to a tourist.

Ahmed : Welcome to Egypt.

Tourist : (1).....

Ahmed : Where are you from?

Tourist : I'm from Toronto, Canada.

Ahmed : (2)..... this your first visit to Egypt?

Tourist : Yes, it is.

Ahmed : (3)..... will you stay here?

Tourist : Two weeks.

Ahmed : (4)..... you visited the Egyptian Museum?

Tourist : No, I haven't but I will go there tomorrow.

Ahmed : Have a nice stay in Egypt!

Tourist : (5).....

3

MODULE

مقرر شهر
ديسمبر



Unit **5** Around the World

Unit **6** Young Innovators

Module 3 Question Bank

Unit 5

AROUND THE WORLD

LEARNING OUTCOMES

Reading

- Identify the main idea and supporting details in a travel blog.
- Compare and contrast the writer's experience in Japan and Morocco using examples from the text.
- Identify facts and opinions in a short text and make simple inferences based on information about people, places, and culture.

Learning

- Identify the main idea and important details from a spoken tour about famous places in Cairo.
- Pick out specific information such as names, numbers, languages, and foods mentioned in the audio.

Speaking

- Talk about cultural aspects of a country (food, traditions, greetings, landmarks).
- Share and compare ideas about countries and cultures in a structured conversation (Role-play).

Language

- Identify and explain comparatives, superlatives in context.
- Create accurate sentences using these grammar forms.

Writing

- Write a social media post using key vocabulary and comparatives and superlatives.
- Edit writing using peer feedback and self-check.

A VOCABULARY LESSON 1

- قم بدراسة المفردات الرئيسية جيداً لدرجة الإتقان:
حيث إنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.
- قم باختيار حفظك للمفردات عن طريق الرجوع إلى
ملحق التقويم وتسميع الكلمات الخاصة بالدرسين.

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

blogger (n)	مدون	impressive (adj)	مبهر/رائع
capital (n)	عاصمة	landmark (n)	معلم بارز
ceremony (n)	احتفال/مراسم	organized (adj)	منظم
continent (n)	قارة	population (n)	السكان
culture (n)	ثقافة	tradition (n)	تقليد
detective (n)	محقق	unforgettable (adj)	لا ينسى

Additional Vocabulary المفردات الإضافية

calmness (n)	هدوء	kindness (n)	عطف/طيبة
center (n)	مركز	locate (d) (v)	يقع (جغرافيا)
curious (adj)	فضولي	main (adj)	رئيسي/أساسي
custom (n)	عادة (مجتمع)	respectful (adj)	محترم للغير
festival (n)	مهرجان	regularly (adv)	بانتظام
hints (n)	تلميحات	wedding (n)	زفاف

Language Expressions & Prepositions التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

happy with	سعيد بشأن	show judgment	يظهر حكماً
open to	منفتح على	take a photo	يلتقط صورة
point to	يشير إلى		

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past simple	Past participle
do يفعل/يؤدي	did	done
say يقول	said	said

Words and Opposites الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
noisy	صاخب	calm/quiet	هادئ
polite	مehذب/مؤدب	impolite	غير مهذب

(n) = noun (adj) = adjective (prep) = preposition لاحظ الاختصارات الآتية:
(v) = verb (adv) = adverb (conj) = conjunction

Read and complete with a word from the list:

messy – kindness – festival – organized

- 1 The has games, food, and fun for everyone.
- 2 A smile is a simple way to show
- 3 My sister keeps her desk and tidy.

LESSON 2

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

a jewel (n)	جوهرة	pharaohs (n)	فراعنة
a souvenir (n)	هدية تذكارية	preserved (adj)	محفوظ/محنط
celebration (n)	احتفال	protection (n)	حماية
collection (n)	مجموعة	stop (n)	محطة
golden (adj)	ذهبي	tomb (n)	مقبرة
government (n)	حكومة	tour (n)	جولة
jewelry (n)	مجوهرات	treasure (n)	كنز
mask (n)	قناع	wide (adj)	واسع
mummies (n)	مومياوات	wonders (n)	عجائب
mysterious (adj)	غامض		

Additional Vocabulary المفردات الإضافية

bazaar (n)	بازار (سوق)	hometown (n)	مسقط الرأس
central (adj)	مركزي	intelligent (adj)	ذكى
dead (adj)	ميت	unknown (adj)	غير معروف
expensive (adj)	غالى الثمن	visitor (n)	زائر

Language Expressions & Prepositions التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

a cover for	غطاء لـ	help with	يساعد فى
compare ... to	يقارن بـ	on a guided tour	فى جولة بصحبة مرشد
famous for	مشهور بـ		

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past participle
build	يبني	built	built
keep	يحافظ على	kept	kept

Checkpoint

Read and complete with a word from the list:

wonders – with – for – mask

- 1 Egypt is famous its fine weather.
- 2 A covers the face to protect us against germs.
- 3 The pyramids are some of the greatest of the world.

Language Notes

1 Countries and cities

بلاد ومدن

America أمريكا / Australia أستراليا / Japan اليابان / Marrakech مراكش / Morocco المغرب / Tokyo طوكيو / Luxor الأقصر / Giza الجيزة

2 Places

أماكن

Koutoubia Mosque مسجد الكتبية / Mount Fuji جبل فوجي / Tahrir Square ميدان التحرير / Grand Egyptian Museum المتحف المصري الكبير / Great Sphinx أبو الهول العظيم / Khan El Khalili خان الخليلي / New Administrative Capital العاصمة الإدارية الجديدة

3 Dishes

أكلات

ramen شعيرية الرامن / sushi سوشي / tagine طاجن

4 custom

عادة (شيء يفعله الناس في مجتمع معين لأنه أمر تقليدي أو مقبول)

• In Japan, it is the custom to take off your shoes when you enter a house.

tradition

عادة (اعتقاد أو عادة أو طريقة للقيام بشيء موجود منذ فترة طويلة)

• In many countries, it's a tradition for the bride to wear white.

Vocabulary Builder

ادرس مفردات اللغة جيداً
لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.



Definitions التعريفات

capital	عاصمة	the main city of a country	(1) احتفالات
continent	قارة	a group of countries on one large land area	(2) عادة
landmark	مُغْلَم بارز	a famous place or building people visit	(3) مجموعة
mask	قناع	a cover for the face, often used in celebrations ⁽¹⁾ , shows, or for protection	
mummies	مومياءات	dead bodies that have been preserved for a long time, especially in ancient Egypt	
mysterious	غامض	something strange or unknown that makes you curious	
population	سكان	the number of people living in a place	
souvenirs	هدايا تذكارية	small things people buy or keep to remember a place or trip	
tradition	تقليد	a custom ⁽²⁾ that people do regularly	
treasure	كنز	a collection ⁽³⁾ of valuable things like gold, silver, or jewels	

Words and Synonyms الكلمات ومرادفها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
calmness (n)	هدوء	quietness	هدوء
celebration (n)	احتفال	festival	مهرجان/حفلة
impressive (adj)	مبهر/رائع	awesome	رائع
preserved (adj)	محفوظ/محموظ	well-kept	محموظ جيداً

Suffix اللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Suffix اللاحقة	Function الوظيفة	The new word الكلمة الجديدة
impress (v)	يبهر	-ive	تحويل الكلمة	impressive (adj) مبهر/رائع
mystery (n)	غموض	-ous	إلى صفة	mysterious (adj) غامض
calm (adj)	هادئ	-ness	تحويل الصفة إلى اسم	calmness (n) هدوء
tradition (n)	تقليد	-al	تحويل الاسم إلى صفة	traditional (adj) تقليدي

B Reading & Listening Skills

Lesson 1

Pre-reading questions:

- 1 Which continent is Japan in?
- 2 Which continent is Morocco in?
- 3 Have you ever visited or wanted to travel to another country? Where? Why?

 Read the following text. Was Rokaya happy with her two visits? **SB page 73**

A Blogger's Journey (Japan and Morocco)

By Rokaya; Travel Blogger

Last year, I traveled across two amazing countries in two different **continents**⁽¹⁾, Asia and Africa. I visited Japan and Morocco, and both were full of rich **culture**⁽²⁾ and **unforgettable**⁽³⁾ experiences.

In Japan, I explored Tokyo, the capital city. It's one of the most organized places I've ever seen. The **population**⁽⁴⁾ is large, and the people are polite and respectful. I joined a tea **ceremony**⁽⁵⁾, a beautiful **tradition**⁽⁶⁾ that shows calmness and kindness.

Then I went to Morocco. I stayed in Marrakech, a colorful city full of life. The population is smaller than Tokyo's, but the energy in the streets was stronger. People speak Arabic and French. I visited old markets and ate traditional food like tagine.

Each country has a special **landmark**⁽⁷⁾. In Japan, I saw Mount Fuji: quiet, powerful, and more **impressive**⁽⁸⁾ than any mountain I've visited before. In Morocco, I visited the Koutoubia Mosque, a tall and beautiful building in the city center.

Have you ever explored two countries with such different cultures? This travel experience taught me how big and interesting our world is, and how much we can learn when we're curious and open to new traditions.

Post-reading questions:

SB

- 1 What two countries did Rokaya visit last year?

- 2 From the text, which city do you think was quieter, Tokyo or Marrakech?

- 3 Which city has more population, Tokyo or Marrakech?



- | | |
|------------------|----------------|
| (1) قارات | (2) ثقافة |
| (3) لا ينسى | (4) عدد السكان |
| (5) احتفال/مراسم | (6) تقليد |
| (7) معلم بارز | (8) مثير |

Pre-listening questions:

- 1 What does a tour guide usually say or do?
- 2 Have you ever been on a guided tour?



Lesson 2

SB page 75

A Tour Around Cairo Guide

Guide: Hello everyone, and welcome to Cairo! My name is Karim, and I'm your tour guide today. We are going to visit some amazing places in Egypt's capital city.

Our first stop today is the "Pyramids of Giza". These pyramids are very old - they are over 4,500 years old! They were built as **tombs**⁽¹⁾ for the pharaohs. The biggest one is the Pyramid of Khufu, it is one of the Seven **Wonders**⁽²⁾ of the ancient world.

Next, we will see the "Great Sphinx". The Sphinx has the body of a lion and the head of a king. Many people think it looks **mysterious**⁽³⁾. You can take photos here!

After lunch, we will go to the new "Grand Egyptian Museum", which is near the pyramids. It is one of the largest museums in the world. It has many ancient **treasures**⁽⁴⁾, like the golden **mask**⁽⁵⁾ of Tutankhamun. You will see **mummies**⁽⁶⁾, statues, and old jewelry.

Later, we will drive to a very modern place called the "New Administrative Capital". This city is being built to help make life easier for people in Cairo. In this new city, you can see buildings, wide roads, and nice parks. One day, it will be the new center of government in Egypt.

At the end of the day, we will stop at "Khan El Khalili Bazaar". This is a famous market where you can buy **souvenirs**⁽⁷⁾.



- | | |
|-------------------|-------------|
| (1) مقابر | (2) عجائب |
| (3) غامض | (4) كنوز |
| (5) قناع | (6) موميאות |
| (7) هدايا تذكارية | |

Post-listening questions:

SB

- 1 Where is the Grand Egyptian Museum located?
 - a) In the New Administrative Capital
 - b) Near the Pyramids of Giza
 - c) In Khan El Khalili Bazaar
 - d) In Tahrir Square
- 2 What can visitors do at Khan El Khalili Bazaar?
 - a) See ancient mummies
 - b) Take photos of the Sphinx
 - c) Buy souvenirs
 - d) Visit government offices
- 3 What is the New Administrative Capital?
 - a) A new museum near the pyramids
 - b) A modern city built to help with life in Cairo
 - c) The place where Tutankhamun's mask is kept
 - d) An old market in central Cairo

1 Vocabulary building:

Meaning/Synonym – Opposite/Antonym

ارجع للقطعة ص 213-214 وحاول أن تستخرج منها كلمات متشابهة أو متضادة في المعنى للكلمات التالية:

Meaning/Synonym	Opposite/Antonym
costly مكلف	messy فوضوى
security أمن	different مختلف
vast هائل	modern حديث

2 Comprehension strategies:

Have you ever explored two countries with such different cultures? This travel experience taught me how big and interesting our world is, and how much we can learn when we're curious and open to new traditions.

- Why do you think traveling is important?

(مهارات التفكير النقدي)

3 Translation:

A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

اختر الترجمة العربية الصحيحة:

- Tokyo is one of the most organized places I've ever seen.

- ☐ طوكيو هي واحدة من أكثر الأماكن التي شاهدها في حياتي ازدحاماً.
- ☐ طوكيو هي واحدة من أكثر الأماكن التي شاهدها في حياتي تنظيماً.

B) Choose the correct English translation:

اختر الترجمة الإنجليزية الصحيحة:

- يعتبر الهرم الأكبر أحد عجائب الدنيا السبع القديمة.

- ☐ The Great Pyramid is one of the Seven Ancient Wonders of the World.
- ☐ The Great Pyramid is one of the Seven Modern Wonders of the World.

LESSON

1

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The food and music of a country are part of its
a) custom b) festival c) habit d) culture
- Salma is very and always asks "why" about everything.
a) unforgettable b) organized c) curious d) shy
- Tourists from everywhere come to Egypt to see the Great
a) Desert b) Continent c) Mountain d) Pyramid
- Rami was happy the high score he got in his game.
a) with b) from c) for d) on
- This island has a small of only a few hundred people.
a) continent b) pollution c) population d) center
- The city has the country's most important buildings.
a) unknown b) capital c) impressed d) traditional
- A person who writes articles and shares their personal thoughts, photos, and videos on an online platform is a/an
a) blogger b) guide c) pharaoh d) visitor
- There was a for the winning team after the game.
a) shop b) wedding c) market d) ceremony
- Taking a deep breath can help you feel a sense of
a) calmness b) worry c) cleverness d) weakness
- The compass will help us which way is north.
a) go b) make c) locate d) create

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

curious – unforgettable – forgettable – capital – kindness

A young blogger traveled to many countries to write about new adventures. In one busy market, she tasted delicious food and saw colorful clothes. Later, she visited the (1) city and took a photo of a tall landmark. She was very (2) about the culture and asked people about their traditional customs. The trip was (3), and she stayed calm and happy with the (4) of the local people.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. My dad bought me a bracelet. It's really expensive.
a) wooden b) golden c) paper d) plastic
2. I wore a scary lion to the school party.
a) mask b) jewel c) tomb d) stop
3. There was a at the end of the school year.
a) celebration b) protection c) wedding d) collection
4. The built big wonders that we can still see today.
a) pharaohs b) mummies c) tourists d) visitors
5. The mummy was preserved inside the for years.
a) tomb b) ceiling c) river d) house
6. We found a/an old box behind the big, wide tree; it was strange!
a) mysterious b) organized c) preserved d) strong
7. Our family went on a/an to see the famous pyramids.
a) tower b) tour c) stop d) end
8. The is a wonderful place to find a souvenir.
a) bazaar b) tomb c) office d) hospital
9. The store has a wide collection of golden rings.
a) jewelry b) shoe c) mummies d) silver
10. We were a guided-tour inside the museum.
a) for b) on c) of d) with

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

mask – mummies – treasure – map – guide

Our tour around Cairo began at the Egyptian Museum. Inside, we saw ancient (1) that were carefully preserved. A (2) explained how the pharaohs were placed in a tomb with great protection. In one hall, there was a beautiful golden (3) that belonged to **يخض** a young king. The museum also has a collection of jewelry that shines like a hidden (4) The visit felt full of wonders.

Comparatives and Superlatives

صيغ المقارنة والتفضيل

Grammar story:



Read this passage well.

Celin had **the smallest** garden in the neighborhood, but it was also **the prettiest**. She spent **more** time than anyone else taking care of her flowers. One day, she planted a rose bush that grew **larger** and **brighter** than the others. By summer, her garden was **the most beautiful** in town.

• بعد قراءة الفقرة جيدًا، نلاحظ أنها مقارنة بين حديقة سيلين وحديقة أخرى. هيا بنا نتعرف على كيفية المقارنة:

A The Comparative of Adjectives

المقارنة بين شيئين

We use comparatives to say what is the same or different between two things, people, or situations.

• نستخدم المقارنات لنقول ما هو المتشابه أو المختلف بين شيئين، شخصين أو موقفين. وتنقسم الصفات حسب النطق إلى:

- صفات قصيرة (**Short adjectives**) وهي صفات تتكون من مقطع واحد (**One syllable**).

مثل: (high – big – tall – old – wide – nice – hot)

- صفات طويلة (**Long adjectives**) وهي صفات تتكون من أكثر من مقطع (**Two or more syllables**).

مثل: (modern – crowded – amazing – wonderful – interesting)

Form التكوين

1 Short adjectives: الصفات القصيرة

... short adj. + er + than ...

e.g. • Laila is **taller than** Farida.

• My house is **bigger than** your house.

2 Long adjectives: الصفات الطويلة

... more + long adj. / less + أقصر ...

e.g. • The fridge is **more expensive than** the cooker.

• Marwan's car is **less modern than** Sherif's car.

- عند السؤال نستخدم (**Which**) بمعنى أي / أيهما للتخيير كالتالي:



Which + (is/are) + (adj. er) / (more/less + adj.) ...?

e.g. • **Which is longer**, the River Nile or the River Thames?

• **Which is more useful**, the mobile or the computer?

B The Superlative of Adjectives

صيغة التفضيل العليا

We use superlatives to express the highest degree of something.

- نستخدم الصيغ التفضيلية للتعبير عن أعلى درجة من شيء ما.

Form التكوين

1 Short adjectives: الصفات القصيرة

... the + short adj. + est ...

e.g. Rania is the fastest runner in the team.

The blue whale is the biggest sea animal in the world.

2 Long adjectives: الصفات الطويلة

... the most / the least + long adj. ...

e.g. It's the most expensive car in the store.

This is the least expensive phone in the shop.

لاحظ

يمكن استخدام (Which) مع صيغة التفضيل لتحديد الأفضل أو الأسوأ في مجموعة:

e.g. Which is the most popular sport in your country?

عند إضافة (er) أو (est) للصفة القصيرة المنتظمة، تتبع الآتي:

١- إذا انتهت الصفة بـ (e)، نضيف فقط (r) أو (st).

- nice (nicer/nicest)

٢- إذا انتهت الصفة بحرف ساكن قبله متحرك، نضاعف الحرف الأخير ثم نضيف (er) أو (est).

- big (bigger/biggest)

٣- إذا انتهت الصفة بحرف (y) قبله حرف ساكن، نحولها إلى (i) ثم نضيف (er) أو (est).

- easy (easier/easiest)

استثناءات شائعة

Common Exceptions

Adj. الصفة	المقارنة بين اثنين	المقارنة بين مجموعة
good	better (than) أفضل/أحسن (من)	the best الأفضل/الأحسن
bad	worse (than) أسوأ (من)	the worst الأسوأ
far	farther (than) أبعد (من)	the farthest الأبعد

Got it ?

تمكنت هذه الجزئية من التعرف على كيفية إجابة سؤال تصحيح الخطأ مدعمة بأسباب الإجابة لتعزيز فهمك للدرس.

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1 Marwan is the (clever) boy in our class.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (cleverest) لوجود (the) الدالة على أنها صيغة تفضيل عليا والصفة (clever) قصيرة.

2 The new restaurant is (popular) than the one in the city center.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (more/less popular) لأنها مقارنة بين اثنين والصفة (popular) طويلة.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Adel is 150 cm, but Samy is 145, so Adel is than him.
a) tall b) taller c) the tallest d) more tall
- Huda is girl in her class, and everybody likes her smile.
a) the kindest b) kinder c) kind d) most kind
- This movie is exciting than the movie we watched last weekend.
a) most b) more c) the most d) as
- Our red kite is than the blue kite in the sky.
a) big b) bigger c) the biggest d) more big
- Zain is boy in his football team, and he always wins games.
a) the strongest b) stronger c) strong d) most strong
- This book is than that one; it has many more pages.
a) thick b) thicker c) more thick d) the thickest
- Lina thinks math is subject in her whole school day.
a) easy b) easier c) the easiest d) most easy
- That test was test we have taken all year in our class.
a) more hard b) harder c) the hardest d) most hard
- Some students think that English is than French.
a) easy b) easier c) the easiest d) more easily

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- Amgad is slow, but Tarek is (slow) than him.
- Omar told the (interesting) story of everyone in his class.
- Salma feels (happy) today than she was feeling yesterday.
- Adam got the (good) score on the science test today.
- My bedroom is the (big) room in the entire house.

3 Find the mistake in the following sentences and correct it:

- He thinks this is the excitingest game in the whole wide world. (.....)
- An elephant is more heavy than a camel. (.....)
- Mariam is tall than her friend Nour by a little bit. (.....)
- This game is harder that the last one. (.....)
- Manal is the short girl of all her friends! (.....)

PRACTICE MORE



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Linda is girl in her family; she always helps her brothers.
a) the nicest b) nice c) nicer d) most nice
- Amany is at maths than Donia.
a) good b) as good c) the best d) better
- Youssef is boy in the basketball team.
a) the tallest b) tall c) taller d) most tall
- The gray elephant is animal in the zoo.
a) the biggest b) big c) bigger d) most big
- Walid is boy in his class; everybody respects his kind nature.
a) the kindest b) kindly c) kind d) most kind
- Farida is of all her friends.
a) the happiest b) happy c) happier than d) happier
- Munir is boy of them all; he could win the race.
a) the fastest b) faster c) fast d) most fast
- The brown table is than the white one.
a) a bigger b) bigger c) the biggest d) more big

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- Tamer is (strong) than his younger brother.
- That was the (funny) movie I have ever seen.
- Sally thinks science is (interesting) than math.
- No one in class is cleverer than Youmna. She is the (clever) of all.

3 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets:

- Reda is 68 kg. Amr is 82 kg. (heavier)
.....
- My shirt is less colorful than your shirt. (more colorful)
.....
- Rayan told a very funny joke out of all the jokes. (the funniest)
.....
- Reem's smile is more beautiful than her friends'. (the most beautiful)
.....
- No painting is more beautiful than this painting in the gallery. (most)
.....

لحل المزيد من التدرّيات، قم بإجابة الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درسين في ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.





Asking and answering questions about a visit to a place

السؤال والإجابة عن زيارة المكان

← online
📞 📧 ⋮

What country did you visit before?
I visited Japan.

ما هي الدولة التي زرتها من قبل؟

لقد زرت اليابان.

When did you visit Japan?
I visited Japan last year.

متى زرت اليابان؟

زرت اليابان في العام الماضي.

What did you think of the food?
The food was very delicious and fresh.

ما رأيك في الطعام هناك؟

كان الطعام لذيذًا جدًا وطازجًا.

How were the people there?
The people were very polite and helpful.

كيف كان الناس هناك؟

كان الناس مهذبين ومفيدين جدًا.

What was your favorite part of the trip?
My favorite part was seeing Mount Fuji.

ما هو الجزء المفضل لديك من الرحلة؟

جزئي المفضل كان رؤية جبل فوجي.

Speaking Exercise

▲ Remembering
 ▲ Understanding
 ▲ Applying
 ▲ Analyzing
 ▲ Evaluating
 ▲ Creating

Complete the following dialog:

- ▶ Nora went to the beach with her cousin and ate ice cream.
- Sally** : Where did you go yesterday?
- Nora** : (1).....
- Sally** : (2).....?
- Nora** : We built a big sandcastle.
- Sally** : (3).....?
- Nora** : Yes, the water was cool and clear.
- Sally** : Did you find any shells?
- Nora** : (4)..... I found pink and white shells.
- Sally** : (5).....?
- Nora** : We ate ice cream.

How to write about a visit to a place or a city (Luxor)

كيفية الكتابة عن زيارة إلى مكان أو مدينة (الأقصر)

1. Where did you go on your visit?

أين ذهبت في زيارتك؟

- I went to Luxor.

ذهبتُ إلى الأقصر.

2. Who did you go with?

مع من ذهبت؟

- I went with my family.

ذهبتُ مع عائلتي.

3. What famous places did you see there?

ما الأماكن المشهورة التي رأيتهَا هناك؟

- I saw temples, tombs, and statues of the pharaohs.

رأيتُ المعابد والمقابر وتماثيل الفراعنة.

4. What did you like most about Luxor?

ما الذي أعجبك أكثر في الأقصر؟

- I liked the beautiful temples and the Nile River.

أعجبتني المعابد الجميلة ونهر النيل.

5. How did you feel during the visit?

كيف كان شعورك أثناء الزيارة؟

- I felt very happy and excited.

شعرتُ بسعادة وحماس كبير.

حان دورك الآن أن تجمع الأفكار السابقة في شكل فقرة:

اقرأ هذا النموذج المجاب عنه لإضافة أفكار جديدة ولتعلم منه:

"A trip to Luxor"

Last holiday, I went to Luxor with my family. The city is very old and full of history. We saw amazing temples, tombs, and huge statues of the pharaohs. The most beautiful sight was the great temples standing beside the Nile River. We also enjoyed a boat ride, which made the day more special. I loved learning about the past and taking photos of the ancient wonders. My visit to Luxor was unforgettable, and I felt very happy and excited.

TEST YOURSELF

Lessons (1 & 2)



نص الاستماع
في نهاية الكتاب

1 A) Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Where did Omar travel?
 - a) A village.
 - b) A capital.
 - c) A farm.
 - d) A forest.
2. What did people wear during the ceremony?
 - a) Sports clothes.
 - b) Traditional clothes.
 - c) School uniforms.
 - d) Raincoats.
3. What did Omar buy at the market?
 - a) Cars.
 - b) Houses.
 - c) Handmade gifts.
 - d) Books only.

B) Listen and complete:

4. Omar visited the main in the capital.
5. People danced during the
6. Omar was very about the culture.

2 Complete the following dialog:

Jack visited Sydney, Australia. He ate their traditional food.

Grandpa : Jack, where did you go on your big trip?

Jack : (1)

Grandpa : (2)?

Jack : I saw the Sydney Opera House, it's so cool.

Grandpa : What food did you try there?

Jack : (3)

Grandpa : (4)?

Jack : Yes, I saw kangaroos at a zoo.

Grandpa : Did you bring anything back?

Jack : (5) I got a souvenirs to show my friends.

3 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

traditional – traditions – population – kindness – landmark

Leila likes traveling. Last month, she traveled to China. The Chinese (1) were very different from her own country. She admired the (2) food that people prepared at a family wedding. She was curious about the culture, so she asked questions politely. At the city center, she saw a wonderful (3) and decided to take a photo. She was amazed by the (4) of China; about one billion people. She will never forget that unforgettable journey.

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The quiet library is a place of great for reading.
a) voice b) noise c) calmness d) cleverness
- The was held in a beautiful garden with many flowers. The bride العروس and groom العريس were amazing.
a) festival b) wedding c) ceremony d) tour
- Mummies are dead bodies in tombs for a long time.
a) alive b) served c) preserved d) killed
- The museum has a of jewelry from the old kings.
a) protection b) celebration c) collection d) correction
- This candy is than that fruit.
a) most sweet b) more sweet c) the most sweet d) sweeter
- The giraffe is animal I have seen in the zoo.
a) tall b) taller c) the tallest d) more tall

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- This museum is much (interesting) than the one we visited last week. SB
- July is usually the (hot) month of the year in Egypt. SB
- My hometown is (quiet) than Cairo. SB
- That was the (expensive) meal I've ever had on a trip. SB

6 Find the mistake in the following sentences and correct it:

- The population in Marrakech is smallest than Tokyo's. (.....) SB
- Tokyo is one of the more organized places I've ever seen. (.....) SB
- Cairo is biggest city in Egypt. (.....) SB
- Mount Fuji is the more impressive than any mountain I've visited before. (.....) SB
- Salma is most intelligent girl in the class. (.....) SB

7 Write a paragraph of (90-100) words on:

"Your visit to Aswan"

Challenging Questions مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب.

Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets:

- My phone is 125 gram. Ahmed's phone is 180 gram. (heavier)
- The streets in Cairo are busier than my town's. (The streets in my town)
- This bike is slower than all means of transportation. (the slowest)

Assess your progress ★★☆☆

< 50% Study again

50 : 64% Practice more

65 : 84% Take more exams

85 : 100% Well done!

A VOCABULARY LESSON 3

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

awesome (adj)	رائع/مدهش	lagoon (n)	بحيرة شاطئية
charm (n)	سحر/جاذبية	lost (adj)	مفقود
carved (adj)	منحوت	memories (n)	ذكريات
destination (n)	وجه (سفر)	popular (adj)	شائع/مشهور/محبوب
gateway (n)	بوابة/مدخل	trading city (n)	مدينة تجارية
geothermal (adj)	متعلق بالحرارة الجوفية للأرض	trail (n)	ممر/درب/طريق
glaciers (n)	جبال جليدية	treasury (n)	خزانة (دولة)

Additional Vocabulary المفردات الإضافية

abroad (adv)	بالخارج/خارج البلاد	reach (ed) (v)	يصل إلى
attraction (n)	جذب	rock (n)	صخرة
happiness (n)	سعادة	silk (n)	حرير
hiking (n)	المشي في الطبيعة	spices (n)	توابل
mass (n)	كتلة	view (n)	منظر (من شيء يطل عليه)
northernmost (adj)	الأقصى شمالاً	volcano (n)	بركان

Language Expressions & Prepositions التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

a home of	موطن لـ	on Earth	على الأرض
bring peace	يجلب السلام	sit high	تقع عاليًا
carve into	ينحت في	take (you) on a tour	يأخذك في جولة
fill with	يملأ بـ	Wonders of the World	عجائب الدنيا
get there	يصل إلى هناك		

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past simple	Past participle
bring يحضر	brought	brought

Words and Opposites الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
happiness	سعادة	sadness	حزن
lost	مفقود	found	موجود

Read and complete with a word from the list:

lost – into – glacier – found

- 1 The tourist used a compass to find his way back to the trail.
- 2 The old city was carved the side of the mountain.
- 3 A is a huge river of ice that moves very slowly.

Checkpoint

LESSON 4

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

argue (d) (v)	يجادل	waterfall (n)	شلال
shiny (adj)	لامع		

Additional Vocabulary المفردات الإضافية

cave (n)	كهف	friendship (n)	صداقة
close (adv/adj)	قريب	shell (n)	صدفة
discovery (n)	اكتشاف	stone (n)	حجر

Language Expressions & Prepositions التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

by the water	بجانب الماء	on an island	على جزيرة
feel free to be myself	أشعر بالحرية لأكون نفسي	split into	ينقسم إلى
get hurt	يتأذى/ينصاب بأذى	stay close	يبقى قريباً

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past simple	Past participle
draw يرسم	drew	drawn
lead يقود	led	led
split يتقسم/ينقسم	split	split
tear يمزق	tore	torn

Words and Opposites الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
mysterious	غامض	clear	واضح
strange	غريب	usual	معتاد

Checkpoint

Read and complete with a word from the list:

discovery – caves – stone – paper

- 1 This statue is of It's really hard.
- 2 Fire was a great in ancient times.
- 3 Bears usually live in

Language Notes

Countries/Cities/Places:

الإنكا Inca / بيرو Peru / ماتشو بيتشو Machu Picchu / الأردن Jordan / البتراء Petra
 آيسلندا Iceland / ريكيافيك Reykjavik / طريق الإنكا Inca Trail / جبال الأنديز the Andes
 الشفق القطبي the Northern Lights / البحيرة الزرقاء the Blue Lagoon
 باريس Paris / شفشاون Chefchaouen

Vocabulary Builder

ادرس مفردات اللغة جيدًا لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.

Definitions التعريفات

charm	سحر/جاذبية	a special beauty or attraction ⁽¹⁾	جذب (1)
glacier	جبل جليدي	a large mass ⁽²⁾ of ice that moves slowly	كتلة (2)
lagoon	بحيرة شاطئية	a small lake near the sea	
trail	ممر	a path or way for walking	

Suffix اللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Suffix اللاحقة	Function الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
color (n)	لون/يلون	-ful	تحول الكلمة إلى صفة	colorful (adj)	ملون
free (adj)	حر	-dom	تحول الكلمة	freedom (n)	الحرية
friend (n)	صديق	-ship	إلى اسم	friendship (n)	صداقة
mystery (n)	غموض	-ous	تحول الكلمة	mysterious (adj)	غامض
shine (n)	تلمع	-y	إلى صفة	shiny (adj)	لامع/مشرق

B Reading & Listening Skills

Lesson 3

Pre-reading questions:

- 1 Do you think it is exciting to travel abroad? Why?
- 2 What country would you want to visit? Why?

 Read the following text.

SB page 77

Welcome to WonderWander Tours - Your Gateway to the World's Most Amazing Destinations! Are you ready to explore some of the most **awesome**⁽¹⁾ and unforgettable places on Earth? In this guide, we'll take you on a tour to four very special **destinations**⁽²⁾ that will fill your heart with wonder and your camera with unforgettable **memories**⁽³⁾. Let's begin your great adventure!

1. **Petra, Jordan:** Petra is an ancient city **carved**⁽⁴⁾ into red rocks. It is over 2,000 years old and was once a rich **trading**⁽⁵⁾ city. The most famous building is the Treasury, which you may know from movies. Petra is very special and is one of the New Seven Wonders of the World.



2. **Machu Picchu, Peru:** Machu Picchu is an old Inca city in the mountains. It is over 500 years old and sits high in the Andes. You can get there by train or by hiking the famous Inca Trail. The views are amazing, and it feels like a lost city in the clouds.



3. **Reykjavik, Iceland:** Reykjavik is the capital of Iceland and the home of amazing nature. It is the northernmost capital in the world. From here, you can visit the Blue Lagoon, a warm and blue geothermal pool. You can also see volcanoes, glaciers, and maybe even the Northern Lights in winter.



4. **Chefchaouen, Morocco:** Chefchaouen is a small city in the north of Morocco, high in the mountains. It is famous for its blue streets and houses. Walking there feels like being inside a painting. The color blue was believed to bring **peace**⁽⁶⁾ and happiness. It is a special place full of **charm**⁽⁷⁾ and culture.



Post-reading questions:

- 1 What is the main idea of the passage?
- 2 How can visitors reach Machu Picchu?
- 3 Which of these places would you most like to visit and why?

SB

(1) رائع (2) وجهات

(3) ذكريات (4) منحوتة

(5) تجارى (6) السلام

(7) سحر/جمال

The Adventure of the Hidden Island

Pre-reading question:

- What do you think you can find on a hidden island?

 Read the following text.

SB page 79

CHAPTER TWO:

Freedom and Friendship

When they reached the Hidden Island, they found strange plants, colorful birds, and mysterious caves. Hany suggested, "Let's split into pairs and explore, but stay close and safe."

They discovered beautiful shells, shiny stones, and even a waterfall. Faris led his group carefully, making sure no one got hurt.

What does Faris's careful leadership show us about his character?

Malik used his creativity to draw maps of the island, while Sami shared his discovery of a hidden cave.

When they felt tired, they sat by the water and shared stories. "I appreciate this day," said Sami. "I feel free to be myself."

How did Malik and Sami each use their different skills to help the group?

The friends smiled, knowing that freedom wasn't about doing anything they wanted, but about respecting one another, listening, and working together.

How is freedom different from just doing whatever you want?



Answer the following questions:

1. Where did the friends find strange plants and mysterious caves?

أين وجد الأصدقاء النباتات الغريبة والكهوف الغامضة؟

- The friends found them on the Hidden Island.

2. What did Hany discover on the island?

ماذا اكتشف هاني على الجزيرة؟

- Hany discovered beautiful shells and shiny stones.

3. Why did the friends smile when Sami said he felt free to be himself?

لماذا ابتسم الأصدقاء عندما قال سامي إنه يشعر بالحرية ليكون على طبيعته؟

- They smiled because they felt the same way and were happy that their friend felt safe and happy with them.

4. What did Hany suggest doing?

ماذا اقترح هاني أن يفعلوا؟

- Hany suggested they split into pairs to explore the island.

5. Who drew maps of the island?

من رسم خرائط الجزيرة؟

- Malik used his creativity to draw the maps.

Critical Thinking Questions:

1. Why do you think Hany asked the group to stay close and safe?

لماذا تعتقد أن هاني طلب من المجموعة البقاء قريبة وأمنة؟

- I think he said that because exploring new places can be exciting, but also have hidden dangers. Staying together keeps everyone safe.

2. What lesson did the friends learn at the end?

ما الدرس الذي تعلمه الأصدقاء في النهاية؟

- They learned that true freedom means respecting each other, listening, and working together as a team.

3. How did working together as a team help the friends have more fun?

كيف ساعد العمل الجماعي كرفيق الأصدقاء على الاستمتاع أكثر؟

- Working together helped them share their discoveries, keep each other safe, and feel happy because everyone was included. Sharing the adventure made it better for everyone.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- When they reached the Hidden Island, they found strange plants, colorful birds, and mysterious
a) houses b) cars c) caves d) schools
- Hany suggested they split into pairs to explore, but told them to stay close and
a) quiet b) safe c) fast d) noisy
- Malik used his creativity to maps of the island.
a) buy b) tear c) draw d) read
- Sami said he felt free to when they sat by the water and shared stories.
a) leave b) be himself c) argue d) eat more

2 Answer the following questions:

- Where did the friends find strange plants and mysterious caves?
.....
- What did Hany discover on the island?
.....
- Why did the friends smile when Sami said he felt free to be himself?
.....
- What did Hany suggest doing?
.....

3 Critical thinking questions:

- Why do you think Hany asked the group to stay close and safe?
.....
- What lesson did the friends learn at the end?
.....

1 Vocabulary building:

Meaning/Synonym – Opposite/Antonym

ارجع للقطعة ص 229-230 وحاول أن تستخرج منها كلمات متشابهة أو متضادة في المعنى للكلمات التالية:

Meaning/Synonym	Opposite/Antonym
amazing رائع	clear واضح
path ممر/طريق	far بعيد
beauty الجمال	disrespect يحتقر

2 Comprehension strategies:

Petra is an ancient city carved into red rocks. It is over 2,000 years old and was once a rich trading city. The most famous building is the Treasury, which you may know from movies. Petra is very special and is one of the New Seven Wonders of the World.

1. What is the text about?

(اعطاء الفكرة الرئيسية للنص)

.....

.....

.....

2. What does the underlined pronoun "it" refer to?

(فهم ما يشير إليه الضمير)

.....

.....

.....

3 Translation:

A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

اختر الترجمة العربية الصحيحة:

- Petra is an ancient city carved into red rocks.

☐

- البتراء مدينة قديمة منحوتة في الصخور الحمراء.

☐

- البتراء مدينة جديدة محفورة في الصخور الحمراء.

B) Choose the correct English translation:

اختر الترجمة الإنجليزية الصحيحة:

☐

When they felt tired, they sat by the water.

☐

When they felt tired, they went for a swim.

- عندما شعروا بالتعب، جلسوا بجانب الماء.

LESSON

3

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- are large mass of ice that move slowly on water.
a) Rocks b) Glaciers c) Lagoons d) Clouds
- Farida looked everywhere for her book, but she could not find it.
a) lost b) awesome c) popular d) happy
- Donia swam in the because the water was calm and warm.
a) trail b) glacier c) lagoon d) desert
- The birthday party gave us that we will never forget.
a) lagoons b) memories c) rocks d) clouds
- Hassan tried to peace by saying sorry to his friend.
a) bring b) sit c) ring d) draw
- The boy ran fast to his mother who was waiting at the door.
a) climb b) reach c) kick d) jump
- It is a very game that most of my friends play.
a) lost b) popular c) sad d) bad
- The colorful fish in the water look really and bright; they are amazing!
a) ordinary b) lost c) bad d) awesome
- Amina said the beach was the best for their summer trip.
a) destination b) situation c) pool d) gateway
- Ramy saw the street filled cars when school was finished.
a) with b) upon c) at d) over

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

silk – into – with – trading – trail

Petra is an awesome place in Jordan that many travelers dream of visiting. Long ago, it was a busy (1) city. People used to sell goods like spices and (2) The famous Treasury was carved (3) the red rock and looks like a large temple. When you walk through the narrow gateway, the view suddenly appears, and it fills your heart (4) excitement. A trip to Petra creates wonderful memories that last forever.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Zain and Omar about which football team is the best today.
 a) argue b) jump c) sing d) dance
2. Mariam saw a star in the dark sky last night.
 a) cold b) shiny c) drawn d) sad
3. The looked very tall, and the sound of water was strong.
 a) island b) toy c) waterfall d) water
4. The near the mountain looked very big and it was scary.
 a) cave b) house c) sky d) wave
5. We celebrated the because scientists found out a cure for cancer.
 a) invention b) exploration c) discovery d) problem
6. The kids must split teams before starting the football match.
 a) into b) across c) on d) over
7. Ali was careful not to hurt while climbing the small tree.
 a) get b) make c) play d) run
8. Sara told her little sister to close when crossing the street.
 a) dance b) climb c) stay d) call
9. Omar kicked a by mistake, and it hurt his foot badly.
 a) desert b) book c) stone d) mountain
10. Marwa told a story about her with Mariam during the school lesson;
 she loves her very much.
 a) problem b) book c) friendship d) flower

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

cave – feel – with – into – get

A group of friends imagined living on an island where they could (1) free to be themselves. They built a small house from stone near a (2) and dreamed of adventures. Sometimes, they split (3) two groups to explore the area. When they met again, they shared stories and never wanted to (4) hurt by unkind words. Friendship, they learned, is like a light that always stays close.

Lessons (3 & 4)

bring – lost – hiking – lose – charm

Our weekend trip started with a long walk. We went (1)..... on a beautiful trail. That trail had a peaceful (2)..... I almost got (3)..... once. Fortunately, my dad was there to (4)..... us back to the right path. It was an exciting trip.

Around the world, there are many amazing places to visit. Petra in Jordan is an awesome destination with the famous treasury carved into the rock. Machu Picchu in Peru is a lost city that sits high in the Andes Mountains. Reykjavik in Iceland is the home of glaciers, geothermal pools, and the northern lights. Chefchaouen in Morocco is filled with the charm of blue-painted houses and markets full of silk and crafts. These places are different, but each one fills travelers with happiness and memories that last forever.

1. Petra's most famous attraction is the

2. The northern lights can be seen in
- | | |
|----------------|-------------|
| a) Inca Trail | b) Treasury |
| c) Blue Lagoon | d) Glacier |
| a) Morocco | b) Jordan |
| c) Iceland | d) Peru |

3. What is the main idea of the passage?

- Which country is Chefchaouen located in?
.....
- What does the underlined pronoun "these" refer to?
.....
- Why do you think travelers love to visit different amazing places around the world?

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. A is a place for people to go swimming.
a) lagoon b) rock c) wave d) cloud
2. Egypt is the of the very old, giant Pyramids.
a) oasis b) continent c) island d) home
3. They hope to live because they want to explore the world.
a) here b) abroad c) regularly d) close
4. Sarah liked the because it looked like water falling from sky.
a) winter b) waterfall c) trail d) view
5. Roaa is than her sister.
a) prettier b) more prettier c) most pretty d) pretty
6. This is movie I've ever seen; it was really boring.
a) the best b) the worst c) the worse d) worse than

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. My grandfather is 73. My grandmother is 65, so she is (young) than him.
2. Judy is the (smart) girl in the school.
3. This puzzle is (difficult) than that one.
4. Winter is the (cold) season in the year.

5 Write a paragraph of (90-100) words on:

"A city you visited"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



Challenging Questions

مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب.

Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets:

1. Ahmed is 150 cm tall. Ali is 155 cm tall. (taller)
2. My book is interesting. Dalia's book is very interesting. (more interesting)
3. No cake is more delicious than Lean's. (most delicious)

Assess your progress ★★★★★

< 50% Study again

50 : 64% Practice more

65 : 84% Take more exams

85 : 100% Well done!

A VOCABULARY LESSONS ▶ 5&6

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

attacks (n)	هجمات	marriage (n)	زواج
crowded (adj)	مزدحم	travel agency (n)	وكالة سفر
historical (adj)	تاريخي	well-known (adj)	مشهور

Additional Vocabulary المفردات الإضافية

billion (n)	مليار	huge (adj)	ضخم
castle (n)	قلعة	necklace (n)	قلادة/عنقد
citadel (n)	قلعة	objects (n)	أغراض/أشياء
countryside (n)	الريف	postcards (n)	بطاقات بريدية
crafts (n)	حرف يدوية/مشغولات	site (n)	موقع
gift (n)	هدية	supervisor (n)	مشرف

Language Expressions & Prepositions التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

at Eid	فى العيد	remind ... of	يذكّر ... بـ
at sunset	فى غروب الشمس	sense of	شعور/إحساس بـ
hear about	يسمع عن	a while	لفترة قصيرة
protect ... from	يحمى ... من		

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past simple	Past participle
steal يسرق	stole	stolen

Words and Opposites الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
well-known	مشهور	unknown	غير معروف
crowded	مزدحم	empty	فارغ

Read and complete with a word from the list:

of – well-known – with – historical

- I visited a site with my family.
- Mohamed Salah is a footballer. This means he's popular.
- My mother always reminds me my medicine.

Language Notes

Cities and places

Big Ben / ساعة بيج بن / Colosseum / الكولوسيوم / Edfu / إدفو / Temple of Horus / معبد حورس /
the Giza Pyramids / أهرامات الجيزة / China / الصين / India / الهند / Canada / كندا / Mexico / المكسيك

Vocabulary Builder

ادرس مفردات اللغة جيداً
لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.



Words and Synonyms الكلمات ومرادفها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
crowded (adj)	مزدحم	busy	مزدحم
well-known (adj)	مشهور	famous	مشهور
gift (n)	هدية	present	هدية

Suffix اللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Suffix	اللاحقة	Function	الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
supervise (v)	يشرف	-or		تحويل الفعل لاسم فاعل		supervis <u>or</u> (n)	مشرف
crowd (n)	حشد	-ed		تحويل الاسم لصفة		crowd <u>ed</u> (adj)	مزدحم

B Reading & Listening Skills

Read the short conversation below, then switch roles with your partner.

SB page 82

Lesson 5

Student A Have you ever seen a famous landmark?

Student B Yes! I've seen the Citadel in Cairo, it is one of the most impressive buildings I've ever seen.

Student A Is that the one built by Salah El Din?

Student B Yes, it was built in 1176 to protect Cairo from attacks.

Student A That's so cool. Did they have any special ceremonies?

Student B Not when I was there, but I learned a lot about its history.

Student A How about going there together one day?

Student B Sure, it will be so fun!

Pre-reading question:

Lesson 5

- Have you ever visited a place with special traditions or seen a famous landmark?
What was it like?

 Read the following text.

SB page 81

Around the World

Nada Hi Noura. I haven't seen you since we were in Prep 1.

Noura Yes, it's been a while. I'm really happy to see you.

Nada What have you done? Have you traveled to another **continent**⁽¹⁾?

Noura Yes, I have. I've been to Europe! I visited Italy last summer.

Nada That's amazing! What was the most impressive place you saw?

Noura I've visited the Colosseum. It's one of the oldest **landmarks**⁽²⁾ I've ever seen.

Nada Wow! I've always wanted to see it. I heard their historical **ceremonies**⁽³⁾ were incredible.

Noura Yes! The history there is so rich. And I learned about many local traditions, too.

Nada Well, I've visited London, and I think that Big Ben is even more impressive than the Colosseum!

Noura Wow! I haven't been there yet. Did you buy any souvenirs?

Nada Yes, I bought a necklace. It's the most beautiful souvenir I've ever had.

Noura That sounds lovely. I think traveling is one of the best ways to learn about the world.



(1) قارة

(2) علامات بارزة

(3) مراسم/احتفالات

Post-reading questions:

- 1 What continent has Noura visited?
- 2 What is the most impressive landmark Noura has seen?
- 3 Why do people bring souvenirs from their travels?
- 4 How is travel helpful for learning about different cultures?

Work with a partner

Lesson 5

- Mrs. Nadia** Good morning, girls! I heard you visited the Temple of Horus in Edfu last weekend. How was the trip?
- Rodayna** Good morning, Mrs Nadia! It was one of the most **impressive** trips we've ever had!
- Sama** Yes, the temple is huge and it has beautifully **carved** statues of ancient Egyptian kings.
- Zeinab** I think it was even more impressive than the temples we saw in Luxor.
- Mrs. Nadia** That's wonderful to hear. How long did you stay at the site?
- Joury** We stayed for a **while**. There was so much to see and explore.
- Mrs. Nadia** Did you get anything to remind you of your visit?
- Rodayna** I bought a small statue of Horus as a **souvenir**. It's made by a **local** artist from Edfu.
- Sama** I got some postcards. They were so **colorful**, with pictures of the temple at sunset.
- Mrs. Nadia** That sounds lovely. What did you feel while walking around the temple?
- Zeinab** Honestly, I had a sense of peace. It was so calm and quiet inside.
- Rodayna** I think this trip gave us the best **memory** we'll keep forever.
- Mrs. Nadia** I'm glad to hear that. You've seen one of the most important temples in Egypt!

Lesson 6

Read and complete with the suitable words from the box above: **SB page 82**

My Egyptian adventure has been incredible! My trip was well **organized** by a local travel agency. The first landmark I visited was the Giza Pyramids. They were so impressive! The history of this ancient site is amazing. I also learned so much about the rich history and lively **culture** of the country. I even watched a beautiful marriage **ceremony** during my stay. The local guide told me a lot about the population of Cairo and how their lives are affected by living in such a big city. The best part of my trip was exploring the Khan El-Khalili market and buying some **souvenirs** and traditional handicrafts to take home. I'm leaving with so many amazing memories of Egypt's hidden **treasures** and a deeper appreciation for its people.



Like



Comment

LESSONS

586

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- ▶ 1. The train station was with people going on their holiday trips.
a) main b) crowded c) curious d) expensive
2. Amina was scared when she heard about tiger in India.
a) attacks b) marriage c) gift d) help
3. A dog has a very good sense smell to find its food.
a) to b) with c) for d) of
4. During the ceremony of my friend's, all guests were pleased.
a) birth b) marriage c) gift d) death
5. A is a piece of jewelry worn around the neck.
a) necklace b) ring c) watch d) shoe
6. Ahmed went to a to ask about tickets for his summer trip.
a) cinema b) castle c) library d) travel agency
7. Karim loves reading stories about pharaohs.
a) historical b) boring c) crowded d) huge
8. The sun looks like a big ball sunset just before it hides.
a) at b) by c) from d) with
9. If you have a problem at work, ask your for help.
a) supervisor b) gardener c) tourist d) servant
10. An umbrella helps to protect you the heavy rain in winter.
a) from b) on c) at d) with

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

of – by – gift – agency – crowded

Last winter, I visited a well-known historical site with my family—the Citadel. We booked the trip through a travel (1)..... . The huge Citadel was full of ancient objects and stories about old attacks. It was (2)....., but exciting. I bought a handmade necklace as a (3)..... . At sunset, the view was amazing. Visiting such places gives a sense of wonder and reminds us (4)..... how people lived long ago.

Writing a social media post

كتابة منشور على وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي

1 Why are you writing this post?

لماذا تكتب هذا المنشور؟

I'm writing this post to +
(فعل في المصدر) (اذكر السبب)

e.g. share my travel experience in Egypt.

2 What place are you writing about?

عن أي مكان تكتب؟

e.g. I'm writing about Egypt/a specific city (e.g. Cairo, Luxor, Aswan).

3 Why is it a great place?

لماذا هو مكان رائع؟

e.g. It's a great place because:

- it has amazing history.
- the people are friendly.
- the food is delicious.

A social media post

4 What can you do there?

ماذا يمكنك أن تفعل هناك؟

I can:

- visit the Pyramids.
- see ancient temples.
- enjoy Egyptian food.

5 When did you go there?

متى ذهبت إلى هناك؟

e.g. I went there last summer/last holiday/ in July.

6 How do you feel about the trip?

كيف تشعر تجاه الرحلة؟

e.g. It's a great place because:

- I felt:
- proud of my country.
 - very happy/excited.

حان دورك الآن لكتابة منشور. استخدم الأفكار السابقة لتساعدك على كتابة الموضوع.

نموذج مجاب عنه:

"A social media post"

Today, I'm writing to share my amazing trip to Egypt! 😍 I visited Cairo and saw the Pyramids of Giza and the Sphinx. Egypt is a great country with a rich history and kind people. I also enjoyed a boat ride on the Nile and ate delicious Egyptian food like koshari and falafel 😊. My favorite part was visiting the Egyptian Museum and seeing the treasures of King Tut. I felt so proud and happy to explore my beautiful country. I hope everyone gets the chance to visit Egypt one day! 😊



Like



Comment

Lessons (5 & 6)

Eman visited Mexico City.

Sara : Eman, where did you go with Grandma?

Eman : (1)

Sara : (2)

Eman : I saw the big pyramids at Teotihuacan.

Sara : (3)

Eman : I tried sandwiches with lots of salsa, so yummy.

Sara : Did you do anything fun outside?

Eman : (4)..... I went to a festival with music.

Sara : Did you learn something new there?

Eman : (5).....I didn't stay for long.

historical – postcards – supervise – agency – supervisor

Last summer, I went on a trip with my friends. We booked our vacation through a travel (1) to ensure everything was well-organized. During our visit, we explored a wonderful (2) museum filled with ancient objects. My (3) helped us during the trip. I bought some beautiful (4) to send to my cousins.

1. My dad caught a fish when we went on our camping trip; it was very big.
a) small b) huge
c) crowded d) wide

2. All the children feel so happy Eid with their wonderful gifts.
a) off b) from
c) at d) of

3. Mariam built a beautiful sand on the beach.
a) jewel b) castle
c) site d) heart

- 4.** My grandparents live in the quiet far away from the city.
a) continent b) ceiling
c) tomb d) countryside
- 5.** My new shoes are than my old ones.
a) expensive b) more expensive
c) most expensive d) the most expensive
- 6.** Yara is girl in her family; we all love her.
a) the kindest b) kind
c) kinder d) kinder than

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Summer days are (long) than the winter days.
2. This puzzle is the (difficult) one in the entire box.
3. Karim is the (strong) player of them all.
4. Nader is (fat) than Hala.

5 Write a paragraph of (90 - 100) words on:

"Your visit to another country"

[illegible]

Challenging Questions

مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب.

Find the mistake in the following sentences and correct it:

1. Huda is the happier student in the entire first-grade class. (.....)
2. Hend thinks this game is more better than our old board game. (.....)
3. Sama drew prettiest picture in our art class this morning. (.....)
4. Her backpack is more heavier than my very light school bag. (.....)

Assess your progress ★★☆☆☆

50 : 64% Practice more

65 : 84% Take more exams

85 : 100% Well done!

A

Reading

1 Read the short text and write (T) True or (F) False:

Many people dream of exploring new countries and learning about different cultures. Traveling lets you see famous landmarks, try traditional foods, and hear new languages. Some people travel to countries they've never visited before. Others return to places they love. Traveling helps you understand how people live around the world.

1. Traveling helps you learn about other cultures. (.....)
2. Most people travel only to places they know. (.....)
3. You can hear new languages when you travel. (.....)
4. Traveling can help you understand people better. (.....)

B

Vocabulary

2 Fill in the spaces using the words from the box:

continent – capital – tradition – explore – population

1. Cairo is the city of Egypt.
2. Asia is the largest in the world.
3. We want to different countries and cultures.
4. Giving gifts at Eid is an important in many countries.
5. The of China is more than one billion people.

C

Language

3 Write (C) for Comparative or (S) for Superlative:

1. Alexandria is bigger than Tanta. (.....)
2. Cairo is Africa's largest city. (.....)
3. This is the biggest museum in the city. (.....)
4. Sama is tall, but Ahmed is taller. (.....)
5. Canada is colder than Mexico. (.....)

D

Writing

4 Write a paragraph of (90 - 100) words about a country you like.

.....

.....

.....

.....

attacks (n)	هجمات
celebration (n)	احتفال
ceremony (n)	احتفال/مراسم
charm (n)	سحر/جادية
collection (n)	مجموعة
continent (n)	قارة
crowded (adj)	مزدحم
destination (n)	وجهة سفر
detective (n)	محقق
gateway (n)	بوابة/مدخل
glaciers (n)	أنهار جليدية
impressive (adj)	مبهر/رائع
lagoon (n)	بحيرة شاطئية
landmark (n)	معلم بارز
marriage (n)	زواج
organized (adj)	منظم
population (n)	السكان
shiny (adj)	لامع
spices (n)	توابل
tomb (n)	مقبرة
tour (n)	جولة
trail (n)	صم/حرب/طريق
travel agency (n)	وكالة سفر
treasure (n)	كنز
unforgettable (adj)	لا ينسى
waterfall (n)	شلال
wonders (n)	عجائب

Language

Comparatives & Superlatives

صيغ المقارنة والتشبيه

1. The Comparative of Adjectives:

A) Short adjectives: الصفات القصيرة

short adj. + er + than

e.g. Laila is taller than Farida.

My house is bigger than your house.

B) Long adjectives: الصفات الطويلة

... more / less + long adj. + than ...

e.g. The fridge is more expensive than the cooker.

Marwan's car is less modern than Sherif's car.

2. The Superlative of Adjectives:

A) Short adjectives: الصفات القصيرة

... the short adj. + est ...

e.g. Rania is the fastest runner in the team.

The blue whale is the biggest sea animal in the world.

B) Long adjectives: الصفات الطويلة

... the most / the least + long adj. ...

e.g. It's the most expensive car in the store.

This is the least expensive phone in the shop.

Skills

1. Speaking

Asking and answering questions about a visit to a place

A: What country did you visit before?

B: I visited Japan.

A: When did you visit Japan?

B: I visited Japan last year.

A: What did you think of the food?

B: The food was very delicious and fresh.

A: How were the people there?

B: The people were very polite and helpful.

A: What was your favorite part of the trip?

B: My favorite part was seeing Mount Fuji.

2. Writing

Today, I'm writing to share my amazing trip to Egypt! 🇪🇬 I visited Cairo and saw the Pyramids of Giza and the Sphinx. Egypt is a great country with a rich history and kind people. I also enjoyed a boat ride on the Nile and ate delicious Egyptian food like koshari and falafel 😊 My favorite part was visiting the Egyptian Museum and seeing the treasures of King Tut. I felt so proud and happy to explore my beautiful country. I hope everyone gets the chance to visit Egypt one day! 🇪🇬



5

Listening



1. Where did Leila travel?

- a)** To a capital city.
b) To a forest.
c) To a village.
d) To an island.

2. What did she admire?

- a)** A small shop. **b)** An impressive building.
c) A farm. **d)** A car.

3. What did Leila take notes about?

- a) Food only.** **b) Population and culture.**
c) Sports. **d) Animals.**

B) Answer the following questions:

4. What did Leila join?

[illegible]

5. How did she feel about the kindness of strangers?

```
#####
```

6. What did the journey give her?

Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialog:

Sara went to the park and played on the swings and slides.

Teacher : Where did you go this weekend?

Sara (1)

Teacher : What did you do there?

Sara : (2)

Teacher : (3) ?

Sara : Yes, we ate sandwiches and fruit.

Teacher : Was the park crowded?

Sara : (4); many families were there.

Teacher : (5) ?

Sara : It was sunny and warm.

3 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

to – impressed – calmness – impressive – landmark

Kady went to Cairo and walked through a busy market where people sold spices and clothes. She admired the (1) towers in the capital and decided to take a photo. She was open (2) learning about the culture and asked politely for the way. At night, she saw a light show near an ancient pyramid, which was a true (3) The journey gave her unforgettable joy and a feeling of (4)

4 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

Chefchaouen is a small city in Morocco, famous for its blue-painted houses. It sits high in the Rif Mountains and has become a popular **attraction** for travelers. When you walk through the city, every street is filled with charm, and the view is like a painting. People enjoy buying goods like silk, spices, and handmade crafts. Many travelers come here to relax because the city brings peace and happiness. Visiting Chefchaouen gives you beautiful memories that stay in your heart.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1.** Chefchaouen is famous for its
a) white walls **b)** blue houses
c) tall towers **d)** golden rocks
- 2.** Chefchaouen is located in the Mountains.
a) Andes **b)** Himalayas
c) Rif **d)** Alps

B) Answer the following questions:

3. What is the main idea of the passage?
4. What kinds of goods do travelers buy in Chefchaouen?
5. What does the underlined pronoun "its" refer to?
6. What do you think "**attraction**" means in the passage?

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The looked for clues to solve the mystery.
a) blogger b) detective c) supervisor d) thief
2. I found a ring on the floor of the bazaar; it was valuable.
a) cheap b) central c) dead d) golden

3. The made a rule to protect the old market.
a) celebration b) collection c) government d) protection
4. The Eiffel Tower is a famous in the city of Paris.
a) landmark b) pyramid c) market d) shop
5. Zain is boy in his football team; no player is stronger than him.
a) stronger than b) stronger c) strong d) the strongest
6. Our new classroom is than the old one.
a) big b) bigger c) the biggest d) more big

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Youssef is (tallest) boy in the basketball team.
2. English is (exciting) than history. I like languages.
3. Is the sun (hot) than the moon?
4. Adam got the (good) score on the science test today.

E The Story

7 A) Answer the following questions:

- 1.** What did the friends find when they reached the Hidden Island?

- 2.** What did the friends think about freedom?

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3. The friends discovered beautiful shells, shiny stones, and even a
a) waterfall b) notebook c) telescope d) cave
4. Malik used his creativity to draw of the island.
a) photos b) pictures c) paintings d) maps

F Writing

- 8** Write an email of (90-100) words to your friend Peter to tell him about an unforgettable visit. Your name is Jack.

(The page contains faint horizontal lines and some small, illegible markings.)

Unit

6

YOUNG INNOVATORS

YOUNG
BRIGHT
IDEAS

FUTURE
STARTS
NOW

INNOVATION

LEARNING OUTCOMES

Reading

Infer the writer's attitude of writing a text about the idea of innovation.

Identify the main idea in a reading profile of an Egyptian inventor.

Extract specific details from a text to answer comprehension questions about important innovations.

Listening

Infer the speaker's tone based on the listening text.

Extract specific details to answer questions about the text.

Speaking

Express opinions verbally on topics related to innovations.

Ask and answer questions about some innovations.

Language

Use the first and second conditionals.

Writing

Write a structured biography about a young innovator.

Incorporate target vocabulary and grammar structures into writing tasks.

Check your own work to make sure it's clear, correct, and follows all the rules.

A VOCABULARY LESSON 1

• قم بدراسة المفردات الرئيسية جيدًا لدرجة الإقناع:
حيث إنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.
• قم باختيار حفظك للمفردات عن طريق الرجوع إلى
ملحق التقويم وتسميع الكلمات الخاصة بالدرس.

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

audience (n)	جمهور	innovator (n)	مبتكر/مبتكر
brainstorm (v) (ed)	يعصف ذهنيًا (يفكر بشكل جماعي)	invention (n)	اختراع
complex (adj)	معقد	patience (n)	صبر
design (n/v) (ed)	تصميم/يصمم	model (n)	نموذج
effort (n)	جهد	speech (n)	حديث/خطاب
identifying (n)	تحديد	stuff (n)	أشياء/أدوات/مواد
impact (n)	تأثير	thought (n)	فكرة
improving (n)	تحسين		

Additional Vocabulary المفردات الإضافية

daily life (n)	الحياة اليومية	procedures (n)	إجراءات
inventor (n)	مخترع	series (n)	سلسلة
list (ed) (v)	يسرد/يعد قائمة	steps (n)	خطوات
matter (ed) (v)	يهتم	test (ed) (v)	يختبر
plan (n)	خطة	version (n)	نسخة
present (ed) (v)	يقدم/يعرض		

Language Expressions & Prepositions التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

build a model	يبني نموذجًا	make an invention	يصنع اختراعًا
build a version	يبني نسخة	make changes	يجري تغييرات
have an impact/effect on	له تأثير على	managing time	إدارة الوقت
made with	مصنوع باستخدام	take work	يتطلب عملاً
make a difference	يحدث فرقًا	turn into	يحول إلى
make a plan	يضع خطة	useful for	مفيد لـ
make an impact on	يحدث تأثيرًا على	work as	يعمل كـ

Words and Opposites الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
complex	معقد	simple	بسيط
patience	الصبر	impatience	عدم الصبر

Read and complete with a word from the list:

build – think – for – process – impact

- 1 Your smile has a big on us; it makes us happy.
- 2 Let's a model of a ship from paper and plastic.
- 3 A compass is useful finding your direction.

LESSON 2

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

Arab (n/adj)	عربي	measure (d) (v)	يقيس
astronomy (n)	علم الفلك	medicine (n)	طب/دواء
biography (n)	سيرة حياة شخص	physics (n)	فيزياء
chemical reaction (n)	تفاعل كيميائي	professor (n)	أستاذ جامعي
chemistry (n)	كيمياء	receive (d) (v)	يتلقى/ينال
consider (ed) (v)	يعتبر/يفكر في	role model (n)	قدوة
discovery (n)	اكتشاف	scientific (adj)	علمي
femtosecond (n)	فيمتوثانية	scientist (n)	عالم
inspire (d) (v)	يلهم	success (n)	نجاح
institute (n)	مؤسسة	successful (adj)	ناجح
literature (n)	أدب	youth (n)	شباب

Additional Vocabulary المفردات الإضافية

achievement (n)	إنجاز	Nobel Prize (n)	جائزة نوبل
alive (adj)	حي/على قيد الحياة	pass (ed) (v)	ينجح/في/يجتاز
cancel (ed)	يلغى	picnic (n)	نزهة
education (n)	تعليم	race (n)	سباق
extremely (n)	للاغاية	time machine (n)	آلة الزمن
field (n)	مجال/حقول	trust (ed) (v)	يثق في
hard work (n)	عمل شاق	university (n)	جامعة

Language Expressions & Prepositions التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

around the world	في جميع أنحاء العالم	grow up	يتربى/ينشأ
believe in	يؤمن بـ	show interest in	يظهر اهتماماً بـ
from a young age	منذ الصغر	work hard	يعمل بجد

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past simple	Past participle
drive يقود/يسوق	drove	driven
win يكسب/يفوز	won	won

Words and Opposites

الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
successful	ناجح	unsuccessful	غير ناجح
alive	حي/على قيد الحياة	dead	ميت

Read and complete with a word from the list:

from – with – received – show

Checkpoint

- 1 Basmala a prize for her hard work.
- 2 Many students interest in learning about space and the planets.
- 3 Rana loved reading a young age and spent hours with her books.

Vocabulary Builder

Definitions

التعريفات

ادرس مفردات اللغة جيدًا لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.



complex	معقد	something that has many parts and may be difficult to understand
impact	تأثير	a strong effect that something has on someone or something
step	خطوة	an action in a series ⁽¹⁾ that is part of a process or procedure ⁽²⁾
thought	فكرة	an idea, opinion, or something that comes to your mind
version	نسخة	a particular ⁽³⁾ form of something that is different from others of the same type
femtosecond	فيمتوثانية	one millionth of a billionth of a second

(1) سلسلة

(2) إجراء

(3) خاص

Pre-listening questions:

- 1 Do you think hard work is important?
- 2 Why do you think Zewail is considered a role model?

Listen to Ahmed Zewail's biography.

Ahmed Zewail was one of the most important Egyptian scientists in modern history. He was born in Dammanhur in 1946 and grew up in Alexandria. From a young age, he loved learning and showed great interest in science. He studied at Alexandria University.

Zewail worked very hard and became a professor⁽¹⁾ of chemistry⁽²⁾ at the California Institute of Technology⁽³⁾. His most famous discovery⁽⁴⁾ was the femtosecond. With this new science discovery, he was able to study chemical reactions⁽⁵⁾ in an extremely short time, measured in femtoseconds (a femtosecond is one millionth of a billionth of a second). This invention changed the world of chemistry and opened the door for new scientific research.

Because of this great achievement, Ahmed Zewail won the Nobel Prize⁽⁶⁾ in Chemistry in 1999. He was the first Egyptian and Arab scientist to receive the Nobel Prize in this field. This made all Egyptians proud.

Ahmed Zewail was not only a scientist but also a teacher and role model⁽⁷⁾. He believed in the power of education and always advised young people to work hard, read more, and never give up. He wanted Egyptian youth to trust themselves and to know that they can be successful like him.

Zewail inspired a lot of young scientists and inventors. If students work hard like Zewail, they will achieve great success. If he were alive today, he would be proud a lot of young inventors.

Post-listening questions:

Listen to the podcast and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Ahmed Zewail was born in
a) Cairo b) Alexandria c) Dammanhur d) Giza
- 2 Zewail became a professor of chemistry at
a) Harvard University b) Cairo University
c) Oxford University d) California Institute of Technology
- 3 The Nobel Prize Zewail received was for
a) physics b) medicine c) chemistry d) literature



Lesson 2

SB page 90



- (1) أستاذ جامعي (2) الكيمياء
(3) معهد التكنولوجيا (4) اكتشاف
(5) تفاعلات كيميائية (6) جائزة نوبل
(7) قدوة

Meaning/Synonym – Opposite/Antonym

ارجع للقطعة ص 255-256 وحاول أن تستخرج منها كلمات متشابهة أو متضادة في المعنى للكلمات التالية:

Meaning/Synonym		Opposite/Antonym	
young people	الشباب	unsuccessful	غير ناجح
award	جائزة	simple	بسيط
quit	يستسلم	fake	مزيف

2 Comprehension strategies:

Inventions don't have to be big or complex. What's important is the impact — how your invention helps people or solves a problem. With some imagination, patience, and effort, anyone can turn a simple idea into something that makes a difference.

1. The underlined word "simple" means (تخمين معنى كلمة)

- a) difficult b) useless
c) easy d) hard

2. How can we turn a simple idea into something that makes a difference? (استخراج معلومة)

3 Translation:

A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

اختر الترجمة العربية الصحيحة:

- Many inventions start with a simple thought.

- ☐ - تبدأ العديد من الاختراعات بفكرة بسيطة.
- ☐ - تبدأ الكثير من الاختراعات بفكرة معقدة.

B) Choose the correct English translation:

اختر الترجمة الإنجليزية الصحيحة:

- ألهم زويل الكثير من العلماء والمخترعين الشباب.

- ☐ Zewail inspired a lot of old scientists and inventors.
- ☐ Zewail inspired a lot of young scientists and inventors.

LESSON

1

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- A large is in the stadium to watch the final match of the championship.
a) speech b) process c) audience d) design
- Let's all together to find a solution to this tricky problem.
a) list b) brainstorm c) improve d) identify
- My grandfather says that catching fish teaches us
a) patience b) invention c) beach d) speech
- The company built a to test their new car's design.
a) kind b) type c) process d) model
- A/An is someone who introduces new ideas or creates new methods.
a) farmer b) gardener c) innovator d) fisherman
- Karim enjoys solving puzzles that make him think very hard.
a) safe b) complex c) simple d) easy
- The coach explained the game to the team for the next match.
a) plane b) design c) series d) plan
- Tomorrow, the students will their science projects to the class.
a) present b) ignore c) brainstorm d) see
- Youssef is learning about time to finish all of his homework.
a) managing b) doing c) holding d) losing
- The clever scientist will an invention to help people see in the dark.
a) do b) sit c) make d) think

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

test – with – brainstorm – build – do

All projects start with a simple idea. Then, you need to (1) all the different ways you can develop it, writing down your ideas. You can then (2) a small model of your idea to see how it works. After that, you'll need to (3) it out to see if it works as you planned. Finally, you can share your invention (4) the world.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Huda read about a/an who made a machine to help people see in the dark.
a) university b) model c) inventor d) version
2. We enjoyed the because it told the life story of a brave explorer.
a) discovery b) biography c) achievement d) success
3. Winning the drawing competition was a big for Salma at school today.
a) success b) discovery c) invention d) picnic
4. In class, we read poems and stories because we love very much.
a) math b) chemistry c) physics d) literature
5. The new in our city helps children learn music, art, and computers.
a) professor b) scientist c) library d) institute
6. The chemical caused smoke and bubbles فقاعات inside the glass jar.
a) picnic b) race c) reaction d) work
7. Every child needs a good role like a kind teacher or a caring parent to follow.
a) model b) medal c) scientist d) inventor
8. The in our university teaches math in a way that is easy and fun.
a) learner b) professor c) inventor d) worker
9. Samira wants to study in the medical, so she can help people.
a) picnic b) race c) university d) field
10. Mariam was happy to a gift from her best friend on her birthday.
a) cancel b) give c) receive d) discover

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

received – biography – science – education – field

Every great scientist has a story, and Zewail's (1) is very special. He worked hard in the (2) of physics and chemistry. He learned to measure events that happen faster than a second using femtosecond. His work was so successful that he (3) the Nobel Prize. His great discovery continues to inspire students who believe in learning and work hard to reach success in (4) and medicine.

C Language

First Conditional & Second Conditional

A Grammar story:



Read and circle the correct answer:

Omar loves going to the park with his friends. He checks the weather every morning. If it (**rained/rains**), he will stay home and play board games. But if it's sunny, he will go outside and play football. One day, Omar looked at the clouds and said, "If I had wings, I (**would/will**) fly over the clouds and stop the rain!"

1 The First Conditional

حالة الشرط الأولى

We use the first conditional to express real or possible situations in the future.

نستخدم حالة الشرط الأولى للتعبير عن مواقف حقيقية أو محتملة في المستقبل. (وعود/تحذير/احتمال).

Form

التكوين

If + **present simple**, subject الفاعل + **will** + **inf.**

- e.g. • If I **see** her, I **will tell** her about the party.
- If you **study** hard, you **will pass** the exam.

Subject الفاعل + **will** + **inf.** + **if** + **present simple**

- e.g. • We **will celebrate** if we **win** the game.
- We **will go** to the beach if it **is** sunny.

A) Negative:

If + **present simple**, subject الفاعل + **won't** + **inf.**

- e.g. • If we **hurry**, we **won't be** late.
- They **won't lose** the game if they **play** well.

B) Question:

Will + subject الفاعل + **inf.** + **if** + **present simple**?

- e.g. • **Will** you **buy** a car if you **have** a lot of money?
- **Will** you **come** to the party if Adel **invites** you?

2 The Second Conditional

حالة الشرط الثانية

We use the second conditional to express unreal or imaginary situations in present.

نستخدم حالة الشرط الثانية للتعبير عن مواقف غير حقيقية أو خيالية في الحاضر.

Form

التكوين

If + **past simple**, subject الفاعل + **would + inf.**

- e.g. • If I **were** a billionaire, I **would buy** a private plane.
• If she **spoke** English well, she **would get** a better job.

Subject الفاعل + **would + inf.** + **if + past simple**

- e.g. • They **would play** perfectly if they **practiced** more.
• Tarek **would catch** the bus if he **got** up early.

A) Negative:

If + **past simple**, subject الفاعل + **wouldn't + inf.**

- e.g. • If I **worked** harder, I **wouldn't lose** my job.
• Mona **wouldn't get** better results if she **didn't work** harder.

B) Question:

Would + subject الفاعل + **inf.** + **if + past simple**?

- e.g. • **Would** you **play** basketball **if** you **were** taller?
• **Would** Adel **help** you if you **had** a problem?

لاحظ



Sometimes we can use '**were**' instead of '**was**':

أحياناً نستخدم (were) مع المفرد بدلاً من (was) للتحدث عن أشياء غير حقيقية أو متخيلة.

- e.g. • If I **were** a pilot, I **would fly** a plane.
• If I **were** rich, I **would buy** a big house.



Got it ?

تمكنت هذه الجزئية من التعرف على كيفية إجابة سؤال تصحيح الخطأ مدعمة بأسباب الإجابة لتعزيز فهمك للدرس.



Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- 1 If you (water) the plants regularly, they wouldn't die.

- الإجابة الصحيحة هي (watered) لأن (would + inf) تدل على أن الجملة في الحالة الثانية، وبالتالي سنستخدم زمن الماضي البسيط.

- 2 Adel (would) win the competition if he has writing skills.

- الإجابة الصحيحة هي (will) لأن (has) تدل على أن الجملة في زمن المضارع (حالة أولى).

Practice

LANGUAGE EXERCISES

▲ Remembering

▲ Understanding

▲ Applying

▲ Analyzing

▲ Evaluating

▲ Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- If Amina wings, she would fly to school.
a) had b) has c) have d) having
- If Dalia a teacher, she would give easy homework.
a) been b) were c) is d) are
- If the children their homework, they will play outside.
a) finish b) finishes c) finished d) will finish
- If my pencil were magic, it draw pictures by itself.
a) will b) be c) would d) will be
- If Zeinab answers the question, she get a gold star.
a) is b) was c) will d) would
- If Malak studies hard, she will the test tomorrow.
a) pass b) passed c) passed d) passing
- If I underwater, I would be friends with all the fish!
a) will live b) lives c) lived d) living
- If my cat could talk, it would for food all day.
a) ask b) asked c) asks d) asking
- If you that button, the toy robot will start to dance.
a) will press b) pressed c) press d) are pressing
- If Fares finds the map, he discover the hidden treasure.
a) will b) was c) would d) are

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- If the bus arrives late, the students (miss) the morning class.
- If Rawan (win) the last race, she will get a prize.
- If Dalia lived on a farm, she (ride) a horse every single day.
- Abdullah (feel) tired if he stayed up all night again.

3 Find the mistake in the following sentences and correct it:

- If it will rain tomorrow, we will cancel the picnic. (.....) **SB**
- If Jana is a superhero, she would have the power to fly. (.....)
- If I had a car, I will drive it to school. (.....)
- If Hala was rich, she will buy a castle by the sea. (.....)

PRACTICE MORE



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- If our car had wings, it fly us over all the traffic.
a) will b) would c) is d) does
- If the team plays their best, they the championship.
a) will win b) will be won c) would win d) won
- If the weather is nice tomorrow, they go to the beach.
a) will b) would c) have d) are
- If Seif were an astronaut, he would on the bright moon.
a) walk b) walks c) walked d) walking
- If I a time machine, I would visit ancient Egypt.
a) have b) had c) will have d) would have
- Rami would buy a big boat if he near the beautiful blue sea.
a) live b) will live c) lived d) lives
- The little birds will sing if the sun out from behind the clouds.
a) come b) came c) comes d) will come
- If he the school football team, Youssef would be a great captain.
a) joins b) join c) joined d) joining

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- If we (wins) the championship, we will take part in the FIFA World Cup.
- If Farah (be) an engineer, she would design more parks for children.
- If the tickets are cheap, Youssef (go) to see the new movie.
- Yara will be happy if she (get) a new bike for her birthday.

3 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets:

- Hana should wake up early. She will miss the school bus again. (If)
.....
- I'm not rich, so I won't buy this mobile. (If)
.....
- A turtle is not fast. It does not win a race against a rabbit. (If)
.....
- Hurry up and you can catch the train. (will)
.....

لحل المزيد من التمارين، قم بالإجابة عن الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درس في ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.





Asking and answering about the biggest problem in your daily life

السؤال والإجابة عن أكبر مشكلة تواجهك في حياتك اليومية



online



What is the biggest problem in your daily life?

ما هي أكبر مشكلة تواجهك في حياتك اليومية؟

My biggest problem is managing time.

أكبر مشكلة أواجهها في حياتي اليومية هي إدارة الوقت.



What helped you most to manage your time?

ما الذي ساعدك أكثر في إدارة وقتك؟

Making a clear plan and following it every day helped me the most.

وضع خطة واضحة والالتزام بها يوميًا ساعدني كثيرًا.



What advice would you give to someone with the same problem?

ما النصيحة التي تقدمها لشخص لديه نفس المشكلة؟

I would tell them to make small goals, avoid wasting time, and stay organized.

أنصحهم بوضع أهداف صغيرة، وتجنب تضييع الوقت، وأن يكونوا منظمين.



Speaking Exercise

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analyzing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating



Complete the following dialog:

► Laila wakes up late for school because she watches cartoons at night.

Sara : What is the biggest problem in your daily life?

Laila : (1).....

Sara : (2).....?

Laila : Because I go to bed too late.

Sara : Why do you go to bed so late?

Laila : Because I watch cartoons at night.

Sara : What (3).....?

Laila : I stopped (4).....

Sara : Did it help?

Laila : (5)..... . Now I wake up on time.

Writing a biography about a famous Egyptian scientist

كتابة سيرة ذاتية عن عالم مصري مشهور

- | | | |
|---|---|--|
| <p>1 Who is he?
e.g. Dr. Ahmed Zewail was a famous Egyptian scientist.</p> | <p>2 When and where was he born?
e.g. He was born on February 26, 1946 in Damanhur, Egypt.</p> | <p>3 What is he famous for?
e.g. He discovered femtochemistry, which studies chemical reactions in very short time.</p> |
|---|---|--|

A biography about Dr. Ahmed Zewail

- | | | |
|--|--|--|
| <p>4 What are his achievements?
e.g.
- He won the Nobel Prize in Chemistry in 1999.
- He worked at the California Institute of Technology.
- He published many important books.</p> | <p>5 Why is he a role model?
e.g.
- He made Egypt proud in front of the whole world.
- He showed that Egyptians can reach the highest level in science.</p> | <p>6 How do people feel about him?
e.g.
- Egyptians feel proud of Dr. Ahmed Zewail.
- He is a role model and an inspiration to students everywhere.</p> |
|--|--|--|

حان دورك الآن لكتابة فقرة. استخدم الأفكار السابقة لتساعدك على كتابة الموضوع.

نموذج مجاب عنه:

"A biography about Dr. Ahmed Zewail"

Dr. Ahmed Zewail was a famous Egyptian scientist. He was born in Damanhur in 1946. He studied science in Egypt and then continued his studies in the United States. He worked at the California Institute of Technology.

In 1999, he won the Nobel Prize in Chemistry. He was the first Egyptian and Arab scientist to receive the Nobel Prize in this field. This helped scientists understand chemical reactions in a very short time. His work was very important for science and medicine.

Dr. Zewail always loved Egypt and wanted to help young people learn. Egyptians are very proud of him. He is remembered as a great scientist and a role model.

TEST YOURSELF

Lessons (1 & 2)



نص الاستماع
في نهاية الكتاب.

1 A) Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. What was Ali's idea about?
 - a) Making school uniforms.
 - b) Keeping food warm.
 - c) Fixing bicycles.
 - d) Packing clothes.
2. Who listened to Ali's speech?
 - a) His family.
 - b) A company.
 - c) His teacher.
 - d) A local shop.
3. What happened after Ali improved the design?
 - a) It was used by drivers.
 - b) It was thrown away.
 - c) He gave up.
 - d) He lost it.

B) Listen and complete:

4. Ali's idea was to help drivers.
5. He designed a bag that worked like a mini
6. He gave a to a company.

2 Complete the following dialog:

Omar loses his things all the time. He loses his books and pencils.

Adam : Do you have a problem in your daily life?

Omar : (1).....

Adam : What is it?

Omar : (2).....

Adam : What things do you lose?

Omar : (3).....

Adam : (4).....?

Omar : Because I don't keep them in one place.

Adam : (5).....?

Omar : I can solve it by making a small shelf to organize them.

3 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

stuff – staff – thought – make – into

To make your ideas happen, always begin with a (1)..... you believe in. Use your imagination and begin brainstorming. Write a list of materials or (2)..... you might need. Then, take steps to build a model. After that, test it and see what works. You may have to go back and (3)..... changes. The effort you put in will eventually turn your idea (4)..... something real and useful.

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- What are the next in our plan to complete this project?
a) causes b) impacts c) steps d) mistakes
- Lina wants to changes to her room to give it a new look.
a) think b) sit c) do d) make
- If you want to be successful, you must yourself and never give up.
a) invent b) trust c) cancel d) neglect
- Children and learn many new things when they read interesting books.
a) grow up b) trust c) finish up d) receive
- If Tamer hard for the race, he will have a good chance to win.
a) train b) trained c) trains d) will train
- If Younis a boat, he would sail across the giant blue ocean.
a) has b) will have c) had d) is having

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- If Rami were better at math, he (solve) the problem easily.
- Omar will play in the garden if it (stop) raining this afternoon.
- If I (be) in your place, I would read that useful book.
- If we hurry to the station, we (would catch) the eight o'clock train.

6 Find the mistake in the following sentences and correct it:

- If the students listen carefully, they would understand the lesson. (.....)
- If she study hard, she'll pass the exam. (.....) **SB**
- If Shadi had a magic carpet, he will fly around the world. (.....)
- If I wins the race, I will be happy. (.....) **SB**

7 Write a paragraph of (90-100) words on:

"How to achieve your thoughts"

.....

.....

.....



Challenging Questions

مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب.

Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets:

- Hana wakes up late. She will miss the school bus again. (If)
- If the tourist has a camera, he will take a picture of the Pyramid. (would)
- Sagda won't go to the party because she is busy. (If)

Assess your progress ★★★★★

< 50% Study again

50 : 64% Practice more

65 : 84% Take more exams

85 : 100% Well done!

A VOCABULARY LESSON 3

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

biomedical engineer (n)	مهندس الطب الحيوي	patients (n)	مرضى
chief engineer (n)	المهندس الرئيسي	poor hearing (n)	ضعف السمع
civil engineering (n)	هندسة مدنية	sensors (n)	أجهزة استشعار
movement difficulties (n)	صعوبات الحركة		

Additional Vocabulary المفردات الإضافية

consider (ed) (v)	يعتبر	support (ed) (v/n)	يدعم/دعم
relative (n)	قريب	tools (n)	أدوات
science (n)	علم	train station (n)	محطة قطار

Language Expressions & Prepositions التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

in need	محتاج	role model for	قدوة لـ
known for	معروف بـ	work as	يعمل كـ
move to	ينتقل إلى	work on	يعمل على

Read and complete with a word from the list:

to – from – patients – support

- The nurse helps by giving them medicine and care.
- Parents give to their children when they need help.
- My family will move a new house next summer.

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

chief (n)	رئيس	leadership (n)	قيادة
disappear (ed) (v)	يختفي	successful (adj)	ناجح
gather (ed) (v)	يجمع/يتجمع	teamwork (n)	عمل جماعي

Additional Vocabulary المفردات الإضافية

builder (n)	عامل بناء	hunger (n)	جوع
cloudy (adj)	ملبد بالغيوم	joy (n)	فرح
dark (adj)	مظلم	reminder (n)	تذكير

Language Expressions & Prepositions التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

appreciation for	تقدير لـ	lead the way	يقود الطريق
care for	يهتم بـ	sail back home	يبحر عائداً للبيت
lead with	يقود بـ	show respect	يظهر الاحترام
known as	معروف كـ	work in a team	يعمل ضمن فريق

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past simple	Past participle
set تغرب الشمس	set	set
shine يلمع/يسطع	shone	shone

Read and complete with a word from the list:

for – joy – dark – chief

- 1 She felt great when she got a new toy.
- 2 The helps everyone work together.
- 3 We should care animals by giving them food and water.

B Reading & Listening Skills

Lesson 3

Pre-reading question:

- Have you heard of Hany Azer before? What is he famous for?

 Read the following text. Who's the text about?

SB page 92

Hany Azer is a famous Egyptian engineer who made a great impact in the world of **civil engineering**⁽¹⁾. He was born in Tanta, Egypt, and later moved to Germany. He worked as the chief engineer for the Berlin Main Station, one of the largest train stations in Europe.



- | | |
|---------------------|-----------------------|
| (1) المهندس المدنية | (2) مهندس الطب الحيوي |
| (3) أجهزة استشعار | (4) قدوة |

Hany Azer has a relative who works as a **biomedical engineer**⁽²⁾. Together, they believe in using science and technology to help people live better lives.

Biomedical engineers use special tools like sensors to help patients. These **sensors**⁽³⁾ can help people with problems such as poor hearing or movement difficulties. Technology like this can change lives and support those in need. Hany Azer is not only known for his buildings, but also for his support of science and young inventors. He is a **role model**⁽⁴⁾ for many students in Egypt and around the world.

Post-reading questions:

SB

1 What big project did Hany Azer work on in Germany?

2 What do Hany Azer and his relative believe in?

3 Why is Hany Azer considered a role model?

Pre-reading questions:

- 1 Did you work in a team before? What did you do?
- 2 What made the teamwork successful?

 Read the following text.

SB page 93

CHAPTER THREE:

The Adventure of the Hidden Island

As the sun set, the children gathered to leave the island. They agreed that their friendship had grown stronger. Hany said, *"Leadership isn't about being the loudest, it's about caring for others and helping them shine."*

What do you think makes someone a good leader?

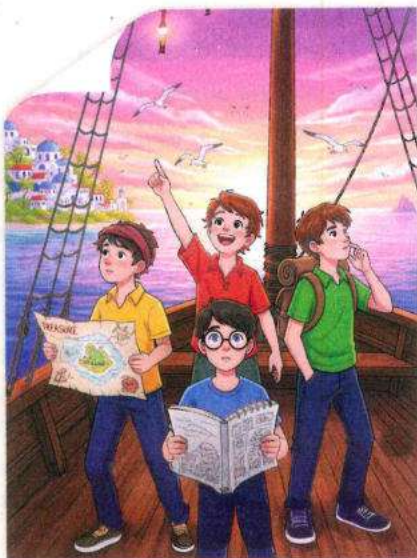
Malik added, "And creativity makes every adventure more fun!"

They sailed back home under the pink sky, their hearts full of joy and appreciation for the world and for each other.

Why do you think the children felt joyful and thankful on their way back?

Back in the village, they shared their story, inspiring other children to explore, create, and lead with kindness, respect, and teamwork.

How can you inspire your friends to be kind and work together?



From that day, the four friends became known as *"The Island Explorers,"* always reminding others to appreciate freedom, show respect, and let their creativity lead the way.

If you had a group of friends, what special name would you choose for your team, and why?

Story Time Q & A

Answer the following questions:

1. What did the children agree on as they prepared to leave the island?

على ماذا اتفق الأطفال عندما استعدوا لمغادرة الجزيرة؟

- They agreed that their friendship had grown stronger.

2. Who said that, "Creativity makes every adventure more fun!"?

من قال: «الإبداع يجعل كل مغامرة أكثر متعة!»؟

- Malik said it.

3. How did the friends inspire other children back in the village?

كيف ألهم الأصدقاء الأطفال الآخرين في القرية؟

- They inspired them to explore, create, and lead with kindness, respect, and teamwork.

4. What important lesson did the friends share?

ما الدرس المهم الذي شاركه الأصدقاء؟

- They shared that true leadership means caring for others, and that creativity and teamwork make life better.

5. What name did the four friends become known as?

ما الاسم الذي أصبح الأصدقاء الأربعة معروفين به؟

- They became known as "The Island Explorers".

6. How did the children feel when sailing home?

كيف شعر الأطفال عندما عادوا إلى المنزل بالإبحار؟

- They felt joy and appreciation.

Critical thinking questions:

1. Why is helping others important in leadership?

لماذا تُعتبر مساعدة الآخرين مهمة في القيادة؟

- Because a good leader makes sure everyone feels safe, happy, and supported. Helping others builds trust and friendship.

2. Why do group names make people kinder?

لماذا تجعل أسماء المجموعات الناس أكثر لطفاً؟

- Having a group name makes people feel like part of a team. Teams care for one another and work together kindly.

3. If you were one of the children, what message would you share with the village other than the ones mentioned?

إذا كنت واحداً من الأطفال، ما الرسالة التي ستشاركها مع القرية غير المذكورة؟

- I would tell them, "Never give up, because every problem has a solution if we work together."

4. Why do you think creativity is important in solving problems?

لماذا تعتقد أن الإبداع مهم في حل المشكلات؟

- Because creativity helps us find new and better ways to fix things, instead of giving up.

5. How can you show respect to your friends in everyday life?

كيف يمكنك أن تُظهر الاحترام لأصدقائك في حياتك اليومية؟

- By listening to them, sharing fairly, and speaking kindly.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- When they reached the Hidden Island, they found strange plants, colorful birds, and mysterious
a) houses b) cars c) caves d) schools
- Hany suggested they split into pairs to explore, but told them to stay close and
a) quiet b) safe c) fast d) noisy
- Malik used his creativity to maps of the island.
a) buy b) tear c) draw d) read
- Hany said that leadership is about caring for others and helping them
a) disappear b) shine c) cry d) hide

2 Answer the following questions:

- Where did the friends find strange plants and mysterious caves?
.....
- What did Hany discover on the island?
.....
- Why did the friends smile when Sami said he felt free to be himself?
.....
- What did Hany suggest doing?
.....

3 Critical thinking questions:

- Why do you think Hany asked the group to stay close and safe?
.....
- What lesson did the friends learn at the end?
.....

1 Vocabulary building:

Meaning/Synonym – Opposite/Antonym

ارجع للقطعة ص 270-271 وحاول أن تستخرج منها كلمات متشابهة أو متضادة في المعنى للكلمات التالية:

Meaning/Synonym		Opposite/Antonym	
effect	تأثير	neglect	يهمل
creator	مبدع	rich	غنى
sick people	المرضى	ingratitude	عدم الامتنان

2 Comprehension strategies:

Hany Azer is a famous Egyptian engineer who made a great impact in the world of civil engineering. He was born in Tanta, Egypt, and later moved to Germany. He worked as the chief engineer for the Berlin Main Station, one of the largest train stations in Europe.

1. Give a suitable title for the text.

(إعطاء عنوان للنص)

.....

.....

.....

2. Where was Hany Azer born?

(استخراج معلومة)

.....

.....

.....

3 Translation:

A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

اختر الترجمة العربية الصحيحة:

Biomedical engineers use special tools to help patients.

☐

- يستخدم المهندسون الطبيون الحيويون أدوات عامة لمساعدة المرضى.

☐

- يستخدم المهندسون الطبيون الحيويون أدوات خاصة لمساعدة المرضى.

B) Choose the correct English translation:

اختر الترجمة الإنجليزية الصحيحة:

لقد أبحروا عائدين إلى منازلهم تحت السماء الوردية.

☐

They sailed back home under the pink sky.

☐

They walked back home under the blue sky.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- ▶ 1. Sally was the team's new She made all the big decisions.
a) boat b) crowd c) chief d) joy
2. Sereen will her friends for a birthday party at the park next Saturday.
a) gather b) find c) watch d) make
3. Mervat's science project was very She won first prize!
a) successful b) dark c) high d) alive
4. The sun behind the tall mountains, making the whole sky dark.
a) disappeared b) cried c) gathered d) played
5. Liverpool won the match because of strong among the players.
a) teamwork b) joy c) science d) reminder
6. The loud bell is a of break time at school.
a) machine b) builder c) chief d) reminder
7. We couldn't see the stars because the sky was so
a) low b) successful c) colorful d) cloudy
8. Children should respect to their parents at all times.
a) show b) give c) make d) take
9. Students were asked to in a team to solve the math problem.
a) pair b) work c) play d) paint

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

builder – lead the way – boat – successful – teamwork

The wise chief gathered his people to build a strong new (1) Their (2) was excellent, and the project was very (3) One day, under a dark and cloudy sky, their smallest boat disappeared. The chief had to (4) to find it. Thanks to his great leadership, they found the boat. They showed true appreciation for each other and could finally sail back home.

How to write about a Man of Impact (Hany Azer)

كيفية الكتابة عن رجل ذي تأثير (هانى عازر)

1. Who is Hany Azer?

من هو هانى عازر؟

- He is a famous Egyptian engineer.

هو مهندس مصرى مشهور.

2. Where was he born?

أين وُلِد؟

- He was born in Tanta, Egypt.

وُلِد فى طنطا، مصر.

3. What did he design in Berlin?

ماذا صمَّم فى برلين؟

- He designed the Central Train Station.

صمَّم محطة القطار المركزية.

4. Why is he respected worldwide?

لماذا يُحترم فى جميع أنحاء العالم؟

- Because of his great projects like the Berlin Station, tunnels, and bridges.

بسبب مشاريعه الكبيرة مثل محطة برلين والأنفاق والجسور.

5. What advice does he give to young people?

ما النصيحة التى يعطيها للشباب؟

- He says that hard work, patience, and learning lead to success.

يقول إن العمل الجاد والصبر والتعلم يؤدى إلى النجاح.

اقرأ هذا النموذج المجاب عنه لإضافة أفكار جديدة ولتتعلم منه:

“A Man of Impact: Hany Azer”

Hany Azer is a famous Egyptian engineer. He was born in Tanta, Egypt. He became known all over the world for his wonderful work. In Berlin, he designed the Central Train Station, one of the largest train stations in Europe. He also worked on tunnels and bridges, which made people respect him worldwide. Egypt honored him with many awards. Hany Azer tells young people that hard work, patience, and learning are the keys to success. His story inspires children to dream big and achieve great things.

TEST YOURSELF

Lessons (3 & 4)

1 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

poor hearing – role model – support – train station – work on

When I grow up, I want to be a biomedical engineer. My teacher is my (1)....., and she teaches us about science. We learn how technology can help people with movement difficulties or (2)..... . She says that using your mind to invent special tools to (3)..... people in need is a very important job. I hope to (4)..... projects that help many patients.

2 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

Hany Azer is a world-famous Egyptian engineer. He was born in Tanta, Egypt, in 1948. After studying engineering in Egypt, he moved to Germany to continue his work. Hany Azer became well known for leading the design and construction of the Berlin Central Train Station, one of the largest train stations in Europe. This **project** made him respected worldwide. He also worked on important projects like tunnels and bridges. Egypt honored him with awards, and he was chosen as one of the top five engineers in Germany. Hany Azer believes that engineers should not only build machines and systems but also improve people's lives. He often tells young people that hard work, **patience**, and learning are the keys to success. His story inspires Egyptian children to dream big and achieve great things.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Hany Azer designed the Central Train Station in
a) Cairo b) London c) Berlin d) Paris
- The word "**project**" refers to
a) building tunnels b) building the Berlin Train Station
c) winning an award d) studying in Egypt

B) Answer the following questions:

- What is the main idea of the passage?
.....
- When and where was Hany Azer born?
.....
- What does the word "**patience**" most likely mean in the passage?
.....
- Do you think engineers can change people's lives? How?
.....

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. After the long match, the players were need for a very cold drink.
a) in b) on c) at d) with
2. The captain of the team had excellent, which made the team win the final.
a) leadership b) builder c) dark d) reminder
3. Egypt is known its ancient pyramids.
a) as b) for c) by d) with
4. The movement made it hard for the boy to run or climb stairs.
a) difficulties b) stations c) inventions d) sensors
5. If Yara a famous singer, she would sing on a very big stage.
a) is b) was c) will be d) are
6. If Shahd has enough time, she help you with the project.
a) will b) would c) is d) can

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. If Hala studied more carefully, she (make) fewer mistakes. SB
2. Our team would have a better chance if their best player (not be) injured.
3. Amir (help) his best friend if he knows he is in trouble.
4. If Zeina wore her jacket, she (not feel) cold.

5 Write a paragraph of (90-100) words on:

"A biography of Hany Azer"

.....

.....

.....

Challenging Questions مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب.

Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets:

1. Aya goes to school late. The teacher always punishes her. (If)
.....
2. I don't have enough money, so I won't buy that laptop. (If)
.....
3. Our team wins because they play well. (wouldn't)
.....

Assess your progress ★★★★★

< 50% Study again

50 : 64% Practice more

65 : 84% Take more exams

85 : 100% Well done!

A VOCABULARY LESSONS 5&6

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

army (n)	جيش	secret code (n)	شفرة سرّية
Border Guard (n)	حرس الحدود	secretly (adv)	سرّاً
deadline (n)	موعد نهائي	serve (d) (v)	يخدم
enemy (n)	عدو	smart (adj)	ذكى
feedback (n)	تغذية راجعة (ملاحظة/رأي)	solar-powered (adj)	يعمل بالطاقة الشمسية
honored (adj)	مُكْرَّم / مشرف	soldier (n)	جندي
officially (adv)	رسمياً	victory (n)	انتصار
president (n)	رئيس الجمهورية	water-saving (adj)	موفر للماء

Additional Vocabulary المفردات الإضافية

backpack (n)	حقيبة ظهر	pump (n)	مضخة
brave (adj)	شجاع	role (n)	دور
championship (n)	بطولة	suggest (ed) (v)	يقترح
honor (ed) (v)	يشرف	war (n)	حرب
Nubian (adj)	نوبي		

Language Expressions & Prepositions التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

combine ... with	يجمع ... مع	miss the deadline	يفوّت الموعد النهائي
come up with	يأتى بفكرة	Order of the Sinai Star	وسام نجمة سيناء
follow his passion	يتبع شغفه	succeed in	ينجح فى
get feedback	يحصل على ملاحظات	take part in	يشارك فى
grow into	ينمو ليصبح	thanks to	بفضل
manage time	يدير الوقت	work on	يعمل على

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past participle
grow	ينمو	grew	grown
get	يحصل على	got	got

Read and complete with a word from the list:

useless – helpful – on – get – in

- 1 My sister is very because she carries the bags for my mom.
- 2 The team will succeed winning the game if they play together
- 3 When you try something new, it is good to feedback so you can improve.

Words and Opposites الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
enemy	عدو	friend	صديق
war	حرب	peace	سلام
victory	انتصار	defeat	هزيمة

تطبيق الأضواء

نماذج الاختبارات الشهرية: تقدر تستعد
لاختبارات الشهور مع الأضواء من خلال تحميل
ملف الاختبارات من خانة المراجعات.

نزل التطبيق أو ادخل على موقع الأضواء:
www.aladwaa.com



B Reading & Listening Skills

Pre-reading question: - What does it mean to be an innovator?

 Read the following dialog.

Lesson 5

SB page 95

Young Innovators

Zeina Did you hear about that student competition for young inventors?

Lina Yes! Our teacher said that if we brainstormed together, we might come up with a great idea.

Zeina That's true. Last year, a student created a water-saving device. Her innovation made a big impact on her town.

Lina Impressive! If I had more time, I would design a solar-powered backpack.

Zeina That's a great idea. If we built a simple model, we could test how it works.

Lina If we get honest **feedback**, we will know how to improve it.

Zeina Exactly. Innovations don't have to be perfect at first—they just need to solve a real problem.

Lina Right. If we keep trying, we might make something useful for lots of people.

Post-reading questions:

SB

1 Why does Lina say it's important to brainstorm?

2 What kind of innovation helped a town in the past?

3 Why is feedback important when testing a model?

4 What kind of impact do you think young people can have if they innovate?

 Read the role play below together once.

SB page 96

Lesson 5

Student A If we brainstorm before the deadline, we might finish in time.

Student B Great! If your model works, we could show it at school.

Student A Yes, and if people give us helpful feedback, we'll improve it.

Student B Imagine the impact it could have if others used this idea.

Student A That's the power of innovation—small ideas can make a big difference!

Work with a partner.

SB page 96

Lesson 6

Mr. Nasser Asmaa, I heard you're working on a new project. What is it about?

Asmaa Yes, Dad! I'm designing a **solar-powered** water pump for farms in dry areas.

Mr. Nasser That sounds impressive! If you **come up with** a good design, it can really help poor communities.

Asmaa That's what I'm hoping for. I want to **make a difference** by saving both water and energy.

Mr. Nasser Did you test the **water saving** system?

Asmaa No. I still need to get some **feedback** from my science teacher before the final model.

Mr. Nasser Well, if you don't manage your time carefully, you may miss the **deadline**.

Asmaa Don't worry, Dad. I think this version will work just fine.

Lesson 6

SB page 97

Read a biography of Ahmed Idris.

Ahmed Idris was a brave Nubian soldier in the Egyptian **army**. He served in the Border Guard during the 1970s. In 1973, before the October War, he suggested using the Nubian language as a secret code for the army. His idea was very **smart** because the Nubian language was not written and was only known by Nubian people. The **enemy** could not understand it. Thanks to his idea, the Egyptian army sent messages safely and **secretly**.



In 2017, President Abdel Fattah El-Sisi officially **honored** Idris with the Order of the Sinai Star, for his great role in the **victory**.

Post-reading questions:

SB

1 When was the war?

.....

2 Why did the army use the Nubian language?

.....

3 Why did President Abdel Fattah El-Sisi honor Ahmed Idris?

.....

LESSONS

5&6

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- A brave wears a uniform and helps protect the country.
a) soldier b) enemy c) engineer d) president
- The country's decided to hold a meeting with world leaders to discuss peace.
a) teacher b) player c) president d) championship
- The football team celebrated their great after scoring the final goal of the match.
a) president b) victory c) war d) soldier
- What is the final for this school project?
a) error b) deadline c) match d) code
- A good leader wants to the people and help them.
a) combine b) serve c) follow d) miss
- He knew that the other team was not his; they were friends.
a) president b) army c) enemy d) guard
- The two friends planned a surprise party for their teacher.
a) bravely b) secretly c) officially d) slowly
- I wake up early so I do not the bus to school.
a) miss b) lose c) win d) send
- Students must time to finish all their school tasks.
a) honor b) waste c) search d) manage

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

army – brave – war – president – enemy

One day, a young man joined the national (1)..... . He was not only strong but also very (2)..... when facing danger. During a long and difficult (3)....., he worked hard to keep his people safe. Later, he met the (4)....., who thanked him for his service. Everyone respected the young man for his courage and love for his country.

PRACTICE MORE



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The scientist felt very when he received the international award for his hard work.
a) brave b) honored c) smart d) sad
- A/An is a special way of writing that keeps things hidden.
a) soldier b) enemy c) secret code d) army
- This robot is and charges in the sun, it can work without using batteries.
a) solar-powered b) water-saving c) mechanical d) traditional
- After he won the race, he was given the gold medal.
a) secretly b) officially c) smartly d) bravely
- It is bad to the deadline for homework without a good reason.
a) break b) miss c) keep d) set
- Nader hopes he will be able to succeed climbing to the end of the mountain.
a) on b) with c) in d) 000
- The young player will grow a great footballer with practice.
a) for b) in c) with d) into
- Walid is a great artist and will part in the art competition.
a) sit b) take c) draw d) win
- My big sister is very; she always knows the answers at school.
a) smart b) honored c) secret d) brave

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

enemy – served – suggested – army – role

Ahmed Idris was a smart and brave Nubian soldier who (1) in the Egyptian army. During the 1970s, he had a special idea to help in the October War. He (2) using the Nubian language as a secret code, and the (3) could not understand it. Thanks to this secret plan, the army achieved a great victory. Later, Idris was honored for his (4) and remembered with pride.

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بالإجابة عن الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درس في ملف التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.



How to write a biography

كيفية كتابة سيرة ذاتية

What is a biography?

ما هي السيرة الذاتية؟

- A biography is the story of a person's life. - السيرة الذاتية هي قصة حياة شخص ما.
- It tells us who they are, what they did, and why they are important. - تخبرنا من هو هذا الشخص، ماذا فعل، ولماذا هو مهم.

Steps to Write a Biography :

خطوات كتابة السيرة الذاتية:

1. Start with basic information.

ابدأ بالمعلومات الأساسية.

- Name - الاسم
- Date of birth (and death, if the person has died) - تاريخ الميلاد (وتاريخ الوفاة إن وُجد)
- Place of birth - مكان الميلاد

2. Write about their early life.

تحدث عن حياته المبكرة.

- Family - العائلة
- Childhood - الطفولة
- School - المدرسة

3. Describe their important achievements.

صف إنجازاتهم المهمة.

- Work - العمل
- Studies - الدراسات
- Inventions - الاختراعات
- Awards - الجوائز

4. Add interesting facts.

أضف معلومات ممتعة أو غريبة.

- Hobbies - الهوايات
- Personality - الشخصية
- Something unusual - شيء غير معتاد عنهم

5. Finish with why this person is important.

اختتم بذكر لماذا هذا الشخص مهم.

- How they changed the world - كيف غيروا العالم
- How they helped other people - كيف ساعدوا الآخرين

اقرأ هذا النموذج المجاب عنه لإضافة أفكار جديدة ولتعلم منه:

"A biography of a famous Egyptian hero"

Ahmed Idris was a brave Nubian soldier in the Egyptian army. He served in the Border Guard during the 1970s. In 1973, before the October War, he suggested using the Nubian language as a secret code for the army. His idea was very smart because the Nubian language was not written and was only known by Nubian people. The enemy could not understand it. Thanks to his idea, the Egyptian army sent messages safely and secretly.

In 2017, President Abdel Fattah El-Sisi officially honored Idris with the Order of the Sinai Star, for his great role in the victory.

1 Complete the following dialog:

Ali admires Ahmed Idris, an Egyptian hero.

Mona : Who is your role model?

Ali : (1).....

Mona : Who is Ahmed Idris?

Ali : (2).....

Mona : An Egyptian soldier! (3).....?

Ali : I admire him because he is brave.

Mona : Great! (4).....?

Ali : She was born in Aswan, Egypt.

Mona : Do you want to be a soldier, too?

Ali : (5).....

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

water – saving – combine – system – farm – prevent

My uncle is always looking for new ways to improve his land. Recently, he designed a new (1)..... system for his crops. He could (2)..... various sensors and a smart watering system to create it. The (3)..... can detect **يحدد** when the soil is dry and automatically provides the right amount of water. This made his (4)..... much more efficient and environmentally friendly.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. If we honest feedback, we will know how to improve ourselves.

a) solve

b) do

c) make

d) get

2. To finish before the, we should work in a team.

a) model

b) prize

c) deadline

d) race

3. Students should learn how to their time.

a) manage

b) allow

c) follow

d) invent

- 4.** Every actor has an important in the play, and they must practice their lines.
a) role **b)** key
c) soldier **d)** crowd
- 5.** If Ramez were a superhero, he save the village!
a) will **b)** would
c) can **d)** may
- 6.** If Rania the book again, she will understand the story better.
a) read **b)** reads
c) will read **d)** is reading

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. If my brother finds a job, he (move) to a new city.
2. If Fatima (eat) more vegetables, she would feel healthier.
3. Omar will play in the garden if it (stop) raining this afternoon.
4. If Salah scored another goal, his team (win) the big match.

5 Write a paragraph of (90-100) words on:

"A biography of a person you like"

[illegible]

Challenging Questions

محباب عنه نهاية الكتاب.

Find the mistake in the following sentences and correct it:

1. If Heba press that red button, the alarm will start to ring. (.....)
2. If Hala forget her keys, she cannot get into her house. (.....)
3. If he were a famous actor, he will be in many movies. (.....)

Assess your progress ★★☆☆

< 50% Study again

50 : 64% Practice more

65 : 84% Take more exams

85 - 100% Well done!

A Vocabulary**1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**

1. We need to the model before making the final product.
a) present b) test c) impact d) think
2. A/An is someone who creates new ideas, products, or ways of doing things.
a) innovator b) scientist c) teacher d) doctor
3. To something means to make it better or more effective.
a) improve b) explain c) decide d) break
4. The of Yasmine's invention was that it cleaned water and produced biofuel at the same time.
a) challenge b) solution c) impact d) risk

B Language**2 Complete the sentences using the correct form of the verbs in brackets:**

1. If we (wins) the championship, we will take part in the FIFA World Cup.
2. If Hala studied more carefully, she (make) fewer mistakes.
3. If they (have) more time, they would finish the project.
4. If you combine effort with creativity, you (make) something amazing.

C Writing**3 Write a biography of (90 - 100) words about:**

"A famous inventor"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Vocabulary

army (n)	جيش
audience (n)	جمهور
biomedical engineer (n)	مهندس الطب الحيوي
Border Guard (n)	حرس الحدود
brainstorm (n)	عصف ذهني
chief (n)	رئيس
chief engineer (n)	المهندس الرئيسي
civil engineering (n)	هندسة مدنية
complex (adj)	معقد
deadline (n)	موعد نهائي
disappear (ed) (v)	يختفي
effort (n)	جهد
enemy (n)	عدو
exhibition (n)	معرض
gather (ed) (v)	يجمع/يتجمع
honored (adj)	مكرم/مُعزّز
identifying (n)	تحديد
impact (n)	تأثير
innovator (n)	مبتكر/مبتكر
leadership (n)	قيادة
officially (adv)	رسميًا
patience (n)	صبر
president (n)	رئيس الجمهورية
role model (n)	قدوة
secret code (n)	شفرة سرية
secretly (adv)	سراً
serve (d) (v)	يخدم
smart (adj)	ذكى
soldier (n)	جندي
speech (n)	حديث/خطاب
stuff (n)	أشياء/أدوات/مواد
victory (n)	انتصار

Language

1. The First Conditional

الحالة الشرطية الأولى

Form:

If + present simple, subject + will + inf.

e.g. If I see her, I will tell her about the party.

Subject + will + inf. + if + present simple

e.g. We will celebrate if we win the game.

Negative:

If + present simple, subject + won't + inf.

e.g. If we hurry, we won't be late.

Question:

Will + subject + inf. + if + present simple?

e.g. Will you buy a car if you have a lot of money?

2. The Second Conditional

الحالة الشرطية الثانية

Form:

If + past simple, subject + would + inf.

e.g. If I were a billionaire, I would buy a private plane.

Subject + would + inf. + if + past simple

e.g. They would play perfectly if they practiced more.

Negative:

If + past simple, subject + wouldn't + inf.

e.g. I wouldn't hear you if you spoke quietly.

Question:

Would + subject + inf. + if + past simple?

e.g. Would you play basketball if you were taller?

Skills

Asking and answering about the biggest problem in your daily life

A: What is the biggest problem in your daily life?

B: My biggest problem is managing time.

A: What helped you most to manage your time?

B: Making a clear plan and following it every day helped me the most.

A: What advice would you give to someone with the same problem?

B: I would tell them to make small goals, avoid wasting time, and stay organized.

General Exercises

on Unit

6

Listening



نص الاستماع
في نهاية الكتاب.

1 A) Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Who did Leila want to help?
 - a) Her cousin.
 - b) Her teacher.
 - c) Her uncle.
 - d) Her aunt.
2. What did she use in her walking stick?
 - a) Music player.
 - b) Safe materials and sensors.
 - c) Books and pencils.
 - d) Batteries and mirrors.
3. What was the result of her invention?
 - a) It failed.
 - b) It got lost.
 - c) It had a real impact.
 - d) It was too complex.

B) Listen and complete:

4. Leila is a young
5. She built a walking stick using sensors and materials.
6. The invention helped her

Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialog:

A student is asking his teacher about a clever Nubian man.

Student : Who was Ahmed Idris?

Teacher : (1)

Student : (2)

Teacher : He created an important secret code in the October War.

Student : (3)

Teacher : The code was important because enemies couldn't understand it.

Student : Did the code help the soldiers?

Teacher : (4)..... It helped the army send safe messages.

Student : Did he get a prize?

Teacher : (5)..... He got the Order of the Sinai Star.



Reading Comprehension

3 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

Arab – University – Prize – scientists – Price

Ahmed Zewail is my role model. He was one of the most important Egyptian (1)..... in modern history. He was born in Damanhur in 1946. From a young age, he loved learning and showed great interest in science. He studied at Alexandria (2)..... . Ahmed Zewail won the Nobel (3)..... in Chemistry in 1999. He was the first Egyptian and (4)..... scientist to receive the Nobel Prize in this field. This made all Egyptians proud.

4 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

Magdi Yacoub is a world-famous Egyptian heart surgeon. He was born in 1935 and studied medicine in Cairo before moving to London. He became one of the best heart doctors in the world, saving thousands of lives. He created new ways of heart surgery and trained many young doctors. In Aswan, Egypt, Magdi Yacoub built a special hospital for children with heart problems, where treatment is free. People **admire him** not only for his skill but also for his kindness. He believes that doctors should care for both the body and the heart of patients. His story shows that science, care, and love can change lives.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Magdi Yacoub built a hospital for children in
a) Cairo b) London c) Aswan d) Alexandria
2. The underlined pronoun "**him**" refers to
a) Magdi Yacoub b) a patient c) a doctor d) a child

B) Answer the following questions:

3. What is the main idea of the passage?
.....
4. How was Magdi Yacoub useful for patients?
.....
5. What does the word "**admire**" most likely mean in the passage?
.....
6. Why do you think kindness is important for doctors?
.....

D Vocabulary and Structure

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Biomedical engineers use tools like to help patients.
a) prizes b) medicines c) sensors d) senses
- The Nobel Prize Zewail received was in
a) Physics b) Sports c) Chemistry d) Literature
- Inventions don't have to be big or
a) complete b) complex c) useful d) helpful
- If students work hard, they will achieve great
a) success b) loss c) successful d) failure
- I would spend the summer vacation in Marina if I much money!
a) have b) has c) would have d) had
- Khaled a bigger house if he is rich.
a) will buy b) would buy c) buy d) bought

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- If it rained tomorrow, we (stay) at home. SB
- If I (have) a plane, I would fly around the world. SB
- If they (have) more time, they would finish the project. SB
- If I (get) up early, I would not be late. SB

E The Story

7 A) Answer the following questions:

- What did the children agree on as they prepared to leave the island?
.....
- Who said, "Creativity makes every adventure more fun!"?
.....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The children felt their hearts full of as they sailed back home.
a) fear b) joy c) anger d) sadness
- The four friends became known as after their adventure.
a) the Brave Leaders b) the Island Explorers
c) the Village Heroes d) the Ocean Travelers

F Writing

8 Write a biography of (90-100) words on:

"Your role model"

.....

.....

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Vocabulary

- is the number of people living in a place.
a) Pollution b) Population c) Pollination d) Expectation
- My visit to Japan was a/an experience. I really enjoyed it.
a) forget b) forgotten c) forgettable d) unforgettable
- are small things people buy to remember a place.
a) Souvenirs b) Treasures c) Medals d) Inventions
- are dead bodies that have been preserved for a long time, especially in Ancient Egypt.
a) Pyramids b) Mummies c) Temples d) Statues
- This statue was from a single piece of stone.
a) curved b) carved c) served d) reserved
- A/An is a small lake near the sea.
a) oasis b) lagoon c) pond d) ocean
- A is a path or way for walking.
a) trail b) road c) bridge d) tunnel
- are large masses of ice that move slowly.
a) Rivers b) Oceans c) Glaciers d) Mountains
- The view from the mountain top was particularly at sunrise.
a) impressive b) important c) impossible d) impressed
- The Citadel was built to Cairo from attacks.
a) protect b) select c) observe d) surround
- Listening to soft music always gives me a sense of
a) peace b) piece c) humor d) anger
- Big Ben is perhaps the most famous in London.
a) landscape b) cave c) land d) landmark
- The child was about the stars and asked endless questions.
a) bored b) curious c) lazy d) polite
- A huge was held to celebrate the marriage of my cousin.
a) performance b) tradition c) ceremony d) club
- To solve the problem, follow the one by one.
a) stops b) roads c) paths d) steps
- A/An is a strong effect that something has on someone or something.
a) impact b) contact c) affection d) change

17. The experiment was very complex, and had a lot of steps to follow.
The antonym of "complex" is
a) complicated b) good c) simple d) happy

Language

18. This was a difficult exam. But the exam we had at the end of term was one we have ever had.
a) more difficult b) most difficult
c) the most difficult d) a difficult
19. School is boring, but homework is school.
a) as boring b) so boring
c) more boring than d) as boring as
20. Yesterday, Sally told me a funny joke, it is joke I've ever heard.
a) a funny b) funnier c) funniest d) the funniest
21. Susan has a beautiful baby, but my baby is the in the world.
a) beautiful b) more beautiful c) most beautiful d) beauty
22. Today's weather is than yesterday's.
a) bad b) good c) better d) the best
23. The lion is the animal in the zoo.
a) strong b) stronger c) strongest d) as strong
24. If I wings, I would fly.
a) have b) has c) had d) having
25. If you study hard, you the exam.
a) pass b) passes c) will pass d) would pass
26. If you help, call me at once.
a) needs b) need c) needed d) had needed
27. If I rich, I would help poor people.
a) am b) is c) are d) were
28. If you run fast, you the bus.
a) catch b) catches c) will catch d) would catch
29. If I saw a snake, I away.
a) run b) runs c) will run d) would run
30. If I had a car, I you to school.
a) will drive b) would drive c) will be driving d) had been driven
31. What you do if you had a time machine?
a) will b) would c) can d) did
32. Salma is the most beautiful girl I have seen.
a) ever b) never c) yet d) just
33. you visit Adel if he is ill?
a) Would b) Will c) Do d) Are

34. Football is interesting as tennis.

- a) too b) so c) as d) more

35. We have only a little time to do this, but tomorrow we'll have even time.

- a) less b) little c) much d) most

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Mount Everest is the (high) mountain in the world.
2. My sister Nada is (young) than me.
3. That was the (bad) movie I've ever seen.
4. Mohamed Salah is the (good) player in the world.
5. The blue dress is (expensive) than the red one.
6. Water is the (much) useful resource.
7. If it (rain) tomorrow, we will stay indoors.
8. I (call) you if I finish my work early.
9. If they miss the bus, they (be) late for school.
10. If you (ate) too much, you will feel sick.
11. We (not go) to the beach if it is cold.
12. If she (know) his number, she will call him.
13. If I (be) you, I wouldn't make that decision.
14. If Adam (speak) Spanish, he will get the job.
15. If I found a bag of gold. I (return) it to the police.

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

A)

ceremony – population – landmark – explored

Last month, I visited Japan. I (1).....Tokyo, the capital city. It's one of the most organized places I have ever seen. The (2)..... is large, and the people are polite and respectful. The main language is Japanese. I joined a tea (3)....., a beautiful tradition that shows calmness and kindness. I saw Mount Fuji, a famous (4)..... in Japan.

B)

role – chief – impact – biomedical

Hany Azer is a famous Egyptian engineer. He made a great (1)..... in the world of civil engineering. He was born in Tanta, Egypt, and later moved to Germany. He worked as the (2)..... engineer for the Berlin main station, one of the largest train stations in Europe. Hany Azer, together with his relative who works as a (3)..... engineer could help people who had health problems. Azer is a (4)..... model for many students in Egypt and around the world.

C)

souvenir – carved – Edfu – impressive

Mom : Did you enjoy the trip to Aswan?

Nada : Yes, it was one of the most (1)..... trips I have ever had.

Mom : Which places did you visit there?

Mona : We visited the Temple of Horus in (2).....

Mom : Did you enjoy visiting it?

Mona : Yes, the Temple is huge and has some beautifully (3)..... statues.

Mom : Did you get anything to remind you of your visit?

Mona : Yes, I bought a small statue of Horus as a (4).....

4 Complete the following dialog:

A) Nada and Reem are talking about Ahmed Zewail.

Nada : Have you heard of Ahmed Zewail?

Reem : (1)..... He was a famous scientist.

Nada : (2).....?

Reem : He was born in Damanhur, Egypt.

Nada : What did he study?

Reem : (3).....

Nada : Did he win any prizes?

Reem : (4).....

Nada : Would you like to be a scientist, too?

Reem : (5).....

B) Sama and Aya are talking about a time machine.

Sama : Hello, Aya. How are you?

Aya : (1).....

Sama : (2).....?

Aya : If I had a time machine, I would go back thirty years in time.

Sama : (3).....?

Aya : To see my parents when they were young.

Sama : (4).....?

Aya : I would ask them about their wedding ceremony.

Sama : Would you really like to do that?

Aya : (5).....

Review 2

LESSON 1



1 A) Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- What did Dina dream of becoming?
 - A writer.
 - A sculptor.
 - A painter.
 - A musician.
- Where was Dina's final artwork displayed?
 - At school.
 - In her home.
 - In the city gallery.
 - At a museum.
- What did Dina's final piece become a symbol of?
 - Nature.
 - Revolution.
 - Hope.
 - Agriculture.

B) Listen again and complete.

- Dina was always full of
- Her first was not perfect.
- She believes that with passion and, anyone can achieve their dreams.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- My brother's artwork is than mine.
 - good
 - better
 - best
 - well
- She decided to study biomedical engineering she wanted to help people with new technology.
 - but
 - although
 - so
 - because
- The ancient Egyptians developed new methods for in the fertile Nile Valley.
 - innovation
 - agriculture
 - tradition
 - recognition
- The Great Pyramids are an example of ancient architecture and continue to amaze visitors.
 - hidden
 - curious
 - impressive
 - biomedical

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

Father, Mother, Amir, and Adam were so excited! They were going on an adventure to see Mount Fuji, the famous volcano they had seen in pictures. Father had a special phone with a map that showed them exactly where to go. It was one of the latest innovations that made travel easy. Mother had a small band on her wrist, a piece of biomedical technology, that told her if

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

treasures – mysterious – promote

Ancient Egypt is famous for its rich culture. Many pharaohs built tombs, full of amazing But their secrets often remain Today, efforts are made to understanding of this ancient civilization.

2 Complete the following dialog:

Two friends are talking about a recent visit to an art gallery.

Ayman : Hi, Nabila! How was your trip to the art gallery yesterday?

Nabila : It was amazing! The (1)..... was truly amazing.

Ayman : Oh, really? What was the most (2)..... piece you saw?

Nabila : There was a sculpture by a famous (3)..... It was so special.

Ayman : That sounds interesting.

3 Rewrite the following sentences using the words in brackets to give the same meaning:

1. If she works harder, she will pass the exam. (lazily)

.....

2. Ahmed's project is more impressive than Yara's. (less)

.....

3. I missed the bus because I woke up late. (so)

.....

4. I love the beach, but it gets very crowded in summer. (although)

.....

5. Give me enough time, and I will finish the report. (If)

.....

6. Although it was raining, we went to the park. (but)

.....

- 4** Write a short email about (90 - 100) words to a friend telling them about a recent visit to a museum or art exhibition. Mention something you found impressive or mysterious, and how it relates to culture or tradition:

From :

To :

Subject :

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

The Story

- 5 A) Read and complete the sentences with the words from the box:**

island – boss – compass – leadership

1. They packed food, water, notebooks and a
2. Malik drew maps for the
3. Hany thought that means caring for others and helping them shine.

- B) Answer the following questions:**

4. How did the Island Explorers' adventure affect their village children?

.....

5. What did they find on the Hidden Island?

.....

Listening Texts

Unit 1 Test yourself Lessons (1 & 2)

Gen Alpha is the youngest generation, born after 2010. Many of them learn to use technology before they can even read. They enjoy playing games, watching videos, and chatting with friends online. At the same time, teachers and parents should encourage them to balance screen time with outdoor play. This balance helps them grow up in a healthy and happy way.

General Exercises on Unit 1

Fatima likes to chat with friends, watch funny videos, and send memes online. She also writes posts in her blog about her daily activities. Her parents remind her to control her screen time and put devices away before bedtime. She enjoys doing sports and eating healthy meals daily. By finding a balance and building digital habits, Fatima can enjoy both online fun and real-life activities while staying healthy and happy.

Unit 2 Test yourself Lessons (1 & 2)

In today's digital age, children spend a lot of time online. Every post or photo they share becomes part of their digital footprint. It is important to protect data by using secure passwords. If you share personal information with a stranger, it could have a bad effect later. Always check your privacy settings to make sure your account is protected.

General Exercises on Unit 2

Social media is fun, but you must be responsible. Every post, comment, or picture leaves a digital footprint. Active footprints happen when you share content, while passive footprints happen without noticing, like websites tracking your visits. Strong passwords and privacy settings protect your information. Trusted adults can guide you, and thinking carefully before posting keeps you safe online.

Unit 3 Test yourself Lessons (1 & 2)

Amal wanted to climb the high mountain near her village. She faced many challenges, but she did not feel discouraged. Her father suggested that she practice climbing at a time. Amal kept going every day and showed determination. She learned to take it step by step and finally reached the top. Amal felt proud of herself and began to enjoy the amazing view from the mountain.

General Exercises on Unit 3

Traffic jams in the city make people tired and stressed. Streets and highways are often blocked by many cars. Pollution makes the air unhealthy. Bridges, tunnels, and flyovers help vehicles move faster. Public transportation such as metro lines, monorails, and electric trains allows people to travel efficiently. Cameras monitor traffic to solve problems. In the future, city planners hope to make transportation safe.

Review 1 Lesson 1 - Page 155

Generation Alpha, born since 2010, are true digital natives. These children learn to scroll before they can write. They naturally create content like short videos rather than just watching them. Unlike older generations, Alphas communicate more through images and emojis than text. They use technology for learning, playing, and talking with friends at the same time. Although they are good at using technology, they still need help to balance screen time and to learn real-life skills.

Unit 4 Test yourself Lessons (1 & 2)

Welcome to the City Art Gallery. Our journey today begins with a very special sculpture. It is made from smooth, dark wood, and shiny metal. The artist wanted to show the growth of a community. If you look closely, you can see hidden faces in the design. This amazing artwork is very valuable because it is the artist's original piece. It tells a story about traditions and new ideas coming together. The goal was to create something that feels both historical and lively.

General Exercises on Unit 4

Music is the art I like most because a musician's performance can immediately make me feel happy. The concerts are full of energy and meaningful moments. Some musicians are known for their rich talent all over the world. I try to listen carefully to understand their passion. I hope I can succeed in learning an instrument one day.

Unit 5 Test yourself Lessons (1 & 2)

Omar traveled to a new capital city last summer. He visited the main square, where he saw an impressive ceremony. People wore traditional clothes and danced happily. Later, he walked through a crowded market and bought handmade gifts. He was very curious about the local culture, so he asked friendly people questions. The kindness he met made the trip unforgettable.

General Exercises on Unit 5

Leila loved exploring every continent. In one trip, she went to a capital city and admired an impressive building at the center. She joined a joyful ceremony with music and dancing. Leila was very organized, taking notes about the population and culture. She was happy with the kindness of strangers. The journey gave her many unforgettable memories to share with her friends.

Unit 6 Test yourself Lessons (1 & 2)

Every invention starts with a thought. Ali thought of a way to keep food warm for delivery drivers. He spent weeks designing a bag that works like a mini oven. He built a model and tested it on short trips. After improving the design, he presented it to a travel food company. His speech impressed the audience, and now his bag is in real use.

General Exercises on Unit 6

Leila is a young innovator who wanted to help her blind uncle. She started by brainstorming tools that could guide people who can't see. After many ideas, she created a walking stick made with safe materials and sensors. She tested it several times, made changes, and built a final version. It had a real impact on her uncle's life.

Review 2 Lesson 1 - Page 298

Dina was always full of imagination. She dreamed of becoming a sculptor and creating special artwork. Last year, she participated in a local art competition. Although her first model was not perfect, she received positive feedback. Her teacher encouraged her to keep going. Dina worked hard, and her final piece, an amazing statue of a bird in flight, was displayed in the city gallery. It was so original that it became a symbol of hope for many young artists. Sarah believes that with passion and innovation, anyone can achieve their dreams.

Challenging Questions Answers

Unit 1

Lessons 1 & 2

1. Is the chef making the meal at the moment?
2. Zahra is reading a very interesting storybook at the moment.
3. Osama is watching the new superhero movie tonight.

Lessons 3 & 4

1. Huda is working on her school project about ancient Egypt at this moment.
2. Eman is singing songs with her music group now.
3. Said is having a big party for his birthday next week.
4. Hend is writing a nice letter to her best friend right now.

Lessons 5 & 6

1. is crying
2. are singing
3. are

Unit 2

Lessons 1 & 2

1. All the questions in class are answered by Salma.
2. Nice wooden toys for children are produced by the company.
3. The letters should be posted at the post office quickly by Nada.

Lessons 3 & 4

1. Many questions are asked by teachers in the lesson every day.
2. The garden flowers are watered by Mahmoud every day.
3. The books should be tidied carefully in the library.

Lessons 5 & 6

1. painted
2. must be
3. may be

Unit 3

Lessons 1&2

1. Hala played with her doll last night.
2. The kids were jumping rope when the teacher called.
3. My mom entered while I was reading a story.

Lessons 3&4

1. The boys were going to the park yesterday afternoon.
2. Mona was playing with blocks when her mom called.
3. While the baby was sleeping quietly, the doorbell rang.

Lessons 5&6

1. went
2. broke
3. doing

Unit 4

Lessons 1&2

1. My hands were full of paint, so I washed them with some soap.
2. The day is for playing, but the night is for sleeping.
3. The small rabbit was scared because it heard a strange noise.

Lessons 3&4

1. Although the coat looked very thin, it kept me warm all day.
2. Walid shared his nice lunch because his friend had no food.
3. Amira can draw very well, but she does not like to paint.

Lessons 5&6

1. because
2. although
3. so

Unit 5

Lessons 1&2

1. That very heavy box of books is heavier than this box.
2. The streets in my town are less busy than the streets in Cairo.
3. This bike is "the slowest" of all means of transportation.

Lessons 3&4

1. Ali is taller than Ahmed.
2. Dalia's book is more interesting than my book.
3. Lean's cake is the most delicious.

Lessons 5&6

1. happiest
2. better
3. the prettiest
4. heavier

Unit 6

Lessons 1&2

1. If Hana doesn't wake up late, she won't miss the school bus again.
2. If the tourist had a camera, he would take a picture of the pyramid.
3. If Sagda isn't busy, she'll go to the party.

Lessons 3&4

1. If Aya doesn't go to school late, the teacher won't punish her again.
2. If I have enough money, I will buy that laptop.
3. Our team wouldn't win if they played badly.

Lessons 5&6

1. presses
2. forgets
3. would

رقم الإيداع: 2025/15561

خدمة العملاء: 16766



جميع حقوق الملكية الفكرية وحقوق المؤلف لهذا الكتاب
مملوكة لدار نهضة مصر للنشر

يحظر طبع أو نشر أو تصوير أو تخزين
أي جزء من هذا الكتاب بأية وسيلة إلكترونية أو ميكانيكية أو بالتصوير
أو خلاف ذلك إلا بإذن كتابي صريح من الناشر.



ENGLISH

for Preparatory Schools

Ongoing Assessment & Final Revision
For General & Al-Azhar Education

الصف
الثاني
الإعدادي

8

الفصل الدراسي الأول



Prepared by

A Group of Experts in Teaching English

الاسم:

رقم الموبايل:



امسح الكود واحصل على
لينكات الأضواء الرسمية

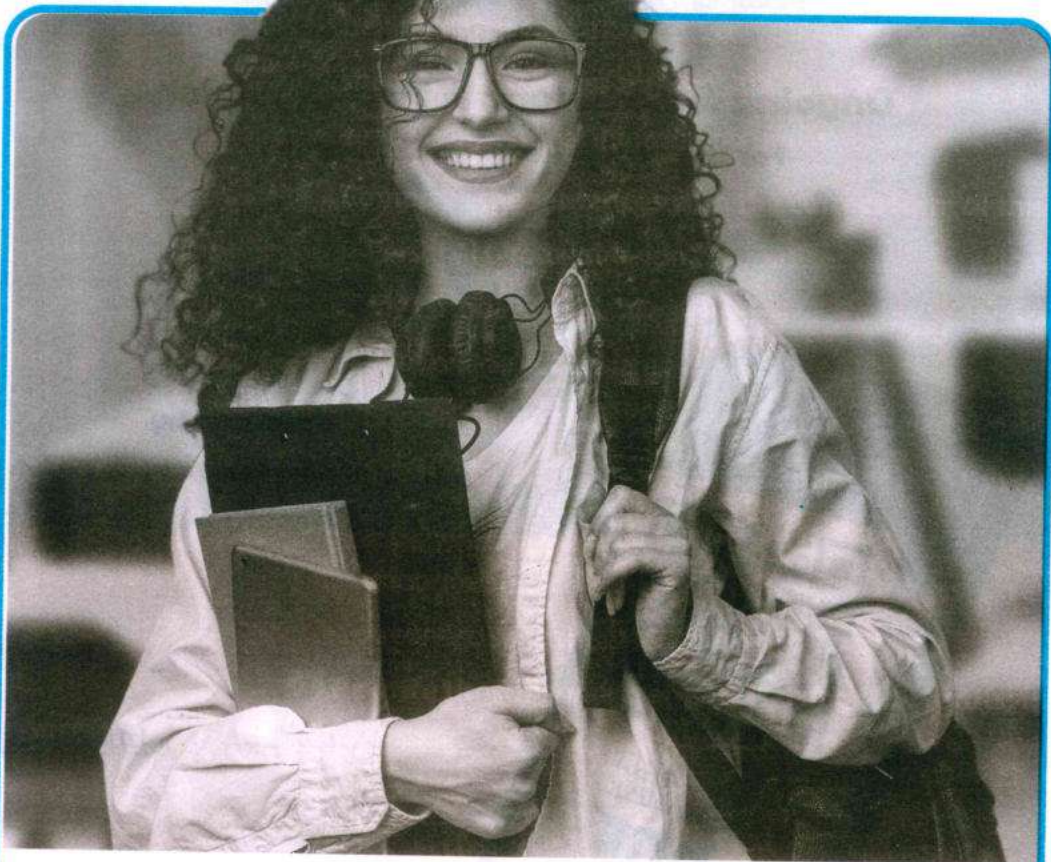
Follow Us

| 16766

www.aladwaa.com



CONTENTS



Part

1

Ongoing Assessment

3

التقويم المستمر

Part

2

Final Revision & Guiding Models

68

المراجعة النهائية والنماذج الاسترشادية

Part 1

Ongoing Assessment



1

Follow-up Worksheets

A. Dictation Time

B. Quiz Time

نماذج المتابعة (لطلبة العام)

- جزء خاص بالإملاء

- اختبار مصغر لطلبة العام على كل درسين

2

Al-Azhar Follow-up Worksheets

نماذج المتابعة (لطلبة الأزهر)

اختبار مصغر لطلبة الأزهر على كل درسين

3

Mini-Tests (General & Al-Azhar)

الاختبارات القصيرة (عام + أزهر)

4

Monthly Models (General & Al-Azhar)

النماذج الشهرية (عام + أزهر)

A Dictation Time

Vocabulary	
generation	وقت الشاشة
digital native	مصطلح
trends	مشاعر
memes	يتواصل
emoji	علاقة
balance	يتعجب/يتساءل

Language Expressions & Prepositions

try hard to	ينشئ فيديو
change the way	يبحث عن
instead of	يقوم بمشروع عن

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

ينتشر		
يقضي/ينفق		
يكتب		

Words and Opposites

Words	Opposites
positive	negative
useful	useless

Definitions

.....: the amount of time spent looking at a screen
.....: a group of people born around the same time
.....: individuals who have grown up with technology

B

1

- To your screen time means to reduce your time on screens.
a) produce b) limit
c) balance d) communicate
- We add the suffix "....." to get the adjective of "digit".
a)-ous b)-al
c)-ment d)-ful
- I am a Gen Apha student. "Gen" here is short for
a) general b) generator
c) generation d) generative
- I to Aswan tomorrow.
a) travel b) travels
c) am traveling d) was traveling
- Lujain her homework now.
a) doing b) do
c) did d) is doing
- Nada and Sama about the party at the moment.
a) are talking b) am talking
c) is talking d) talked

2

1. Abdelrahman is (study) French this week.
2. Iyad and Zain are (play) in the park now.
3. The mechanic (am) fixing our car.
4. Our farmers (were) planting crops these days.
5. Are you (read) a story?

3

1. Sara are visiting Luxor this month. (.....)
2. We are watch a movie now. (.....)
3. Look! Arwa am cleaning her room. (.....)
4. My friends is swimming at the moment. (.....)



1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialog:

Mostafa tells Amr about "Gen Alpha".

Amr : Mostafa, what are you studying this week?

Mostafa : (1)..... technology and "Gen Alpha".

Amr : (2).....?

Mostafa : They are students who were born between 2010 and 2025.

Amr : How do they spend most of their time?

Mostafa : (3)..... their smart screens.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. We should between screen time and other activities.

- a) limit b) balance c) waste d) use

2. Gen Alpha uses to learn about the world.

- a) social media b) books
c) newspapers d) televisions

3. Children share because they're funny.

- a) memes b) notes c) stores d) books

4. Saja is a picture of her cat in art class now.

- a) draw b) drew c) drawn d) drawing

3 Read and correct the underlined word(s):

1. The teacher is use his board now.

(.....)

2. My dad is wash his car at the moment.

(.....)

3. He is visit his relatives next Friday.

(.....)

4. We am buying four books this month.

(.....)

4 Write a paragraph of about Five (5) sentences on:

"Gen Alpha"

.....

.....

.....

A Dictation Time

Vocabulary	
smartphones	مسئولية
include	مخترع
bridge	إذن/تصريح
unite	خائف
passionate	جهاز
fairness	جانب
Language Expressions & Prepositions	
far apart	يهتم بـ
do activities	محبوب لدى
share thoughts	بقى آمنًا على الإنترنت
Conjugations of Irregular Verbs	
يتكلم/يتحدث	
يفهم	
يعتقد	
Words and Opposites	
Words	Opposites
together	far apart
connect	disconnect
Definitions	
: to be part of something	
: wanting to know or learn something	
: to join or link with someone or something	

B**Quiz Time****1 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:**

tablets – growing – connect – videos – young

Generation Z and Generation Alpha are two (1) generations in the world today. Gen Z includes people born between 1997 and 2012. Gen Alpha includes children born from 2010 till now. Even though they are different ages, they have some important things in common. They are (2) up in a digital world. Both generations use smartphones, (3) , and computers every day. They like watching (4) on YouTube, using apps, and playing online games.

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Look! They are (play) handball.
2. My sister (be) baking a cake now.
3. We are (have) a party tomorrow.
4. Our cousins are (rides) their bikes. Can you see them?
5. She is (has) dinner out today.
6. Listen! The kids (am) shouting.
7. Is he (swim) in that pool at the moment?
8. Is Safaa (listen) to music on her cell phone?

3 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets:

1. Sara draws on the wall. (Look!)
.....
2. We catch fish every day. (now)
.....
3. Salwa always reads a book. (at the moment)
.....



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- To means to link between two devices or people.
a) watch b) leave c) use d) connect
- To make the adjective of the noun "passion", we add the suffix ".....".
a) -ly b) -al c) -ate d) -ful
- Both Gen Z and Gen Alpha have something common.
a) in b) by c) on d) for
- Listen! Akram is his favorite song.
a) sing b) sings c) singing d) sang

2 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Social media and online games play a great role in our lives, especially for both Gen Z and Gen Alpha. They help them connect, learn, and have fun with others even if they live remotely. A digital trend is what is popular and liked by many people in a short time. For example, short videos, emojis, and memes are popular with both groups. Many Gen Z and Gen Alpha kids also look after the environment, and are kind to people when they deal with them. They often use their devices to share their thoughts and assist people or animals that are in need.

A) Answer the following questions:

- What is the main idea of the passage?
.....

- What is a digital trend?
.....

- How do people share their thoughts?
.....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- If something is, this means it is remote.
a) close b) near c) far apart d) closed
- Gen Z and Gen Alpha memes and short videos.
a) share b) communicate
c) study d) chat

A Dictation Time

Vocabulary	
meal	نمائم / إرشادات
chat	محادثة
control	مضدك
describe	مُسْتَبْعِد / مُفْعَل
blogger	يجري بحثًا
handle	محدونة

Language Expressions & Prepositions

follow online trends	يبقى متوازنًا
build digital habits	يمارس الرياضة
on a screen	يتفق مع
add to	شكرًا على

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

يسمح / يدع		
يرسل		

Words and Opposites

Words	Opposites
outside	inside
agree	disagree
careful	careless

Quiz Time

away – friends – memes – control – balance

My name is Mostafa. I think that using emojis and (1)..... can be funny and creative. I always try to find a (2)..... between real life and screen time. I put my phone (3)..... during meals. In my opinion, we should limit screen time before bed. I also try to spend more time outside with friends or do sports. I am careful about enjoying my screen, but I don't let it (4)..... me.

1. A/An is a popular new idea or style.

- a) trend b) emoji
c) connection d) digital native
2. To change the noun "technology" into an adjective, we use the suffix ".....".
a) -ous b) -al c) -ical d) -ful
3. We should care each other.
a) in b) off c) for d) on
4. Gen Alpha uses too much.
a) smart devices b) books
c) physical tools d) stories
5. Listen! My phone
a) ring b) rings
c) rang d) is ringing
6. Jana the washing up now.
a) are doing b) am doing
c) is doing d) did
7. New generations use smart devices
a) weekly b) yearly
c) monthly d) daily
8. Don't let technology you.
a) control b) spend c) eat d) jump

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

bored – activities – problem – control – memes

I am Hassan. I have a big (1) I always spend my time on my tablet. I chat with my friends. I send them (2) and funny emojis. But I get (3) easily. What should I do to solve this problem? My close friend advised me to do some outdoor (4) and to go back to my normal family connections.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Gen Z and Gen Alpha are true natives because they grow up using technology.
a) trend b) emoji
c) connection d) digital
- We can play games with our remote friends.
a) online b) offline
c) gloomy d) careless
- We are with our cousins on our tablets now.
a) chat b) chatting
c) chats d) chatted
- She is designing an app for us to use
a) yesterday b) ago c) never d) now

3 Read and correct the underlined word(s):

1. Look! They share memes with their friends. (.....)
2. At the moment, I do my homework online. (.....)
3. I visit my grandma next Monday. (.....)

4 Write a paragraph of about Five (5) sentences on:

"A Day in the Life of a Gen Alpha Teen"

General

- 1 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- Look! That man (carry) a lovely cat.
- Malak (write) an email to her friend right now.
- What are you (do), Omar?
- Listen, the birds (sing).

- 2 Complete the following dialog:

Malak and Rahma are talking about digital habits.

Malak : (1) screen time do you usually have each day?

Rahma : About 5 to 6 hours, including homework.

Malak : I spend the same time using my digital devices, but don't you think that's too much?

Rahma : (2) I think so. We need to find a balance.

Malak : (3) can we do?

Rahma : We can (4) screen time before going to bed.

Malak : That's a good idea.

- 3 Write an email of about (90-100) words to your friend Sama. Tell her about Gen Alpha. Your name is Manal.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Al-Azhar

- 1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialog: Nada and Aya are talking about smartphones.

Nada : Do you have a smartphone?
Aya : (1)

Nada : What do you use it for?
Aya : (2)

Nada : Watching short videos is fun. Do you use it for homework?
Aya : Yes, I do.

Nada : (3)?
Aya : Well, I use it for scanning QR codes from my books.

Nada : Many students follow modern trends. Do you think that's good or bad?
Aya : (4)

- 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- If we together, we will be strong.
a) unite b) represent c) fail d) feel
- In a text message to show happiness, people often add a small smiling
a) sticker b) emoji c) photo d) letter
- Eman struggled hard to her work with her family life.
a) ignore b) balance c) hide d) forget
- I my grandfather next Friday.
a) visit b) visited c) am visiting d) was visiting
- Mrs. Suhair lunch right now.
a) cook b) cooked c) cooks d) is cooking

- 3 Read and correct the underlined word(s):

- What are Azza doing? (.....)
- Listen, the boys are sing beautifully. (.....)
- My cousin throw a party tomorrow. (.....)

Follow-up Worksheet

A Dictation Time

Vocabulary

privacy	.....	.....	كلمة مرور/سر
secure	.....	.....	إعدادات
trace	.....	.....	بطل خارق
post	.....	.....	رمز
digital footprint	.....	.....	بالفعل
breadcrumb	.....	.....	موقع إلكتروني

Language Expressions & Prepositions

have an effect	.....	.....	يتحكم في خصوصية
stay safe	.....	.....	يتبع نصائح
careful about	.....	.....	ترك أثراً

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

.....	يحافظ/يحتفظ	.....	.....
.....	يملك	.....	.....

Words and Opposites

Words	Opposites
hard	easy
strong	weak
remember	forget

Definitions

.....	: information processed or stored by a computer
.....	: a mark or impression left by something
.....	: a secret word or phrase used to access personal information

Quiz Time

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Your password should be secret and
a) public
b) secure
c) insecure
d) general
2. A mark or impression left by something is a
a) trace
b) privacy
c) data
d) setting
3. To be free from public attention is to have
a) privacy
b) a car
c) a house
d) permission
4. My data by a strong password.
a) protects
b) protected
c) is protected
d) is protecting
5. If you don't protect your privacy, your data by people you don't know.
a) might see
b) might be seen
c) will see
d) should see
6. Videos on social media by young people.
a) are uploading
b) is uploading
c) are uploaded
d) is uploaded

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Our door is (paint) every year.
2. Your privacy (should protect) when you are online.
3. The machine (am) fixed by the man.
4. Beddings should (change) regularly.
5. Are photos and videos (share) by young people?

3 Find the mistakes in the following sentences and correct them:

1. Egypt are visited by thousands of people every day. (.....)
2. School rules should follow. (.....)
3. Passwords should be change by users often. (.....)
4. Is these clothes made of cotton? (.....)



1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialog:

Alice tells Amal about "safety online".

Alice: Amal, could you tell me about how to be safe online?

Amal: First, (1)..... your personal details online.

Alice: (2)..... else?

Amal: You must have (3)..... password.

Alice: Can I do anything else?

Amal: Yes. Don't (4)..... with strangers.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. What you do online leaves a/an behind you.

- a) privacy b) trace c) emoji d) meme

2. Your life shouldn't be shared online.

- a) private b) insecure c) public d) common

3. Good help you make your account safe and secured.

- a) settings b) sittings c) stories d) memes

4. Our lessons are carefully in the class.

- a) explain b) explains
c) explained d) explaining

3 Read and correct the underlined word(s):

1. The use of social media should limit. (.....)

2. My car is wash every week. (.....)

3. Football matches watched in the stadium. (.....)

4. A digital trail am created by people. (.....)

4 Write a paragraph of about Five (5) sentences on:

"Online Safety"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

A Dictation Time

Vocabulary	
smart	عمله معدنية
clue	طابع بريد
forever	هوية رقمية
blink	محبط
empathy	أمين/موثوق
confusion	مصحح
Language Expressions & Prepositions	
careful with	ينظر التعاطف
focus on	يقترّب أكثر
make mistakes	يذهب للتنزه
Conjugations of Irregular Verbs	
يختار	
يختفي	
يجد	
Words and Opposites	
Words	Opposites
appear	disappear
safe	unsafe
Definitions	
: for all time; always	
: to gather items, usually over time	
: a small piece of information that helps you solve a problem	

B**Quiz Time****1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:**

leave – websites – connect – footprint – trace

A digital (1)..... is like a trail of breadcrumbs you (2)..... behind when you're online. Everything you do, from visiting (3)..... to sharing posts, leaves a (4)..... of your online experience. You should keep your personal information private.

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Personal photos shouldn't (share) without permission.
2. My birthday cake is always (bake) by Grandma.
3. Your online actions are always (see).
4. Should our teeth (check) regularly?
5. She is (send) an email to her boss this morning.
6. The kids (am) taught to type in schools.
7. Important data is (save) by the system every hour.
8. Are these songs (write) by you?

3 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets:

1. Children should eat healthy food. (Healthy food)
.....
2. We do kind acts every day. (Kind acts)
.....
3. Salwa always makes the bed. (The bed)
.....



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. It's important to stay by doing sports or going for walks.
a) online b) unhealthy c) active d) safe
2. The officer found a that helped identify the thief.
a) password b) meme c) clue d) post
3. Sara likes to coins and stamps.
a) connect b) collect c) together d) invent
4. Ashraf thinks the internet will last
a) for a second b) for a year c) forever d) for a day

2 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Today, we had an interesting class about how to be safe online. Our teacher gave us some tips. He told us if we share our personal information online, it can be seen by others. So, we should always think before we post to keep our privacy secure. A strong password is like a secret code that only we know. If our password is easy to guess, our information might not be safe. That means we should create a strong password to protect our accounts. Passwords should have a group of numbers, letters, and symbols. A strong password is a sign of security.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What is the main idea of the passage?

.....

2. Why do you think a strong password is important?

.....

3. What should a strong password have?

.....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4. We should always think before we post to keep our privacy secure. "Secure" is the synonym of
a) false b) true c) safe d) hidden
5. We need to feel online.
a) safe b) save
c) dangerous d) unprotected

A Dictation Time

Vocabulary	
hack	يتتبع/يتعقب
permanent	بانتظام
scary	البرمحيات
risk	يدخل
birth	مرتان
properly	كلية
Language Expressions & Prepositions	
at risk	يخضع الإعدادات
leave a mark	يقلق على
hack into	يخترق
talk with/to	يعتني بـ
Conjugations of Irregular Verbs	
يسرق	
Words and Opposites	
Words	Opposites
simple	complex
permanent	temporary

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

password – privacy – scary – secure – complex

I usually use my name and birth year as my (1)....., but I think that it's very easy to guess. I will try something more (2)..... to keep my account (3)..... . Also, I will always check my account's (4)..... settings.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Always keep your accounts by using strong passwords.

a) unsafe	b) apparent
c) secure	d) endangered
2. Never personal information with strangers.

a) exchange	b) tell
c) speak	d) change
3. We add the suffix "....." to the word "care" to make an adjective.

a) -ous	b) -ful	c) -al	d) -ical
---------	---------	--------	----------
4. Your digital shows what you do online.

a) footprint	b) password
c) physical tools	d) secure
5. Good settings help protect your information.

a) sharing	b) meme
c) privacy	d) post
6. Use a strong to protect your social media accounts.

a) password	b) digital note
c) smart phone	d) laptop
7. Computer skills for you to get a good job.

a) are needed	b) is needed
c) has needed	d) needs
8. Technology important for all of us.

a) are	b) is
c) were	d) have

General

1 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- Online profiles should (design) carefully.
- The floors of our house (clean) every evening.
- Cotton (grow) in Egypt.
- (Is) these plants watered regularly?

2 Complete the following dialog:

Nour and Salma are talking about digital identity.

Nour : Do you know what digital identity means?

Salma : (1).....

Nour : Can people find things I posted years ago?

Salma : (2).....

Nour : What can I do to protect my privacy?

Salma : (3).....

Nour : Thanks for the advice.

Salma : (4).....

3 Write an email of about (90-100) words to your friend Sara. Tell her how to protect her online privacy. Your name is Yara.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Al-Azhar

1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialog: Nada and Aya are talking about online safety.

Nada : Do you use social media?

Aya : (1).....

Nada : Do you know how to keep your personal information safe online?

Aya : (2).....?

Nada : Yes, I could. Don't share your personal data online.

Aya : (3).....?

Nada : You should use have a strong password. A strong password has letters, numbers, and symbols.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Everything you do online helps build your online
a) house b) identity c) device d) password
- means for all times; always.
a) Never b) Ever c) Hardly d) Forever

3. You must get your information from websites.

- a) positive b) negative c) trusted d) funny

4. You should careful when you are online.

- a) is b) be c) are d) were

5. Our house yellow.

- a) paint b) paints c) is painting d) is painted

3 Read and correct the underlined word(s):

- School rules should be follow. (.....)
- My homework is checking by my teacher. (.....)
- Computers make in Japan. (.....)

Monthly Model (1) on Units 1 & 2

General

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

steal – shape – secure – hack – mark

Our online identity can shape how others see us, and sometimes it can even leave a permanent digital (1)..... . That sounds a bit frightening. If we're not careful, someone could even try to (2)..... our identity or personal details. We should take action to stop people from trying to (3)..... into our account. We should use (4)..... passwords and not share them with anyone.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Don't share your details.
a) privacy b) private c) general d) public
2. Our grew up using too much technology.
a) grandparents b) generation c) teachers d) farmers
3. She is studying electrical engineering "electrical" here is a/an ".....".
a) noun b) verb c) adjective d) adverb
4. Now, my dad his car.
a) wash b) washes c) washed d) is washing
5. Tables and chairs by carpenters.
a) make b) makes c) is made d) are made
6. Your life shouldn't be online.
a) personal b) school c) work d) public

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. (Be) Salma reading a book now?
2. Abeer (traveled) to Sohag next month.
3. She (buy) some vegetables at the market now.
4. My account (hack) by someone.
5. Look! She is (use) your cell phone.

Monthly Model (2) on Units 1 & 2

Al-Azhar

1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialog:

Nada speaks to Maha about ICT class.

Nada : What did your teacher talk about at school today?

Maha: (1).....

Nada : Digital footprint? What does that mean?

Maha: (2).....

Nada : This means every activity is recorded, right?

Maha: Yes, exactly.

Nada : (3).....?

Maha: Well, what you can do is be careful about what you post because it may be hard to remove later.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. A is an electric train that moves on one rail.

- a) flyover b) monorail c) metro d) tunnel

2. To have means to be free from public attention.

- a) determination b) patience c) privacy d) fairness

3. One should limit their screen time. "Limit" means

- a) control b) study c) watch d) increase

4. We at a hotel these days.

- a) are staying b) stay c) stays d) staying

5. Zebras by lions.

- a) are hunting b) hunt
c) hunts d) are hunted

6. We chat with our friends on devices.

- a) traditional b) smart c) ancient d) old

3 Read and correct the underlined word(s):

1. We are go to the Pyramids next Saturday. (.....)

2. Mangoes eat every summer at our farm. (.....)

3. My son is enjoy a camel ride now at the Pyramids. (.....)

4. Your teeth should check regularly. (.....)

A Dictation Time

Vocabulary	
challenge	سباق
determination	ميدالية
practice	عقبة/عائق
attitude	ورطة/مشكلة
discouraged	يتنافس
crowd	طقس
Language Expressions & Prepositions	
make recommendations	يستعد/يحضر لـ
struggle with	يتعثر في
take a deep breath	يذهب للجري
Conjugations of Irregular Verbs	
..... يصبح	.....
..... يرن	.....
..... يهز	.....
Words and Opposites	
Words	Opposites
pass	fail
easy	difficult
Definitions	
.....: being brave when facing difficulties	
.....: something that blocks your path	
.....: not giving up easily	

Quiz Time

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- While we were doing our project, we faced some
a) obstacles b) symbols
c) research d) creativity
- She felt when she saw her bad results.
a) glad b) brave
c) discouraged d) excited
- Most people for success. It is not an easy task.
a) struggle b) escape c) fear d) born
- Mai showed great in the competition, and was ready for a challenge.
a) fear b) determination
c) worry d) gloom
- While I the street, I fell and broke my leg.
a) cross b) crossed
c) was crossed d) was crossing
- Noha a prize yesterday.
a) win b) wins c) won d) winning

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. My mother (cook) lunch when I got home.
2. We (cross) the street when the traffic lights turned red.
3. Mona (wash) the dishes when the phone rang.
4. Ali (break) his leg while he was playing football.
5. (While) my vacation, I met a lot of my old friends.

3 Find the mistakes in the following sentences and correct them:

1. My father drive his car when a policeman stopped him. (.....)
2. Mazen break his pencil while he was doing his homework. (.....)
3. I run in the park when I heard a terrible noise. (.....)
4. I was waiting for my friend when the bus arrive. (.....)



1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialog:

Nada tells Hala about "traffic jams".

Hala : Nada, (1).....?

Nada : We were studying problems in crowded cities.

Hala : What problems were you talking about?

Nada : (2)..... .

Hala : How can we solve this problem?

Nada : (3)..... .

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. We shouldn't give easily.

- a) down b) up c) of d) to

2. To make the noun of the adjective "honest", we add the suffix ".....".

- a) -ment b) -ship c) -y d) -ity

3. When you learn new things, you should

- a) watch b) play
c) stop d) keep going

4. Rana is more research for the project.

- a) doing b) carrying c) giving d) going

3 Read and correct the underlined word(s):

1. I had a bad dream while I was sleep on the sofa. (.....)

2. The students were making noise when their teacher come in. (.....)

3. While I walk to school, it began to rain. (.....)

4. While they be doing homework, my father arrived home. (.....)

4 Write a paragraph of about Five (5) sentences on:

"Traffic jams"

.....

.....

.....

A Dictation Time

Vocabulary	
traffic jams	مواصلات/نقل
creativity	تلوّث
flyover	مسحود/مغلق
tunnel	جائزة
monorail	صديق/أمانة
presentation	نتيجة
move around	حرية
Language Expressions & Prepositions	
make a noise	يتفاعل مع
build roads	عالق في
get blocked	يتبع أحلام
Conjugations of Irregular Verbs	
يحصل على	
يبيع	
يبين/يوضح	
Words and Opposites	
Words	Opposites
clean	dirty
honesty	dishonesty
Definitions	
: long lines of cars that cannot move or are moving very slowly	
: a road that passes over another road on a bridge	
: feeling worried, nervous, or under pressure	

B Quiz Time

1 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

solve – train – connect – flyovers – faster

Egypt is working to (1)..... the problem of traffic jams. New metro lines like Line 3 and Line 4 were built. Projects such as 6th October Bridge help cars move (2)..... .The country is building an electric (3)..... and a monorail to give people more ways to travel. Egypt also made (4)..... and tunnels.

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. I (wrote) a letter when the lights went out.
2. They were waiting for the bus when the accident (happen).
3. What (is) he doing at 6 p.m. last night?
4. I (watered) the plants when my brother came home.
5. I was sleeping when you (call) me.
6. Ali (studied) when his parents came home.
7. While (look) out of the window, I saw a thief.
8. While we were having a picnic, it (start) to rain.

3 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets:

1. While Ali was sleeping last night, someone stole his car. (When)
.....
2. When Amal fell to the ground, she was running. (While)
.....
3. While Sara was on her break, she fell asleep. (During)
.....



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. A is a passage built under the ground or through a mountain.
a) flyover b) bridge c) tunnel d) pitch
2. The city uses a to help people travel faster above the streets.
a) flyover b) metro c) tunnel d) pitch
3. During exams, I often feel very
a) happy b) stressed c) excited d) glad
4. In big cities, it's easier to using buses, bikes, or trains.
a) move around b) look after c) fly for d) turn down

2 Read the following text, then answer the questions: (SB)

Samira wanted to grow a small vegetable garden, but the soil in her yard was very dry. At first, the seeds did not grow, and she felt disappointed. However, Samira decided not to give up. Every day, she watered the soil and moved the plants to a sunnier place. After a few weeks, small green leaves began to appear. Samira felt proud because she learned that hard work and patience can help her overcome challenges.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What did Samira want to do?

.....

2. What problem did she face first?

.....

3. What lesson did Samira learn in the end?

.....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4. means full of water.

a) Wet

b) Dry

c) Sunny

d) Desert

5. After a few, small green leaves began to appear.

a) centuries

b) years

c) weeks

d) hours

A Dictation Time

Vocabulary	
bravery	مُرْتَبِك / حائر
confident	يهمس
surprise	سبب
patience	بوضوح
yard	هادئ
leaves	خجول
Language Expressions & Prepositions	
deal with	يصبح صعباً
get through it	يسير كما هو مخطط له
give a speech	في أي لحظة
Conjugations of Irregular Verbs	
..... يتحدث	.....
Words and Synonyms	
Words	Synonyms
bravery	courage
scared	afraid

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

skills – stronger – up – control – deal

Facing challenges helps us grow (1)..... and more confident. When we (2)..... with problems, we learn new (3)..... . Each challenge also teaches us something useful about the world and ourselves. Even when it feels hard, not giving (4)..... makes us braver. In the end, facing challenges makes us better prepared for the future.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The company that they would open a new office next year.
a) guessed b) whispered c) announced d) hid
- Many people experience a feeling of when they stand on a very high place.
a) fear b) bravery
c) joy d) excitement
- After practicing a lot, Nadine felt about giving her presentation.
a) nervous b) confused
c) shy d) confident
- Mayada was a big challenge.
a) listening b) reading c) looking d) facing
- While she was running, Dina a fox.
a) seeing b) saw c) sees d) is seeing
- Ola her homework at seven yesterday.
a) were doing b) was doing c) is doing d) did
- Sara a movie when Dad came home.
a) will watch b) watched
c) was watching d) is watching
- They were reading stories their father was watching a match.
a) while b) after c) before d) during

speech – facing – problem – happy – stay

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 3 Read and correct the underlined word(s):**

- 4 Write a paragraph of about Five (5) sentences on:**

[illegible]

General

1 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- While I was opening the window, a bee (fly) in.
- When she received my message, she was (set) the table.
- Where were you going when I (meet) you?
- The plumber was (fix) the pipe when I waked in.

2 Complete the following dialog:

Sama and Lujiy are talking about pollution.

Sama : Could you tell me about the problems we have in our city?

Lujiy : (1)

Sama : Pollution! What makes pollution?

Lujiy : (2)

Sama : (3)?

Lujiy : We can use eco-friendly means of transport.

Sama : That's a good idea.

3 Write a paragraph of about (90-100) words on:

"A solution to a problem in your city"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Al-Azhar

1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialog:

Nada is telling Aya about "A challenge she faced".

Nada : I haven't seen you for a while. Where have you been?

Aya : (1)

Nada : That's a big challenge! What did you do to help your garden plants grow?

Aya : (2)

Nada : That's a good idea. Plants do need a lot of sun light.

Aya : Yes, and I gave them more water.

Nada : Did your plants grow in the end?

Aya : (3)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Sally some research on non-renewable energy in Egypt.
a) met b) made c) visited d) did
- They faced some on their way home.
a) smart phones b) challenges c) messages d) castles
- Traffic jams in Cairo cause
a) clean air b) less travel c) empty streets d) pollution
- When she her grandfather, he was working in the garden.
a) visit b) visited c) is visiting d) had visited
- While Lina was lunch, her dad arrived home.
a) preparing b) prepared c) prepares d) prepare

3 Read and correct the underlined word(s):

- While I be chatting online, my friend commented on my post.
- Islam was ride the monorail when he saw a big ad on his phone.
- She was uploading some photos online when her phone ring.

A Dictation Time

Vocabulary

artist	خيال
sculpture	قيم / ثمين
gallery	أصلي
interactive	جذاب
amazing	مطالع
feature	أسلوب / نمط

Language Expressions & Prepositions

made up of	خطّة لـ
filled with	يجمع معاً
look forward to	مصنوع من

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

يبدأ		
يُحضر		
يفكر		

Words and Opposites

Words	Opposites
beautiful	ugly
joy	sorrow

Definitions

.....: to take part in something or become involved
.....: very hard to believe, amazing
.....: more important than usual

Quiz Time

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- "Original" is the antonym of
a) trustworthy b) fake
c) important d) valuable
- I like paintings that are full of color. We add the suffix "....." to get the adjective of "color".
a)-ous b)-al c)-ment d)-ful
- We went to the art to see the new paintings.
a) work b) generator
c) gallery d) theater
- Amr was ill, he went to school.
a) Because b) Although
c) So d) But
- I didn't hear the doorbell I was listening to music.
a) so b) because
c) and d) but
- I tried to carry the bag, it was too heavy.
a) but b) so
c) after d) because

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. I didn't go to the party (so) I was feeling sick.
2. It was cold outside (because) I wore a warm coat.
3. I failed my first test, (although) I didn't give up.
4. I was nervous (so) it was my first time on stage.
5. Nadine got high marks (but) the exam was difficult.

3 Find the mistakes in the following sentences and correct them:

1. Hala didn't study because she failed the exam. (.....)
2. Because he's afraid of heights, he climbed the mountain. (.....)
3. I like pizza, because I don't like mushrooms on it. (.....)
4. I went to the supermarket so I needed milk. (.....)



1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialog:

Amr and Mostafa are talking about "Mahmoud Mokhtar".

Amr : Do you know Mahmoud Mokhtar?

Mostafa : (1)..... . He was a famous sculptor.

Amr : (2).....?

Mostafa : His most famous work is Nahdat Misr Statue.

Amr : (3).....?

Mostafa : After 1919.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The clever students a plan for their school party.
a) threw b) painted
c) created d) neglected
- Children have a strong and are able to create amazing stories.
a) artist b) gallery
c) picture d) imagination
- Artists can use different in their art work.
a) memes b) materials c) statues d) temples
- The painting is creative, some people don't like it.
a) but b) because c) so d) after

3 Read and correct the underlined word(s):

1. I called you yesterday although you didn't answer. (.....)
2. They were hungry because they cooked a large dinner. (.....)
3. But it was late, we decided to keep working. (.....)
4. Mona went to hospital so she was very sick. (.....)

4 Write a paragraph of about Five (5) sentences on:

"Art"

```
*****
*****
*****
*****
```

A Dictation Time

Vocabulary	
biography	ساحلى
agriculture	محلى
article	فئان نحات
participate	إنجاز
compass	تمثال
agriculture	ينظم
pack	الحرية
recognition	قاعدة
pack	جزيرة
appreciate	معرض
Language Expressions & Prepositions	
for the first time	يلعب دوراً
go on an adventure	رمز لـ
hear of	يكافح من أجل
Conjugations of Irregular Verbs	
..... يكافح	.....
..... يعقد	.....
Words and Opposites	
Words	Opposites
birth	death
ancient	modern

B**Quiz Time**

1 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

actor – died – mixed – sculptor – hero

Mahmoud Mokhtar was a famous Egyptian artist and national (1).....
He was the first Egyptian (2)..... in a long time. He (3)..... old Egyptian
art with new European styles. His most famous work is Nahdat Misr statue.
Mahmoud Mokhtar (4)..... in 1934.

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Hany practiced every day (but) he improved quickly.
2. I couldn't go to the party (so) I was very busy.
3. Sara saved money (because) she could buy tickets to London.
4. Omar studied hard (because) he passed the test.
5. (But) it was raining, we went to our tennis practice.
6. Hala left early, (so) she arrived at school late.
7. It was cold outside (but) I put on my jacket.
8. (But) he trained hard, he didn't win the race.

3 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets:

1. Nada played well, but she lost the tennis match. (Although)
.....
2. The movie was boring, so he left the movie theater. (because)
.....
3. Although she was tired, she went to work. (but)
.....



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Mahmoud Mokhtar used his art to Egyptian identity.
a) explore b) promote c) risk d) connect
- To make the noun of the verb "sculpt", we add the suffix ".....".
a) -ly b) -al c) -or d) -ful
- To means to be grateful or thankful for something.
a) divide b) recognize c) demote d) appreciate
- Rana is always when she meets new people. She doesn't like to talk much.
a) shy b) bored c) excited d) scary

2 Read the following text, then answer the questions: (SB)

Mustafa, Omar, and Hany are on a trip to a famous coastal city. They loved to explore. They found a map that showed a "hidden island" across the sea. Mustafa said, "Let's go on an adventure!" Omar added, "We have the freedom to explore, but we must respect nature and each other." They packed their things: food, water, a compass, and notebooks to draw what they discovered.

As they sailed, they sang songs and appreciated the beauty of the sea, the birds, and the fresh air. Hany, who loved drawing, sketched the scenery. Omar, who was shy, felt free to share his ideas for the first time. Although they were different, they respected each other's thoughts.

A) Answer the following questions:

- What is the main idea of the passage?
.....

- What did they pack?
.....

- What does this passage teach us?
.....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The friends found a map that showed a hidden across the sea.
a) cave b) oasis c) island d) boat
- Hany enjoyed the scenery as they sailed to the island.
a) singing b) eating c) making d) drawing

A Dictation Time

Vocabulary	
act	قماش
neglect	مُرشد سياحي
actor	سائح
review	موهبة
actress	مسرور
routine	دور
section	مسرح
opinion	كسل
Language Expressions & Prepositions	
full of	يؤثر في قلوب
walk through	يستعد
switch roles	معروف بـ
Conjugations of Irregular Verbs	
.....	يأخذ
Words and Opposites	
Words	Opposites
damage	protect
neglect	care

B

B

1

musician – actress – talent – books – thoughts

I've read an amazing article about art. Art is much more than just painting. It's a way to express your feelings and (1)..... . An artist can be a painter, a (2)....., a writer, or even an actor. Omar Sharif was a famous Egyptian actor. His (3)..... and passion made him a famous star. Another famous star is Amina Rizk, a famous Egyptian (4)..... . Her roles as a kind mother touched the hearts of people all over the Arab world.

2

- Wow! This painting is I like its bright colors.
a) meaningless b) colorful
c) ordinary d) dull
- To change the noun "meaning" into an adjective, we use the suffix ".....".
a) -ous b) -al
c) -ical d) -ful
- Om Kulthoum was a great singer. She had a lot of
a) create b) creator
c) creation d) creativity
- It makes to leave early in the morning to avoid traffic.
a) sense b) tense c) money d) meaning
- we did our very best, we still didn't win the competition.
a) But b) So
c) Although d) Because
- The gallery was full of paintings.
a) heavy b) creative
c) scared d) brave
- Salma can her thoughts through writing short stories.
a) finish b) paint c) damage d) express
- Nada passed the final exam, she was very happy.
a) so b) although c) because d) but

1 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

bored – stunning – sculpture – recognition – art

Ramy visited the museum last Friday. He walked through the modern (1) section. Some of the pieces there were really (2) He saw a (3) made from wood and paper. It looked so special. Some of these works were not famous yet. Sometimes (4) comes later.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The used clay to create a statue that showed life in Ancient Egypt.
 - actor
 - singer
 - sculptor
 - sculpture
- The movie was I really enjoyed watching it.
 - scary
 - helpful
 - amazing
 - boring
- Successful artists use their to create new things.
 - demotion
 - imagination
 - revolution
 - recognition
- I tried hard, I couldn't pass the driving test.
 - so
 - but
 - because
 - although

3 Read and correct the underlined word(s):

1. Nada was late for work so her car broke down. (.....)
2. But Mustafa works hard, he doesn't have much money. (.....)
3. He lost his key, because he couldn't open the door. (.....)

4 Write a paragraph of about Five (5) sentences on:

"A visit to the museum"

.....

.....

General

Al-Azhar

- 1 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- I never give up (so) I believe in myself.
- The gallery showed some videos (but) it is mainly for paintings.
- Mona didn't have much money, (because) she couldn't go shopping with her friends.
- Nada got up early, (although) she missed the bus.

- 2 Complete the following dialog:

Yasmeen and Yara are talking about Helen Keller.

- Yasmeen : I read an interesting book about Helen Keller.
Yara : (1) ?
Yasmeen : The book said that she was blind and deaf, and faced a lot of challenges.
Yara : (2) ?
Yasmeen : Yes, she overcame them with perseverance.
Yara : (3) ?
Yasmeen : Sure, here you go. I hope you enjoy reading it!

- 3 Write a paragraph of about (90-100) words about:

"A biography of a famous person"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

- 1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialog:

Nada and Aya are talking about art.

- Nada : Is art important in our life?
Aya : (1)
Nada : Why is art considered a world language?
Aya : (2)
Nada : Does art bring people together?
Aya : Yes, of course.
Nada : (3) ?
Aya : I like painting and photos. They're my favorite forms of art.
Nada : (4)

- 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Nadine is a great artist. She creates out of scrap materials.
a) paper b) sculptures c) temples d) museums
- Mahmoud Mokhtar actively participated the nationalist movement.
a) in b) on c) with d) by
- is a material used for making pottery and sculptures.
a) Plastic b) Glass c) Silk d) Clay
- The school organized an exhibition to creativity and teamwork among students.
a) finish b) demote c) promote d) watch
- Our bus broke down we had to walk to school.
a) but b) if c) so d) although
- Sara is poor, she is happy.
a) But b) Although c) Because d) So

- 3 Read and correct the underlined word(s):

- Heba couldn't buy the smart phone so she lost her money. (.....)
- Samir lost the match because he played well. (.....)
- I faced a lot of obstacles, although I didn't give up. (.....)

Monthly Model (1) on Units 3 & 4

General

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

steal – symbol – sphinx – modern – sculptor

Mahmoud Mokhtar, born in 1891, was a key Egyptian (1)..... and national hero. He studied in Cairo and Paris, mixing ancient Egyptian themes with (2)..... European styles. His most famous work, Nahdat Misr statue, introduced to the public in 1928, shows a woman and a (3)....., representing Egypt's heritage and new beginning. Mokhtar's art became a (4)..... of national pride. He died in 1934, and later a museum in Cairo was opened to show his art.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Mustafa can his thoughts through his paintings.
a) grow b) express c) hint d) say
2. Aya enjoys the scenery when she goes to the village.
a) eating b) making c) drawing d) hearing
3. We use the suffix "....." to change the verb "imagine" into a noun.
a) -ous b) -ation c) -ment d) -ful
4. You can see different forms of artworks in a
a) sphinx b) gallery c) TV d) screen
5. While I was doing my homework, my brother games.
a) played b) plays c) was playing d) plays
6. Mesbah enjoys playing sports, he doesn't like tennis.
a) ago b) but c) so d) because

3 Read and correct the underlined word(s):

1. She didn't hear the doorbell because she listen to music. (.....)
2. The children were playing outside when it begin to snow. (.....)
3. While the break, I ate my sandwiches. (.....)
4. She didn't answer the phone so she was busy. (.....)
5. But he is rich, he doesn't have a car. (.....)

Monthly Model (2) on Units 3 & 4

Al-Azhar

1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialog:

Sara is talking to her dad.

Dad : You look worried, Sara. Is everything OK?

Sara : (1).....

Dad : Try to relax. I'm sure your presentation will be OK.

Sara : (2).....?

Dad : Just take a deep breath, and you will remember everything.

Sara : Thanks a lot, Dad!

Dad : (3).....

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- It's OK to a mistake when you are giving a presentation.
a) do b) take c) make d) watch
- helps you overcome obstacles.
a) Determination b) Carelessness
c) Privacy d) Frustration
- Many students use apps to with their friends through short videos.
a) brainstorm b) communicate
c) stress d) disappoint
- Omar passed the exam he didn't revise well.
a) so b) but c) because d) although
- When Dad left home, I
a) am sleeping b) sleeps
c) was sleeping d) are sleeping
- Something which is is the first copy of its kind.
a) traditional b) smart c) ancient d) original

3 Read and correct the underlined word(s):

- While Aya read a story, the lights went out. (.....)
- While he sleep, someone knocked on the door. (.....)
- Nader practiced well because he did well in the match. (.....)
- But it very hot, we decided to go to the park. (.....)

Follow-up Worksheet

A Dictation Time

Vocabulary

continent	.....	.....	تقليد
celebration	.....	.....	فراغة
unforgettable	.....	.....	رئيسي
organized	.....	.....	مجوهرات
treasure	.....	.....	هدية تذكارية
ceremony	.....	.....	حكومة

Language Expressions & Prepositions

happy with	.....	.....	يساعد في
compare to	.....	.....	مشهور بـ
famous for	.....	.....	يلتقط صورة

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

.....	يبنى	.....	.....
.....	يحافظ على	.....	.....
.....	يقول	.....	.....

Words and Opposites

Words	Opposites
noisy	calm
polite	impolite

Definitions

.....	: a famous place or building people visit
.....	: a custom that we do regularly
.....	: a collection of valuable things like gold, silver, or jewels

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- We the old city and took many photos.
 a) arrived
 b) got
 c) went
 d) explored
- Cairo has a large of over 20 million people.
 a) tradition
 b) population
 c) landmark
 d) pollution
- Egyptian includes ancient history, music, and food.
 a) culture
 b) population
 c) museum
 d) ceremony
- The trip to Cairo was I really enjoyed it.
 a) unforgettable
 b) tired
 c) excited
 d) traditional
- We watched a traditional wedding during the festival.
 a) ceremony
 b) homework
 c) housework
 d) class
- Cairo is the city in Egypt.
 a) big
 b) bigger
 c) biggest
 d) smallest

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- Mona is (fast) than Ahmed.
- Soha reads (much) than Adel.
- Samar is (intelligent) than Leila.
- April is (warm) than January.
- My paragraph is (good) than yours.

3 Find the mistakes in the following sentences and correct them:

- Your handwriting is bad than mine. (.....)
- August is the hot month of the year. (.....)
- Mona's dress is expensive than Hala's dress. (.....)
- It is the old tree in this park. (.....)



1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialog:

Nada tells Hala about her visit to Morocco.

Hala : Nada, (1).....?

Nada: We went to Chefchaouen.

Hala : Chefchaouen! Where is it?

Nada: (2).....

Hala : (3).....?

Nada: It's famous for its blue streets and houses.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- People of Tokyo are They always show kindness to others.
a) noisy b) lazy c) impolite d) respectful
- The traditional dish in Morocco is
a) sushi b) ramen c) tagine d) pizza
- The is the main city of a country.
a) capital b) town c) village d) slum
- Rana is than her sister.
a) more active b) active
c) most active d) least active

3 Read and correct the underlined word(s):

- My cell phone is expensive than yours. (.....)
- Your car is cheap than mine. (.....)
- Nada is short than Noha. (.....)
- I am slow boy in the class. (.....)

4 Write a paragraph of about Five (5) sentences on:

"A visit to a famous capital"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

A Dictation Time

Vocabulary			
waterfall	.....	.....	اكتشاف
friendship	.....	.....	صديقة
destination	.....	.....	مدينة تجارية
gateway	.....	.....	جبال جليدية
awesome	.....	.....	بحيرة شاطئية
memories	.....	.....	صخرة
Language Expressions & Prepositions			
split into	.....	.....	على الأرض
on an island	.....	.....	يملاً بـ
stay close	.....	.....	يصل إلى هناك
Conjugations of Irregular Verbs			
.....	يرسم	.....	.....
.....	يقود	.....	.....
.....	يحضر	.....	.....
Words and Opposites			
Words		Opposites	
lost	.....	found	.....
strange	.....	usual	.....
Definitions			
.....: a path or way for walking			
.....: a special beauty or attraction			
.....: a large mass of ice that moves slowly			

B Quiz Time

1 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

while – carved – Upper – flyovers – souvenir

Last January, I went to (1)..... Egypt. I visited the Temple of Horus. It is huge and it has beautifully (2)..... statues of ancient Egyptian kings. I think it was even more impressive than the temples we saw in Luxor. We stayed for a (3)..... . There was so much to see and explore. I bought a small statue of Horus as a (4)..... .

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. This café is (fantastic) one I have ever visited.
2. Linda's painting is beautiful, but Amina's painting is (beautiful) one I've ever seen!
3. Leila is two years (young) than Soha.
4. July is (hot) than December.
5. English is (easy) than Arabic.
6. I'm (good) at English than my sister.
7. Samer is as tall (at) Nassef.
8. Marwa is (thin) than Sara.

3 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets:

1. Mona is 165 cm. Aya is 150 cm. (shorter)
.....
2. Your watch is made this year. (newest)
.....
3. No other girl in our class is cleverer than Aya. (cleverest)
.....



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. My trip to the mountains gave me great that I will never forget.
a) obstacles b) hardships c) memories d) weddings
2. Tourists enjoy the Blue in Iceland.
a) Meal b) Bridge c) Rock d) Lagoon
3. The ancient statue was from a single piece of stone.
a) played b) studied c) carved d) curved
4. Long ago, this city became rich by spices and silk.
a) paying b) trading c) coming d) reading

2 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Many people dream of exploring new countries and learning about different cultures. Traveling lets you see famous landmarks, try traditional foods, and hear new languages. Some people travel to countries they've never visited before. Others return to places they love. Traveling helps you understand how people live around the world. You can visit cities like Tokyo, Cairo, and Chefchaouen. Each city has its flavor and its special smell. You can have tagine in Chefchaouen in Morocco. You can also try sushi in Tokyo, Japan. If you are in Cairo, you can smell the history of the ancient civilization. You can enjoy visiting ancient sites in Luxor and Aswan.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What is the text about?
.....
2. What are the benefits of travel?
.....
3. Mention three cities from the text.
.....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4. You can eat in Japan.
a) koshari b) sushi c) tagine d) pizza
5. Cairo has very civilization.
a) modern b) old c) new d) novel

Follow-up Worksheet

A Dictation Time

Vocabulary	
attacks	وكالة سفر
crowded	ضخم
castle	بطاقة بريدية
gift	مشهور
historical	مشرف
necklace	أغراض/أشياء
Language Expressions & Prepositions	
hear about	يذكر ... بـ
sense of	يحمي ... من
at Eid	في غروب الشمس
Conjugations of Irregular Verbs	
..... يسرق	.....
Words and Opposites	
Words	Opposites
well-known	unknown
crowded	empty

Quiz Time

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

visit – culture – up – population – souvenirs

France is one of the most visited countries in the world. Its (1)..... is over 67 million people. France is known for its rich (2)....., beautiful cities, and delicious food. Many tourists explore famous places like the Eiffel Tower in Paris, the beaches in the south, and the castles in the countryside. The French people are proud of their clothes, music, and food. When people (3)..... France, they often buy (4)..... like small Eiffel Towers, perfumes, or local crafts.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Paris and Tokyo are popular travel for tourists around the world.
a) villages b) towns
c) trails d) destinations
- Cairo is the city of Egypt.
a) small b) capital c) village d) local
- Asia is the largest in the world.
a) country b) city
c) continent d) town
- The of China is more than one billion people.
a) pollution b) population
c) capital d) city
- Giving gifts at Eid is an important in many countries.
a) tradition b) traditional
c) traditions d) customary
- We want to different countries and cultures.
a) explore b) go c) get d) invent
- Sara is the girl in our class.
a) smart b) smarter
c) smartest d) much smart
- People watching the players should be during the tennis match.
a) quieter b) quiet
c) quite d) quietest

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

got – facing – ceremony – carved – souvenir

Yesterday, we had a happy (1)..... . My cousin (2)..... married to his classmate. I bought him a (3)..... from Luxor. It was (4)..... beautifully from stone and wood. He was happy with my gift.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- She is about learning new things.
a) interested b) curious
c) eager d) keen
- Cairo Tower is a famous in Egypt.
a) land b) landmark
c) full mark d) statue
- To make the adjective of the noun "tradition", we add the suffix ".....".
a) -al b) -ous
c) -ical d) -ful
- Sometimes actions speak than words.
a) louder b) loud
c) loudly d) loudest

3 Read and correct the underlined word(s):

1. The tiger is fast than the lion. (.....)
2. The sloth is the lazy animal on Earth! (.....)
3. London is big than France. (.....)

4 Write a paragraph of about Five (5) sentences on:

"Your experience in France"

.....

.....

.....

.....

General

1 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in

brackets:

1. My camera is (modern) than yours.
2. He is faster (then) his friend.
3. She is the (tall) girl I have ever met.
4. This watch is (a) most expensive one in the store.

2 Complete the following dialog:

Ramy and Bahy are both from Sohag. They are talking about travels.

Ramy : Where did you go last weekend?

Bahy : (1).....?

Ramy : (2).....?

Bahy : I visited the Pyramids and the Sphinx

Ramy : Did you take photos or buy souvenirs?

Bahy : (3).....

Ramy : Cool! Can I see them, please?

3 Write a paragraph of about (90-100) words about:

"Your trip to an ancient place"

.....

.....

.....

.....

Al-Azhar

1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialog:

Nadia is telling Samia about her trip to Aswan.

Nadia : You weren't at home last week. Where did you go?

Samia : (1).....

Nadia : What did you do in Aswan?

Samia : I visited many temples.

Nadia : (2).....?

Samia : Yes! And I learned that it controls water and saves us.

Nadia : (3).....?

Samia : Yes, look at these photos I took with my phone.

Nadia : Those are amazing! Maybe we can go again together next year!

Samia : (4).....

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. People of Egypt are They always show friendliness to others.
a) noisy b) shy c) impolite d) respectful
2. The traditional dish in Japan is
a) sushi b) ramen c) tagine d) pizza
3. My trip to the mountains gave me great that I will never forget.
a) memories b) rules c) obstacles d) citadels
4. Long ago, this city became rich by metals and grains.
a) paying b) trading c) coming d) reading
5. My brother is the one in our family.
a) shorter b) short c) shortest d) most short

3 Read and correct the underlined word(s):

1. The much intelligent animal is the chimpanzee. (.....)
2. Ahmed's car is expensive than Ali's. (.....)
3. Salwa is the old girl in the family. (.....)

A Dictation Time

Vocabulary

thought	.....	.....	اكتشاف
astronomy	.....	.....	تحسين
chemistry	.....	.....	إجراءات
inventor	.....	.....	فيزياء
brainstorm	.....	.....	شباب
role model	.....	.....	علمي

Language Expressions & Prepositions

show interest in	.....	.....	يصنع اختراعا
believe in	.....	.....	مفيد لـ
build a model	.....	.....	يحدث فرقاً

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

.....	يقود/يسوق	.....	.....
.....	يكسب/يفوز	.....	.....

Words and Opposites

Words	Opposites
successful	unsuccessful
alive	dead

Definitions

.....	: an action in a series that is part of a process or procedure
.....	: an idea, opinion, or something that comes to your mind
.....	: one millionth of a billionth of a second

B

Quiz Time

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Samira wants to study in the medical so she can help people.
a) picnic b) race
c) university d) field
- Books are everywhere. My room is really
a) messy b) organized
c) clean d) awesome
- In class, we read poems and stories because we love very much.
a) math b) chemistry
c) physics d) literature
- The clever scientist will an invention to help people see in the dark.
a) do b) sit
c) make d) think
- If I have some money, I a digital camera.
a) bought b) would buy
c) buys d) will buy
- If she homework, she would watch the movie.
a) will do b) do
c) did d) does

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. If she doesn't feel well, she (stay) at home.
2. If she (study) hard, she will pass the exam.
3. If I (have) a car, I would drive you home.
4. If I (am) a doctor, I would help sick people everywhere.

3 Find the mistakes in the following sentences and correct them:

1. If you asked me, I will help you. (.....)
2. If you look after this plant, it grow fast. (.....)
3. If they win the lottery, they'd buy a new house. (.....)
4. If we lived closer, we will visit you more often. (.....)



1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialog:

Hamdy tells Jana about solving problems.

Jana : Hamdy, was your science class interesting?

Hamdy : (1)..... We studied how to solve a problem.

Jana : How can we solve a problem?

Hamdy : First, we (1)..... the problem.

Jana : (3).....?

Hamdy : Next, we brainstorm ideas.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Did you buy the newest of my book?

- a) line b) page c) version d) trend

2. This problem is I can't solve it.

- a) simple b) complex c) easy d) active

3. My hair is wet. I need a

- a) fire b) printer c) cooker d) dryer

4. If she came early, she the bus.

- a) 'll catch b) 'd catch c) catch d) catches

3 Read and correct the underlined word(s):

1. If I saw her, I will tell her the news. (.....)

2. They will missed the train if they don't hurry. (.....)

3. If you don't watered the plants, they will die. (.....)

4. If I knew the answer, I tell you. (.....)

4 Write a paragraph of about Five (5) sentences on:

"A visit to a famous capital"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

A Dictation Time

Vocabulary			
civil engineering	.....	.....	قيادة
chief engineer	.....	.....	فرج
patients	.....	.....	تذكير
disappear	.....	.....	أدوات
builder	.....	.....	قريب
hunger	.....	.....	أجهزة استشعار
cloudy	.....	.....	مظلم
Language Expressions & Prepositions			
work in a team	.....	.....	يقود الطريق
work as	.....	.....	يهتم بـ
move to	.....	.....	معروف كـ
appreciation for	.....	.....	يظهر الاحترام
Conjugations of Irregular Verbs			
.....	تغرب الشمس	.....	.....
.....	يلامع/يسطع	.....	.....

B**Quiz Time****1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:****role – chief – impact – biomedical – souvenir**

Hany Azer is a famous Egyptian engineer. He made a great (1)..... on the world of civil engineering. He was born in Tanta, Egypt, and later moved to Germany. He worked as the (2)..... engineer for the Berlin main station, one of the largest train stations in Europe. Hany Azer, together with his relative who works as a (3)..... engineer, could help people who have health problems. He is a (4)..... model for many students in Egypt and around the world.

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. If it (rain) tomorrow, we will stay indoors.
2. I (call) you if I finish my work early.
3. If they miss the bus, they (be) late for school.
4. If you (gave) too much information, you will have no privacy.
5. Samy would be first in line if he (arrive) early.
6. If Mona has a car, she (give) us a lift.
7. I'll win the ten thousand pounds, if I (came) in first place.
8. Leila would be thinner if she (eat) less pasta.

3 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets:

1. I don't have a smartphone, so I don't use social media. (if)
.....
2. Eat fruit and vegetables and you will be healthy. (if)
.....
3. Jomana doesn't practice for her test because she is busy. (if)
.....



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The mechanic used special to fix the truck.
a) obstacles b) models c) memories d) tools
- Grandma baked me a cake as a sign of for my hard work in her garden.
a) leadership b) bridge
c) connection d) appreciation
- The inspiring story was by the children to the rest of the village.
a) played b) studied c) shared d) curved
- Mom is always me to stay safe online.
a) shining b) reminding c) coming d) reading

2 Read the following, then answer the questions:

In a quiet coastal town, four friends—Omar, Nabil, Ahmed and Sami—found an old map showing a hidden island. Omar said, "Let's go explore!" Nabil agreed: "We have freedom to discover, but we must respect nature and each other." They packed food, water, and notebooks. They sang as they sailed. Omar drew the sea, and shy Sami shared ideas for the first time. On the island, they split into pairs and found beautiful birds, caves, and a waterfall. At sunset, Nabil said, "True leadership is about caring, not about being loud." Ahmed added, "Creativity makes adventures fun!" They returned home, inspiring others to explore, care, and create together.

A) Answer the following questions:

- What is the text about?
.....
- What rule did Nabil suggest before their journey?
.....
- What lesson did Nabil share about leadership?
.....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- On the island, they found
a) deserts and camels b) birds and a waterfall
c) a giraffe d) a hidden treasure
- According to Ahmed, creativity
a) is tiring b) makes adventures fun
c) causes trouble d) is boring

A Dictation Time

Vocabulary

victory	.....	رسميًا
secretly	.....	جندى
Border Guard	.....	جيش
president	.....	يخدم
water-saving	.....	شفرة سرية
deadline	.....	يعمل بالطاقة الشمسية
backpack	.....	بطولة

Language Expressions & Prepositions

combine ... with	.....	يتبع شفقه
work on	.....	يشارك فى
succeed in	.....	بفضل
come up with	.....	يفوت الموعد النهائي

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

.....	ينمو	.....	.....
.....	يحصل على	.....	.....

Words and Opposites

Words	Opposites
enemy	friend
war	peace
victory	defeat

Quiz Time

secretly – army – secret – enemy – smart

Ahmed Idris was a brave Nubian soldier in the Egyptian (1)..... . He served in the Border Guard during the 1970s. In 1973, before the October War, he suggested using the Nubian language as a secret code for the army. His idea was very (2)..... because the Nubian language was not written and was only known by Nubian people. The (3)..... could not understand it. Thanks to his idea, the Egyptian army sent messages safely and (4).....

1. The two friends planned a surprise party for their teacher.

- a) bravely
c) officially

- b) secretly
d) slowly

2. A/An is someone who creates new ideas, products, or ways of doing things.

- a) innovator
c) teacher

- b) scientist
d) doctor

3. Nader hopes he will be able to succeed climbing to the end of the mountain.

- a) on b) with c) in d) by

4. Our basketball team trained hard to win the national

- a) company

- b)factory

- c)championship

- d)university

5.If I social media, I would find all my friends.

- a) had

- b) has

- c) have

- d)having

6.If you post an ad online, you your smart phone quickly.

- a) are selling

- b)sold

- c)'ll sell

- d)'d sell

7.If you help, call me at once.

- a) need

- b)needs

- c)'ll need

- d) needed

8.If I an engineer, I would build tall buildings.

- a) are

- b)am

- c) be

- d) were



1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

got – come – deadline – make – solar

I'm designing a (1).....-powered water pump for farms in dry areas. If I (2)..... up with a good design, it can really help poor communities. I want to (3)..... a difference saving both water and energy. If I don't manage my time carefully, I may miss the (4)..... .

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Many young inventors have the to change the world.
a) destroy b) escape c) danger d) passion
- If you creativity with hard work, you can build something truly meaningful.
a) combine b) start c) add d) speak
- I may win a/an in the science contest because I got wonderful feedback.
a) award b) song c) meal d) notebook
- If Hana speaks two languages, she the job.
a) got b) would get c) will get d) get

3 Read and correct the underlined word(s):

- If you ran fast, you catch the bus. (.....)
- If I take my medicine, I get well soon. (.....)
- What will you do if you had a time machine? (.....)

4 Write a paragraph of about Five (5) sentences on:

"Your role model"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

General

Al-Azhar

1 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- If I saw a snake, I (will) run away.
- If she (prepare) well, she wouldn't be nervous.
- If they were invited, they (will) go to the party.
- If they (comes) early, they will watch the match.

2 Complete the following dialog:

Randa and Bahira are talking about their favorite Egyptian people.

Randa: Who is your favorite Egyptian person?

Bahira: Dr. Ahmed Zewail is my favorite scientist.

Randa: (1) ?

Bahira: Because he helped the humans with his discovery.

Randa: (2) ?

Bahira: He discovered the femtosecond.

Randa: That's amazing!

Bahira: (3) ?

Randa: Hana Gouda is my favorite Egyptian person because I really enjoy sports!

3 Write a paragraph of about (90-100) words about:

"A famous Egyptian scientist"

.....

.....

.....

.....

1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialog:

Salma and Nada are talking about Mahmoud Mokhtar.

Salma: Have you heard of Mahmoud Mokhtar?

Nada : (1) ?

Salma: (2) ?

Nada : He was born in 1891.

Salma: Why was he famous?

Nada : (3) ?

Salma: (4) ?

Nada : He made Nahdat Misr Statue.

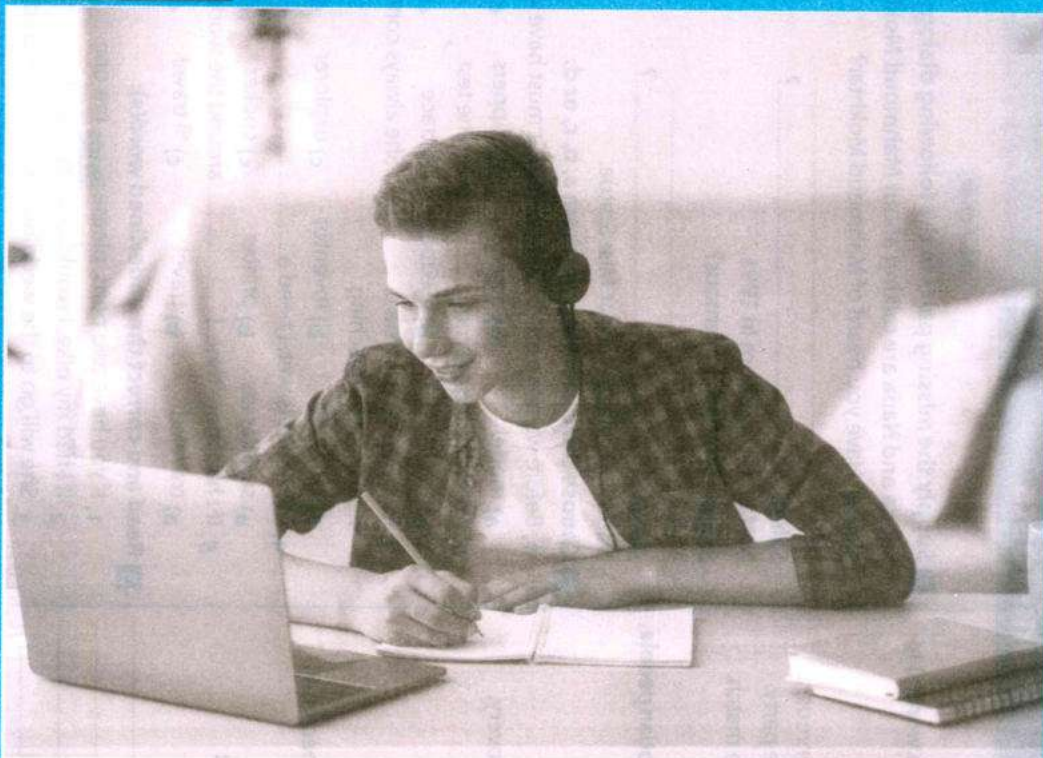
2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Before we use a machine generally, it must have a
a) model b) dryer c) slippers d) remote
- My teacher gave me on the test.
a) track b) feedback c) trace d) form
- Mrs. Hadeer is a true She always comes up with new ideas for teaching.
a) innovator b) inventor c) explorer d) traveler
- My T-shirt is wet. I need a
a) sunglasses b) printer c) cooker d) dryer
- If I had more time, I around the world.
a) traveled b) travel c) 'll travel d) 'd travel

3 Read and correct the underlined word(s):

- If you have two pens, please lends me one. (.....)
- If I had my bike, I would rode to school. (.....)
- She will go to the wedding, if she had the address. (.....)

Part 2 Final Revision & Guiding Models



1

General Revision (Vocabulary/Language/Speaking/Writing)

مراجعة عامة على أهم الكلمات والقواعد والمحادثات والشفرات على كل وحدتين

2

Final Guiding Models (General & Al-Azhar)

امتحانات خاصة بطلبة العام والأزهر

3

Listening Texts

نصوص استماع

Unit 1: Gen Alpha

A Vocabulary

annoy (y) (ed) يضايق/يزعج	encourage (d) يشجع	permission إذن/تصريح
balance (d) يوازن	fairness عدل	personal شخصي
communicate (d) يتواصل	generation جيل	powerful قوي
connection اتصال	identity هوية	process عملية
constantly باستمرار	include يتضمن/يشمل على	real-life حياة واقعية
content محتوى	left out مُستبعد/مُفْضَل	research (ed) يجري بحثاً
curious فضولي	online creator صانع محتوى على الإنترنت	responsibility مسؤولية
digital native مواطن رقمي	passionate شغوف/متحمس	unite (d) يوحد/يتحد

Vocabulary Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- I with my friends every day.
a) spend b) need c) communicate d) have
- I should limit my time.
a) screen b) printer c) microphone d) mouse
- has a great impact on our lives.
a) Technology b) Online c) Offline d) Gen Alpha
- Technology should the environment.
a) control b) harm c) improve d) hurt

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

away – enjoying – memes – control – balance

I think that using emojis and (1)..... can be funny and creative. I always try to find a (2)..... between real life and screen time. I put my phone (3)..... during meals. In my opinion, we should limit screen time before going to bed. I also try to spend more time outside with friends or do sports. I am careful about enjoying my screen, and I don't let it (4)..... me.

B

Language

The Present Continuous Tense

زمن المضارع المستمر

Form

Subject + **am/is/are** + inf. مصدر الفعل + ing

- e.g. • I **am watching** TV now. • The baby **is sleeping** at the moment.
• Look! The birds **are flying** in the sky.

Negative النفي

Subject + **am not/isn't/aren't** + inf. مصدر الفعل + ing

- e.g. Your younger brother **isn't crying**.

Question السؤال

a) Yes/No question:

Is/Are + subject الفاعل + inf. مصدر الفعل + ing ...?

- e.g. • **Is Ali working** on the project right now?
• **Are the children coming** over for dinner?

b) Wh- question:

Q. word + **is/are** + subject الفاعل + inf. مصدر الفعل + ing ...?

- e.g. When **is Hala meeting** her friend for coffee?

Language Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- She her headphones now.
a) uses b) is using c) used d) use
- Look! They their car.
a) are washing b) wash c) were washing d) washes
- My mother the housework at the moment.
a) are doing b) is doing c) does d) did

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- Kady (walk) to school now.
- Is it (rain)?
- They are (have) their lunch at the moment.
- He is (fly) to Luxor this month.
- Nora and Safa (is) talking now.
- Are they (watch) a play?
- You aren't (do) your homework.



1. Expressing opinion on Gen Alpha's digital life

A: What do you know about Gen Alpha?

B: They're digital natives because they learn to use technology before they can read.

A: Why do Gen Alpha children use social media?

B: They use social media to connect with friends, share ideas, and have fun.

A: Why is Gen Alpha called "digital natives"?

B: Because they grow up with technology and use it naturally every day.

2. Asking and answering questions about students' own and others' digital lives

A: How often do you use technology?

B: I use it every day for school, games, and talking to friends.

A: How much screen time do you usually have each day?

B: I spend more than 8 hours using technology devices.

A: What kind of content do you watch or listen to?

B: I watch cartoons, YouTube videos, and listen to music.

3. Using polite disagreement to express your opinion

• In my opinion, ...

في رأيي، ...

In my opinion, we should limit screen time before bed.

• I think ...

أعتقد ...

I think our screen time is fine. We're digital natives!

• For example, ...

على سبيل المثال، ...

For example, I stop using my phone one hour before I sleep.

• True, but ...

صحيح، ولكن ...

True, but too much time on smartphones can be unhealthy.

• That's true, but in my opinion ...

هذا صحيح، ولكن في رأيي ...

That's true, but in my opinion we still need balance.

• I understand, but I prefer ...

أفهم، ولكن أفضل ...

I understand, but I prefer playing a quick game first to relax.

• I get it, but ...

أفهم، ولكن ...

I get it, but we should also enjoy life offline.

• I understand, but ...

أفهم، ولكن ...

I understand, but it's also how I connect with people.

Unit 2: My Digital Footprint

A Vocabulary

blink (ed)	يرمش	manage (d)	يدير / يتحكم في/ يتمكن	secure	آمن/مؤمن
clue	دليل	passive footprints	بصمات سلبية	security	أمن/سلامة
data	بيانات	password	كلمة مرور/سر	setting	إعداد
digital footprint	البصمة الرقمية	persevere (d)	يثابر/يواصل المحاولة	superhero	بطل خارق
effect	تأثير	platform	منصة رقمية	trace	بصمة/أثر
empathy	تعاطف	podcast	حلقة صوتية/بودكاست	trail	مسار/أثر
experience (d)	يمر بـ/تجربة/خبرة	privacy	خصوصية	trusted	موثوق
frustrated	محبط	protected	محمي	trustworthy	أمين/موثوق
guardian	حامٍ/حارس/وصي	secret code	كود سري	updates	تحديثات

Vocabulary Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- A small fell onto the floor when he ate the sandwich.
a) water b) breadcrumb c) nest d) liquid
- Reda likes to different coins.
a) play b) connect c) collect d) contact
- We need to find a to solve the problem.
a) clue b) clubs c) puzzle d) identity
- Don't personal pictures with anyone.
a) changing b) interchange c) exchange d) change

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

guess – privacy – secure – code – share

To stay safe online, we shouldn't(1) our personal information. So, we should always think before we post to keep our information (2) A strong password is a secret(3) that only we know. Passwords should include a group of numbers, letters, and symbols. If our password is easy to guess, our(4) might not be safe.

B Language

1 The Present Simple Passive

المضارع البسيط في المجهول

Form

Object + am(not)/is(n't)/are(n't) + P.P.

e.g. A new lesson **is explained** clearly by the teacher every morning.

e.g. Milk **isn't sold** in that small shop.

السؤال Question

a) Yes/No question:

Is/Are + object + P.P.?

e.g. **Is** a new lesson **explained** clearly by the teacher every morning?

b) Wh- question:

Q. word + is/are + object + P.P.?

e.g. How **are** modern toys usually **made** in the factory?

2 Modal Verbs Passive

الأفعال الناقصة في المجهول

Form

Object + modal verb + be + P.P.

e.g. A bigger house **will be bought** if we have more money.

Language Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Our plants by my brother every week.
a) is watering b) is watered c) watering d) waters
2. A game played every week.
a) am b) is c) are d) were
3. She a present every year by her family.
a) is given b) is giving c) gives d) give

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Kites are (fly) in the sky by the children.
2. Fish are (sell) in the market.
3. My smartphone (are) fully charged.
4. A funny movie (watch) every evening.
5. Games (play) on smart devices.
6. Canals (dig) every five years.
7. A cake is (make) for me on every birthday.

1. Asking and answering questions about "How to Stay Safe Online"

A: Why is it important to stay safe online?

B: It is important because it protects me from dangers and keeps my information safe.

A: What should you do to stay safe online?

B: I should use strong passwords, be careful with strangers, and check privacy settings.

A: What shouldn't you do to stay safe online?

B: I shouldn't share my personal data or talk to people I don't know.

A: What should your strong password include?

B: My strong password should include letters, numbers, and special symbols.

2. Giving strong advice or opinion about online habits

•It's important to ...

It's important to follow safety rules online.

•I think/believe we should ...

I believe we should always check our privacy settings.

•You should ...

You should make passwords strong.

•Always > infinitive

Always check your privacy settings.

Unit 3: Facing Challenges

admire (d)	يعجب بـ	crowd	جمهور/حشد	inspire (d)	يلهم
attitude	موقف/سلوك/تصرف	determination	عزيمة/إصرار	monorail	قطار أحادي الخط
bleed (ed)	ينزف	determined	مصمم/عازم	obstacle	عقبة/عائق
bravery	شجاعة	disappointed	خائب الأمل/محبط	patience	صبر
bump	مطب/نتوء	discouraged	محبط	stressed	متوتر/مضغوط
challenge	تحدي	display (ed)	يعرض	traffic jam	ازدحام مروري
courage	شجاعة	electric train	قطار كهربائي	transportation	مواصلات/نقل
creativity	إبداع	excitement	حماس/إثارة	tunnel	نفق
criticize (d)	ينتقد	flyover	كوبري علوي	whisper (ed)	يهمس

Vocabulary Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- In our work, we face and obstacles.
a) challenges b) flowers c) good people d) sports
- She showed great in the competition, and never gave up.
a) failure b) determination c) weakness d) impatience
- Learning new things needs
a) weakness b) success c) failure d) patience
- A takes us from one street to another above the ground.
a) flyover b) balloon c) cave d) tunnel

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

bridges – electric – solve – smoke – electricity

Egypt always works hard to (1) the problem of pollution. It tries to replace traditional vehicles with (2) ones. It also takes actions to reduce (3) coming out of factories. It also builds (4) to reduce traffic jams.

1

The Past Simple Tense

زمن الماضي البسيط

Form

التصريف الثاني للفعل + الفاعل

- e.g. • They **visited** their grandparents **last** weekend.
• We **saw** a nice movie **yesterday**.

2

The Past Continuous Tense

زمن الماضي المستمر

Form

Subject + **was/were** + **inf.** + **ing**

- e.g. • Laila **was running** when she fell.
• You **were watching** TV all day **yesterday**.

While & When

ماضي بسيط + ماضي مستمر + While

- e.g. **While** I **was watching** TV, my dad **arrived**.

ماضي مستمر + ماضي بسيط + When

- e.g. **When** my dad **arrived**, I **was doing** my homework.

Language Exercises

1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Jana doing homework when her friend phoned her.
a) was b) were c) is d) am
- While we were eating cookies, my little sister
a) shout b) shouting c) is shouting d) shouted
- While I was talking, Ahmed me.
a) was interrupting b) interrupting c) interrupted d) interrupt

2

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- While they were (**read**), their dad called them.
- Dad was exercising (**while**) my aunt came.
- The children were watching TV when the lights (**go**) out.
- The cat was running, (**while**) it saw a dog.
- It was (**snows**) outside when I went out.
- Salma was studying when she (**receive**) a phone call.
- While he was (**eat**) lunch, he remembered that he had a meeting.

1. Expressing problems and suggesting solutions

1. Expressing Problems:

- a) It's difficult to (inf.) ...
 - It's difficult to finish my homework when the TV is on.
- b) I have trouble with (v + ing/noun)
 - I have trouble with solving math problems.
- c) The problem is ...
 - The problem is that the computer isn't working properly.

2. Suggesting Solutions / Making Recommendations:

- a) It might be a good idea to (inf.) ...
 - It might be a good idea to ask the teacher for help.
- b) How about ... (v + ing/noun)?
 - How about working together with a friend to finish the project?
- c) Maybe we should (inf.) ...
 - Maybe we should go for a walk to clear our minds.
- d) I suggest (v + ing) ...
 - I suggest reading the instructions carefully before starting.

2. Talking about personal experiences

1. To be honest, ...

To be honest, I was really nervous before my first day of school.

2. I didn't expect that, but ...

The movie was in Spanish بالإسبانية. I didn't expect that, but I enjoyed it.

3. Really?

A: I met the famous writer yesterday.

B: Really? What was he like?

4. I don't expect that ...

A: Do you expect Uncle Sobhy will come tonight?

B: No, I don't expect him to come.

5. I agree ...

A: That test was incredibly difficult.

B: I agree, it was much harder than I thought it would be.

6. That's great.

A: I passed my driving test!

B: That's great! Congratulations!

Unit 4: Art and Expression

A Vocabulary

actively	بشكل فعال	engaging	جذاب	neglect (ed)	يهمل
actor	ممثل	essential	ضروري/أساسي	original	أصلي/مبتكر
actress	ممثلة	freedom	حرية	participate (d)	يشترك
appreciation	تقدير	gallery	معرض فني	peasant	فلاح/قروي/ريفي
artist	فنان	growth	نمو	promote (d)	يروج/يشجع
artwork	عمل فني	hidden	خفي/مخبا	recognition	تقدير/اعتراف
challenging	صعب	imagination	خيال	sculpture	تمثال/فن النحت
clay	صلصال/طين	incredible	لا يُصدق/مذهل	stunning	مذهل/فاتن
defined	محدد	installations	أعمال فنية تركيبية	valuable	قيّم/ثمين
deserve (d)	يستحق	match (ed)	يتماشى/يتطابق مع	vision	رؤية

Vocabulary Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- With a little, you can change simple ideas into amazing works of art.
a) copying b) listening c) imagination d) memory
- A is information that you send or receive from someone.
a) message b) data c) story d) sound
- Nahdat Misr statue became a big for Egypt.
a) monument b) symbol c) actor d) visitor
- Mahmoud Mokhtar was the first Egyptian in a long time.
a) king b) writer c) leader d) sculptor

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

inspired – imagination – sculpture – materials – book

I like art. Last Sunday, we visited the art gallery to see a new (1)..... . It was made of different (2)..... like clay and metal. The artist had shaped it with skill and (3)..... . We walked around, looked closely at every detail, and felt (4)..... . Although the artist used simple substances, it became a beautiful piece of art.

B Language

1

Connectors for CAUSE

روابط السبب

Result (النتيجة) + **because** + reason (السبب)

e.g. Sara was happy **because** she got a high score.

2

Connectors for RESULT

روابط النتيجة

Reason (السبب) +, **so** + result (النتيجة)

e.g. Yara studied hard, **so** she passed the exam.

3

Connectors for CONTRAST

روابط التناقض

A) **but**

تأتي في وسط الجملة

e.g. It was sunny, **but** I felt cold.

B) **Although**

تأتي في بداية الجملة أو وسطها

e.g. **Although** it was sunny, I felt cold.

• Manar helped her sister **although** she was busy.

Language Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. I was hungry, I ate a big sandwich.
a) because b) but c) so d) although
2. it was raining, we went shopping.
a) So b) Because c) But d) Although
3. Nancy stayed home she felt sick.
a) so b) but c) although d) because

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. I exercised daily, (**because**) I feel healthier now.
2. (**But**) he was tired, he kept studying all night.
3. They were very sleepy,, (**so**) they didn't go to bed.
4. I was bored, (**because**) I decided to read a book.
5. I ran fast, (**so**) I still missed the bus.
6. (**But**) he had no experience, he got the job.
7. I told Omar to study hard, (**so**) he didn't listen to my advice.

Expressing problems and suggesting solutions

1. Expressing Problems:

- a) It's difficult to (inf.) ...
 - It's difficult to finish my homework when the TV is on.
- b) I have trouble with (v + ing/noun) ...
 - I have trouble with solving math problems.
- c) The problem is ...
 - The problem is the computer isn't working properly.

2. Suggesting Solutions / Making Recommendations:

- a) It might be a good idea to (inf.) ...
 - It might be a good idea to ask the teacher for help.
- b) How about ... (v + ing/noun)?
 - How about working together with a friend to finish the project?
- c) Maybe we should (inf.) ...
 - Maybe we should go for a walk to clear our minds.
- d) I suggest (v + ing) ...
 - I suggest reading the instructions carefully before starting.

How to write an email about a kind of art you like most

1. What kind of art do you like most?
 - I like theater the most.
2. Why do you like this art?
 - Because it is full of talented actors and actresses.
3. What do you enjoy doing when you watch this art?
 - I enjoy watching the actors act and touch the hearts of the audience.
4. Where do you usually enjoy this art?
 - I usually enjoy it at the theater in my city.
5. How do you feel after enjoying this art?
 - I feel pleased and happy.
6. Who do you like to enjoy this art with?
 - I like to enjoy it with my family or friends.

Unit 5: Around the World

A Vocabulary

attacks	هجمات	detective	محقق	organized	منظم
celebration	احتفال	gateway	بوابة/مدخل	population	السكان
ceremony	احتفال/مراسم	glaciers	جبال جليدية	spices	توابل
charm	سحر/جاذبية	impressive	مبهر/رائع	tomb	مقبرة
collection	مجموعة	lagoon	بحيرة شاطئية	travel agency	وكالة سفر
continent	قارة	landmark	مَعلَم بارز	treasure	كنز
destination	وجهة (سفر)	marriage	زواج	wonders	عجائب

Vocabulary Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- People in Japan are polite and
a) respect b) respectful c) evil d) lazy
- Abdeen Palace is a famous in Cairo.
a) landfill b) landslide c) landmark d) landing
- Antarctica is the coldest in the world.
a) village b) town c) country d) continent
- My trip to India was because I visited Taj Mahal.
a) uncaring b) unnecessary c) unimportant d) unforgettable

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

mask – souvenirs – treasures – administrative – flowers

Egypt is a great country. It has a lot of beautiful places to visit. You can enjoy watching our great temples in Luxor and Aswan. You can buy (1)..... at Khan El-Khalili. If you go to the Grand Egyptian Museum, you will see a lot of ancient (2)..... You will see the famous (3)..... of Tutankhamun. Don't forget to visit the new (4)..... capital. It has a lot of wonderful places. Come and visit Egypt soon!

Comparatives & Superlatives

صيغة المقارنة والتفضيل

1

The comparative of adjectives

المقارنة بين شيئين

A) Short adjectives: الصفات القصيرة

e.g. Laila is taller **than** Farida.

B) Long adjectives: الصفات الطويلة

e.g. Marwan's car is **more/less** modern **than** Sherif's car.

2

The superlative of adjectives:

صيغة التفضيل العليا

A) Short adjectives: الصفات القصيرة

e.g. Rania is **the fastest** runner in the team.

B) Long adjectives: الصفات الطويلة

e.g. It's **the most** expensive car in the store.

Language Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- That was the expensive meal I've ever had on a trip!
a) much b) many c) more d) most
- The sun is than the moon.
a) larger b) more large
c) largest d) the most large
- The white couch is than the red couch.
a) softer b) more soft
c) softest d) most soft

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- This is the (beautiful) painting in the gallery.
- Hala was the (brave) explorer of all.
- That was the (interesting) lecture I've ever heard.
- This is the (cold) winter we've seen.
- That was the (difficult) challenge today.
- Women are often (good) teachers than men.
- That was the (long) journey I've ever taken.

Asking and answering questions about a visit to a place

1. What country did you visit before?

- I visited Japan.

2. When did you visit Japan?

- I visited Japan last year.

3. Where is Japan located?

- Japan is located in East Asia.

4. What was the weather like there?

- The weather was mild and sunny.

5. What did you think of the food?

- The food was very delicious and fresh.

6. How were the people there?

- The people were very polite and helpful.

7. Which continent is Japan in?

- Japan is in Asia.

8. What was your favorite part of the trip?

- My favorite part was seeing Mount Fuji.

Unit 6: Young Innovators

A Vocabulary

adapt (ed)	يتكيف	deadline	موعد نهائي	leadership	قيادة
advanced	متقدم	edition	إصدار	manufacturing	تصنيع
audience	جمهور	effective	فعال	enemy	عدو
award	جائزة	exhibition	معرض	role model	قدوة
biomedical engineer	مهندس الطب الحيوي	flexible	مرن	stuff	أشياء/أدوات/مواد
brainstorm (ed)	يقوم بعصف ذهني	identifying	تحديد	officially	رسميًا
chief engineer	المهندس الرئيسي	impact	تأثير	president	رئيس الجمهورية
civil engineering	هندسة مدنية	innovator	مبدع/مبتكر	virtual	افتراضي
complex	معقد	inspiring	ملهَم	victory	انتصار

Vocabulary Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The country's decided to hold a meeting with world leaders to discuss peace.
a) teacher
c) president
b) player
d) championship
- Students usually brainstorm together to come with a new idea.
a) in
b) out
c) up
d) from
- To something means to make it better or more effective.
a) remove
b) improve
c) move
d) aid

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

discovery – model – steps – inventions – solve

Have you ever had a great idea and wondered how to make it real? Many (1)..... start with a simple thought. To turn that thought into something real and useful takes some work and a few easy (2)..... First, you need to find a problem. Inventors look at the world and ask, "What could be better?" Once they find a problem, they start thinking of ways to (3)..... it. When they have a solid idea, they create a (4).....

B Language

1 The First Conditional

الحالة الشرطية الأولى

Form

If + **present simple**, subject + **will + inf.**

e.g. If I **see** her, I **will tell** her about the party.

Subject + **will + inf.** + if + **present simple**

e.g. We **will celebrate** if we **win** the game.

2 The Second Conditional

الحالة الشرطية الثانية

Form

If + **past simple**, subject + **would + inf.**

e.g. If I **were** a billionaire, I **would buy** a private plane.

Subject + **would + inf.** + if + **past simple**

e.g. They **would play** perfectly if they **practiced** more.

Language Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- If I enough money, I will buy a new laptop.
a) have b) had c) will have d) having
- If we late, we will miss the train.
a) arrive b) arrived c) will arrive d) arriving
- If I a millionaire, I would travel the world.
a) am b) was c) were d) will be

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- If I (have) much money, I would buy a big house.
- If you (not hurry), you will miss the bus.
- If he (not apologize), Mom will be angry.
- If you (eat) too much, you will feel sick.
- If I (be) you, I would take that job offer.
- If we (live) closer to the beach, we would go swimming every day.
- If you found a bag of gold, what (will) you do?

Asking and answering about the biggest problem in your daily life

- What is the biggest problem in your daily life?

My biggest problem is managing time.

- How did you feel before and after solving the problem?

Before solving the problem, I felt stressed and tired. After solving it, I felt relaxed and more focused.

- What helped you most to manage your time?

Making a clear plan and following it every day helped me most.

- What advice would you give to someone with the same problem?

I would tell them to make small goals, avoid wasting time, and stay organized.

"A biography about Dr. Ahmed Zewail"

Dr. Ahmed Zewail was a famous Egyptian scientist. He was born in Damanhur in 1946. He studied science in Egypt and then continued his studies in the United States. He worked at the California Institute of Technology.

In 1999, he won the Nobel Prize in Chemistry. He was the first Egyptian and Arab scientist to receive the Nobel Prize in this field. This helped scientists understand chemical reactions in a very short time. His work was very important for science and medicine.

Dr. Zewail always loved Egypt and wanted to help young people learn. Egyptians are very proud of him. He is remembered as a great scientist and a role model.

(2) Final Guiding Models (General)

Model (1)

A Listening



نص الاستماع
في نهاية الملاحق.

1 A) Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Gen Alpha are called digital
 a) heroes b) natives
 c) explorers d) pioneers
2. They often learn to use technology before they can
 a) count b) speak c) play d) read
3. Many parents are trying to screen time while encouraging useful digital skills.
 a) extend b) ignore c) limit d) eliminate
- نص الاستماع
 في نهاية الملحق.

B) Answer the following questions:

4. What are parents doing to help their children?

.....

5. Why are Gen Alpha children called digital natives?

[illegible]

6. What do Gen Alpha children use to express emotions creatively?

=====

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialog:

Sara and Nada are talking about online safety.

Sara : Do you spend much time online?

Nada : (1).....

Sara : You must keep your information secure.

Nada : (2).....?

Sara : First of all, you should have a strong password.

Nada : What should a strong password look like?

Sara : (3).....

Nada : (4).....?

Sara : You should check website settings.

Nada : Thanks for the advice.

Sara : (5)

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

Japan – landmarks – exploring – countries – city

Traveling enriches life in countless ways. Many people dream of (1) new countries and learning about different cultures. Traveling allows you to see famous (2), taste traditional foods, and hear new languages. Some travelers set foot in a (3) they've never visited before; others return to beloved places. Try visiting other (4) like Spain, Morocco, or China, and enjoy a completely different experience.

4 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

Soha always enjoyed English, but this year she faced a new challenge—grammar lessons became very difficult. She especially struggled with the passive voice. Understanding the rules felt impossible, and after failing a quiz, she felt discouraged.

"This is too hard," Soha thought. But instead of giving up, she showed determination. Her teacher noticed her struggle and said, "Take it step by step. Focus on one rule at a time. Don't be afraid to ask for help."

Soha started to work harder. She watched videos, practiced with a friend, and made grammar posters for her room. Each grammar rule felt like an obstacle, but she didn't stop.

It took time, but Soha slowly began to improve. She passed her next quiz and felt proud of herself. "I'm not perfect yet, but I'm trying," she said.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Which grammar topic did Soha struggle with the most?
a) Tenses. b) Passive voice. c) Active voice. d) Adjectives.
- Her teacher advised her to
a) give up b) skip lessons
c) focus on one rule at a time d) avoid asking for help

B) Answer the following questions:

- What is the main idea of the passage?
- Name three strategies Soha used to improve her grammar.
- How did Soha feel after passing the quiz?
- Do you think we must show determination even if we face difficulties? Why?
.....

D Vocabulary and Structure

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Technology has an impact on our daily lives. A synonym of "impact" is
a) reason b) effect c) affect d) hero

2. Dad going to Alexandria.
a) made b) helped c) suggested d) visited
3. Most parents want their kids to learn useful digital
a) grammar b) keyboards c) screens d) skills
4. When Amal felt like giving up, she remembered her parents' words and decided to
a) go home b) persevere c) hide d) cry
5. If I a cell phone, I would call my mom.
a) have b) has c) had d) having
6. We our grandmother in the village next week.
a) visit b) visited c) are visiting d) was visiting

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Sara didn't study (because) she failed the test.
2. Rules of sanitation (must follow).
3. Yesterday, I (watch) a scary movie.
4. Wedding receptions are always (prepare) by my aunt.

7 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets:

1. Rana ran fast, so she won the race. (because)
.....
2. While I was watching the movie, I fell asleep. (During)
.....
3. People in Japan speak Japanese. (Japanese ...)
.....

E The Story

8 A) Answer the following questions: (The Little Inventor)

1. What problems did Amal face as the fair day come closer?
2. What message did Amal's robot give at the fair?

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3. When Amal remembered her parents' words, she decided to
a) reserve b) persevere c) give up d) leave school
4. Amal was a girl living in a village.
a) curious b) careful c) scary d) shy

F Writing

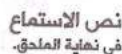
9 Write an email of (90 - 100) words to your friend Yara to tell her how to stay safe online. Your name is Menna.

.....

.....

.....

A



1

1. Mahmoud Mokhtar was an Egyptian

B)

4. What did Mahmoud Mokhtar mix ancient Egyptian art with?

B

2

Sara and Nada are talking about Nada's visit to Japan.

Sara : Have you ever visited a foreign country?

Nada : (1).....

Sara : Which country did you visit?

Nada : (2).....

Sara : (3).....?

Nada : I enjoyed Tokyo the most.

Sara : (4).....?

Nada : Mainly because people living there are polite and organized.

Sara : That sounds really cool! Maybe next year we can go somewhere together!

Nada : (5).....

C

3

village – Lagoon – capital – destinations – glaciers

Have you ever visited Reykjavik? It's one of the most popular tourist

4 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

Everything you do online leaves a trace—like a footprint. This includes the websites you visit and the things you post. Staying safe online is very important! Here are some simple tips to help you protect your privacy and keep your information safe: First, don't share personal information—like your full name, address, phone number, or school—unless your parents say it's okay. Second, always keep your passwords secret, except from your parents. Third, don't talk to strangers online or meet them in real life. Fourth, don't open links or downloads without asking a grown-up first—some might have viruses. Fifth, be kind online—don't send mean messages, and tell a grown-up if someone else is mean to you. Finally, tell a parent or teacher if you feel worried or see something strange online.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. You should only share your personal details if
a) a friend asks b) your parents say it's okay
c) it's for fun d) you feel like it
2. You should avoid talking to
a) your classmates b) strangers online
c) friends from school d) family members

B) Answer the following questions:

3. What is the text about?
.....
4. Who should you tell your password to, and why?
.....
5. What might happen if you download something without asking a grown-up?
.....
6. Summarize the text in about 3 sentences.
.....

D Vocabulary and Structure

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The coach led our team to victory. "Victory" is an antonym of
a) triumph b) success c) defeat d) celebration
2. Everything you do online leaves a trace. A synonym of "trace" is
a) footprint b) grace c) brace d) secret
3. Traffic jams make people feel
a) happy b) curious c) stressed d) scary

4. is anything an artist makes to express their ideas and emotions.
 a) Artwork b) Climate c) Nature d) Culture
5. If I a millionaire, I would live in a big palace.
 a) am b) is c) are d) were
6. Omar played well, he lost the match.
 a) But b) Because c) Although d) So

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Mount Fuji is (much) impressive than any mountain I've visited.
2. Look, Manal (draw) a fantastic picture!
3. (Are) English spoken all over the world?
4. While I (walk) in the forest, I saw a large snake.

7 Find the mistake in the following sentences and correct it:

1. Salma walks to school now. (.....)
2. If I were a footballer, I will buy an expensive car. (.....)
3. A lot of trees plant in our streets. (.....)

E The Story

8 A) Answer the following questions: (*The Adventure of the Hidden Island*)

1. What did the friends find when they reached the hidden island?

.....

2. How did Faris lead the group on the hidden island?

.....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3. Malik enjoyed the scenery as they sailed to the island.
 a) singing b) eating c) drawing d) sleeping
4. said "We must respect nature and each other".
 a) Faris b) Malik c) Samy d) Hany

F Writing

9 Write a paragraph of (90 - 100) words on:

"Mahmoud Mokhtar"

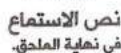
.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



1 A) Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1.** Egypt is working to solve the problem of traffic
 a) jams b) trams
 c) bus d) train
- 2.** The electric train and the give people more ways to travel.
 a) cars b) monorail c) ferries d) roads
- 3.** These plans make the roads
 a) good b) better c) best d) well
- نص الاستماع
 في نهاية الملحق.

B) Answer the following questions:

4. What are the projects that help cars move faster?
.....
5. What did Egypt also make?
.....
6. Where were Tahya Misr Bridge and 6th of October Bridge built?

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialog:

Salma and Hoda are talking about art.

Salma : Have you ever been to an art gallery?

Hoda : (1)

Salma : What did you see there?

Hoda : I saw many different kinds of artwork.

Salma : (2)

Hoda : Artwork is anything an artist makes to express their ideas and emotions, like sculptures.

Salma : (3).....?

Hoda : They can be made from different materials, like clay or plastic.

Salma: That sounds really interesting! Do you know any famous sculptors?

Hoda : (4).....

Salma : What famous statue did Mahmoud Mokhtar sculpt?

Hoda : (5).....

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

charm – painting – blue – north – artwork

Last week, I visited a great city in Morocco. This city is called Chefchaouen. Chefchaouen is a small city in the (1)..... of Morocco, high in the mountains. It's famous for its (2)..... streets and houses. Walking there feels like being inside a (3)..... . The color blue was believed to bring peace and happiness. It's a special place full of (4)..... and culture.

4 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

Have you ever failed at something so miserably that the thought of trying to do it again was the last thing on your mind?

If your answer is yes, then you should understand that you are not a robot. Unlike robots, we human beings have feelings, emotions, and dreams. What happens when you fail despite all your hard work? Do you stay down and accept defeat or do you get up again?

Thomas Edison is an example of perseverance for trying more than 1,000 times to invent the light bulb. If you are reading this with the lights on in your room, you will realize the importance of his success. When asked why he kept going despite hundreds of failures, he just said that they had not been failures, they were hundreds of attempts towards creating the light bulb.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Thomas Edison is an example of
a) failure b) perseverance c) defeat d) honesty
2. An antonym of defeat is
a) success b) failure c) falling d) walking

B) Answer the following questions:

3. What is the text about?
4. What did Thomas Edison say?
5. Do robots have emotions?
6. What did Edison invent?

D Vocabulary and Structure

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Giving gifts during Eid is an important in many countries.
a) tradition b) festival c) prize d) cup
2. This price of a room in this hotel breakfast.
a) consists b) includes c) makes d) cooks

3. Zewail young people to achieve success.
 a) aspired b) inspired c) discouraged d) criticized
4. An antonym of private is
 a) usual b) famous c) public d) special
5. While I my lessons, the lights went out.
 a) study b) am studying c) was studying d) studied
6. Wood to make tables and chairs.
 a) use b) is used c) is using d) used

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Our house is big, but my uncle's house is (biggest).
 2. If I had a million dollars, I (will) travel the world.
 3. Mr. Mesbah (is post) a lot of online material next week.
 4. While I (watch) the news, I heard about the accident.

7 Find the mistake in the following sentences and correct it:

1. If I have a smartphone, I would chat with my friends. (.....)
 2. Omar lost his money because he was angry. (.....)
 3. Shorouk checks her test results now. (.....)
 4. Teens not must post their secrets online. (.....)

E The Story

8 A) Answer the following questions: (The Adventure of the Hidden Island)

1. What did the friends agree on as they prepared to leave the island?
 2. How did the friends inspire other children back in the village?

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3. Hany said that leadership is about caring for others and helping them
 a) disappear b) shine c) cry d) hide
4. From that day, the four friends became known as "the island.....".
 a) teachers b) chiefs c) explorers d) builders

F Writing

9 Write an email of (90 - 100) words to your friend Salma to tell her about Gen Alpha. Your name is Shorouk.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

نص الاستماع
في نهاية الملحق.

1 A) Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1.** Everything you post becomes part of your digital
a) camera **b)** laptop
c) footprint **d)** robot
- 2.** Once something is online, it's difficult to
a) remove **b)** post **c)** share **d)** see
- 3.** Thinking carefully before you post is
a) important **b)** not important **c)** silly **d)** safe

B) Answer the following questions:

4. Who can see your photos, comments, and personal information?
5. What might happen if you share something bad?
6. Why is it important to think carefully before you post anything on the internet?

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialog:

A tour guide is talking to a tourist.

Tour guide: Welcome to the museum!

Tourist : (1).....?

Tour guide : It was made by an artist called Khaled Mansour.

Tourist : (2)

Tour guide : He used materials like fabric and metal to make it.

Tourist : Is he a famous artist?

Tour guide: (3)

Tourist : Are there famous artists in Egypt?

Tour guide: (4)

Tourist : Who is a famous artist in Egypt?

Tour guide: (5)

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

connect – smartphones – natives – trends – avoid

Gen Alpha refers to children born around 2010. They are true digital (1)..... because they grow up using technology from a very young age. They follow the latest (2)....., like watching short videos, using emojis, and playing online games. They spend a lot of time on their (3)....., tablets, and computers. This makes them (4)..... with others and learn new things.

4 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

Yahia liked to paint. But one day in art class, he felt sad. His teacher looked at his painting and said he was not good at perspective. That meant things in his painting didn't look like they were far away. Yahia felt bad because he had worked hard. "Maybe I'm not a good painter," he thought. He wanted to give up. But then he remembered what his grandpa used to say: "Everyone starts small." Yahia knew he had to try again. He went to the library and got a book about perspective. He started to draw simple things like boxes and balls. It was hard, and he made many mistakes. After a week of trying, he started to understand. He picked up his brush again. He was not trying to be perfect, just better. His teacher saw his new work. She was happy. "This is great, Yahia," she said. Yahia smiled. He felt good. He learned that being good at something isn't just about talent. It's about being brave enough to learn, strong enough to keep trying, and ready to face what is hard.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. lessons became a new challenge for Yahia.
a) Arabic b) Art c) Grammar d) Science
2. and hard work make a great person.
a) Impatience b) Laziness c) Talent d) Greed

B) Answer the following questions:

3. What is the text about?
4. How did Yahia show determination?
5. How did Yahia feel after learning perspective?
6. What do we learn from Yahia's experience?

D Vocabulary and Structure

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. In 1973, we defeated our and won the war thanks to brave soldiers like Ahmed Idris.
a) friends b) relatives c) enemies d) neighbors
2. Modern means of transportation help people to get
a) round b) around c) sick d) tired
3. We add the suffix to the verb "create" after deleting "e" to get a noun.
a) - ion b) - ity c) - ation d) - ly
4. To means to encourage someone to do something.
a) aspire b) inspire c) discourage d) neglect

5. If Ali had a choice, he the large TV screen.
 a) would choose b) is choosing c) will choose d) chooses
6. My dad to Canada in 2023.
 a) will travel b) travels c) is traveling d) traveled

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. The lion is the (much) dangerous animal.
 2. If I (have) enough time, I would help you with your homework.
 3. Linda was sad (so) she lost her favorite toy.
 4. I didn't hear the doorbell because I (watch) TV.

7 Rewrite the following sentences using words in brackets:

1. Of the three girls, Nada is the tallest. (taller)

 2. Magdy doesn't have a car, so he doesn't drive to work. (If)

 3. Hany plays football every day. (now)

 4. Gen Alpha children watch videos. (Videos ...)

E The Story

8 A) Answer the following questions: (*The Little Inventor*)

1. Who helped Amal when she felt frustrated?
 2. How did Amal inspire others to follow their dreams?

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3. The children who once laughed at Amal now her hard work and creativity.
 a) ignored b) questioned c) admired d) criticized
4. The teacher told Amal that she showed determination and
 a) a bad attitude b) sadness c) great humor d) honesty

F Writing

9 Write a paragraph of (90 - 100) words on:

"Digital footprints"

.....

Model (5)

A Listening



نص الاستماع
في نهاية الملحق.

1 A) Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1.** Omar went on a trip to Cairo last
a) Sunday **b)** Monday
c) Tuesday **d)** Friday
- 2.** The Citadel is one of the most buildings.
a) useful **b)** ancient **c)** impressed **d)** impressive
- 3.** The Citadel was built in ,
a) 1176 **b)** 1167 **c)** 1967 **d)** 1973

B) Answer the following questions:

- Who was the Citadel built by?
.....
- Why was the Citadel built?
.....
- What did Omar learn about?
.....

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialog:

Dad and Yara are talking about designing a solar-powered water pump.

Dad: What are you doing, Yara?

Yara: (1).....

Dad: Great! Who gave you the idea?

Yara: (2).....

Dad: (3).....7

Yara: Yes, I have the materials.

Dad: (4).....7

Yara: Yes, I had some challenges, but my teacher helped me overcome them.

Dad: When will you finish the project?

Yara: (5).....

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

landscape – souvenirs – impressive – landmark – ancient

Tom visited a lot of places in Egypt. The first (1)..... he visited was the Giza Pyramids. They were so (2).....! The history of this (3)..... site is amazing. The best part of his trip was exploring the Khan El-Khalili market and buying some (4)..... and traditional handicrafts to take home.

4 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

Ahmed Zewail was one of the most important scientists in modern history. He was born in Damanhour in 1946 and grew up in Alexandria. From a young age, he loved learning and showed great interest in science. He studied at Alexandria University. Zewail worked very hard and became a professor of chemistry at the California Institute of Technology. His most famous discovery was the femtosecond. With this new science discovery, he was able to study chemical reactions in an extremely short time, measured in femtoseconds (a femtosecond is one millionth of a billionth of a second!). This invention changed the world of chemistry and opened the door for new scientific research. Because of this great achievement, Ahmed Zewail won the Nobel Prize in Chemistry in 1999. He was the first Egyptian and Arab scientist to receive the Nobel Prize in this field. This made all Egyptians proud. Ahmed Zewail was not only a scientist, but also a teacher and role model. He believed in the power of education and always advised young people to work hard, read more, and never give up. He wanted Egyptian youth to trust themselves and to know that they can be successful like him.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Where was Ahmed Zewail born?
a) Cairo. b) Alexandria. c) Damanhur. d) Giza.
2. Which university in Egypt did he attend?
a) Cairo University. b) Alexandria University.
c) Ain Shams University. d) Zewail City.

B) Answer the following questions:

3. What is the text about?
4. What is a femtosecond?
5. Where did Ahmed Zewail grow up in Egypt?
6. Why is the Nobel Prize he won in 1999 significant for Egyptians?

D Vocabulary and Structure

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. For many Egyptians, the memory of Egypt's in the October War became a source of national pride.
a) defeat b) victory c) withdrawal d) factory
2. A is a cover for the face, often used in celebrations, shows, or for protection.
a) hat b) mask c) glove d) shoe
3. We add the suffix to the noun "mystery", after removing the "y", to get an adjective.
a) - ious b) - ity c) - ation d) - ful

4. challenges helps you grow.

- a) Facing b) Making c) Avoiding d) Reading

5. My English is good, but my sister's English is

- a) well b) best c) better d) worse

6. While I the internet, I found some great websites.

- a) surf b) surfs c) is surfing d) was surfing

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. I didn't go out (so) it was raining heavily.

2. What (would) happen if it rains tomorrow?

3. I'm (clean) the house now.

4. Salma kept on working hard (but) she had a lot of challenges.

7 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets:

1. Hany is taller than Kamal. (shorter)

2. Mustafa plays tennis every day. (now)

3. Ali is watching a movie now. (yesterday)

4. You should check website settings. (Website settings ...)

E The Story

8 A) Answer the following questions: (The Little Inventor)

1. What did all the children do on the day of the fair?
2. In your opinion, how did Amal use digital tools responsibly?

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3. Yara helped her friend Amal by giving her

- a) tools b) books c) money d) ideas

4. Amal inspired other girls to their dreams.

- a) make b) have c) follow d) attend

F Writing

9 Write a paragraph of (90 - 100) words on:

"How to overcome challenges"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Model (6)

A Listening

1 A) Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. wanted to grow a small vegetable garden.

a) Amina	b) Soha
c) Judy	d) Salma
2. At first, the soil in her yard was

a) dry	b) wet
c) fertile	d) cold
3. After a few, small green leaves began to appear.

a) days	b) weeks
c) years	d) months



نص الاستماع
في نهاية الملحق.

B) Answer the following questions:

4. What did Judy want to do?
.....
5. What problem did Judy face first?
.....
6. What lesson did Judy learn in the end?
.....

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialog:

Samy is asking Omar about his weekend plans.

Samy: What are you going to do this weekend?

Omar: (1)

Samy: That sounds fun! Where will you go camping?

Omar: (2)

Samy: (3) ..?

Omar: We will leave early in the morning.

Samy: Do you like sleeping in a tent?

Omar: (4)

Samy: (5) ..?

Omar: No, it is my first time.

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

continent – capital – amazing – explore – population

Cairo is one of the most (1)..... and ancient cities in Africa. It is the (2)..... of Egypt. The (3)..... of Cairo is about 11 million people. Every year, tourists come to Egypt to (4)..... and enjoy its famous historic places. They say that Cairo is a fantastic place to visit.

4 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

Exploring the world can lead to amazing new things. Last summer, Mr. Ali's family went on a trip to the mountains. It was hard work, but they saw some cool old things and learned about how the people there live. The younger brother really wanted to see the hidden caves, hoping to find some old treasure. They also went to a big city. It was a busy place with lots of new ideas. They saw a display of helpful new tools, like ones with special parts that could sense when people moved, to help those who couldn't move very well. People were friendly. They gave Mr. Ali's family some free gifts. Although the city was new and modern, it still felt old and special in a good way. They learned that many countries are helping each other with new medical studies, which is a great thing for the future. Their trip showed them how different parts of the country mix the past with new ideas.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. People in the big city gave the family
a) money b) presents c) prizes d) ideas
2. The younger brother really hoped to see
a) gifts b) tools c) friends d) treasure

B) Answer the following questions:

3. What is the text about?
4. What did they see in the city?
5. What was the city like?
6. Where did the family go?

D Vocabulary and Structure

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. He always enjoys video games during his free time.
a) to play b) plays c) playing d) played
2. Where you play your last match?
a) does b) did c) was d) were

3. The opposite of "expensive" is
 a) cheap b) hard c) costly d) tall
4. Our red kite is than the blue kite in the sky.
 a) big b) bigger c) the biggest d) more big
5. The head of the team that the whole team would get a bonus.
 a) hid b) whispered c) guessed d) announced
6. Ahmed Zewail's of the femtosecond helped scientists make new medicines for sick people.
 a) invention b) discovery c) exploration d) journey

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. He always (run) very fast in the race.
2. Hadeer (do) her homework at the moment.
3. If Dalia lived on a farm, she (ride) a horse every single day.
4. Amr is (good) in volleyball than Solyman.

7 Find the mistake in the following sentences and correct it:

1. Mom was cooking dinner when dad arrives. (.....)
2. He helps his dad yesterday evening. (.....)
3. Ali got good marks in the English test so he studied hard. (.....)
4. If you balance your diet, you would be healthy. (.....)

E The Story

8 A) Answer the following questions:

1. After reading the story *The Adventure of the Hidden Island*, what important lesson did the children share with the village?
2. In *The Little Inventor*, how do you think Amal used digital tools responsibly?

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3. In *The Adventure of the Hidden Island*, the children sailed back home under the sky.
 a) dark b) gray c) cloudy d) pink
4. In *The Little Inventor*, Yara showed when Amal felt frustrated.
 a) sadness b) empathy c) anger d) happiness

F Writing

9 Write a paragraph of (90 - 100) words on:

"Ahmed Zewail"

.....

.....

.....

Model (7)

A Listening

1 A) Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. was a curious girl in a colorful village.

a) Hend

b) Soha

c) Judy

d) Salma

2. Hend loved to things.

a) color

b) fix

c) break

d) build

3. Hend's was full of old things.

a) bag

b) cupboard

c) room

d) car

B) Answer the following questions:

4. Where did Hend live?

.....

5. What was in Hend's room?

.....

6. What did the other students say to Hend?

.....

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialog:

Salma is asking Nadia about the time she spends on screens.

Salma : How many hours do you spend on screen every day?

Nadia : (1).....

Salma : Don't you think that's too much?

Nadia : (2).....

Salma : I know it is useful to search for the latest news, but I still think it's too much.

Nadia : (3).....?

Salma : You should try to limit the time you spend on screens.

Nadia : (4).....?

Salma : You can try outdoor activities or sports.

Nadia : Doing sports is an excellent idea. Thanks for your advice.

Salma : (5).....



نص الاستماع
في نهاية الملحق.

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

footprint – privacy – secure – password – share

Do you know what a footprint is? Everything you post online becomes part of your digital (1) _____, so you should keep your (2) _____ secret to (3) _____ your accounts. Also, you should not (4) _____ personal information to stay safe online.

4 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

Facing challenges helps us become stronger and more confident. When we solve problems, we learn new skills. Each challenge teaches us something helpful about ourselves and the world around us. Even when things feel hard, not giving up makes us braver. When we keep trying, we grow our ability to adapt and stay calm under pressure. Challenges make us think harder and find creative solutions. We also learn to ask for help from others when needed. In the end, facing challenges helps us prepare better for the future. The more we practice, the better we become at handling new and unknown situations with courage and knowledge.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- According to the passage, what happens when we solve problems?
a) We make new friends. b) We learn new skills.
c) We feel bored. d) We go on holiday.
- When things get hard, what does the passage say we should do?
a) Give up. b) Keep trying.
c) Yell at others. d) Avoid them.

B) Answer the following questions:

- What is the text about?
- What is a synonym of the underlined word "calm"?
- What happens when we practice more?
- What is one thing facing challenges teaches us, according to the passage?

D Vocabulary and Structure

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Those students have some important things common.
a) of b) for c) to d) in
- Where your phone, Ahmed?
a) does b) did c) is d) were
- We planned a surprise birthday party for our mom.
a) angrily b) bravely c) secretly d) sadly

4. This movie is than the one I saw yesterday.
 a) more interesting b) most interesting
 c) interesting d) not interesting
5. Ms. Fatima all the students to work harder and do well.
 a) forgot b) required c) aspired d) inspired
6. I need to my work with my family life.
 a) balance b) control c) mix d) save

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. The cell phone was too expensive (because) I couldn't buy it.
 2. Salma (help) her mom at the moment.
 3. If topics are (repeating), they become boring.
 4. Ibrahim is (helpful) than his brother Yasseen.

7 Find the mistake in the following sentences and correct it:

1. Samy is the tall boy in his class. (.....)
 2. They see beautiful scenery as they drove through the country. (.....)
 3. Amira got the full mark in English so she studied hard. (.....)
 4. If you went on a diet, you will lose weight. (.....)

E The Story

8 A) Answer the following questions:

1. After reading the story *The Adventure of the Hidden Island*, what did the children find one sunny morning?.....
 2. What do you think changed the children's opinions of Amal? (The Little Inventor).....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3. Referring to the story of *The Adventure of the Hidden Island*, Malik enjoyed the scenery as they sailed to the island.
 a) singing b) eating c) drawing d) sleeping
4. In *The Little Inventor*, the children who once laughed at Amal now her hard work and creativity.
 a) criticized b) admired c) ignored d) questioned

F Writing

9 Write a paragraph of (90 - 100) words on:

"A short story you read"

.....

Listening

نص الاستماع
في نهاية الملحق.

- B) Answer the following questions:**

- ## B Language Functions

Hoda and Amal are talking about art.

Amal : (1).....

Amal : (2)

Amal : (3).....

Amal : Yes, and his best work is Al-Khamaseen.

Amal : Yes, he did. He won a prize in Paris.

Amal : Yes, his art was special because he mixed Egyptian and European styles.

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

Jordan – places – visit – capital – destination

Travel has many benefits. Many people like to (1)..... new areas and learn about different traditions. Traveling lets you see popular (2)....., taste traditional foods, and hear new languages. Some travelers reach a (3)..... they've never been to before; others come back to beloved places. Try visiting amazing countries like (4)....., Morocco, or China, and enjoy a completely different experience.

4 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

Nikola Tesla was a very smart inventor. He was born a long time ago in 1856. He was born in Croatia. He was excellent in math. He was an engineer. He is best known for helping create the electricity we use today, called AC. It was better than other types because it could travel far to power whole cities. Tesla also invented things like the Tesla coil and worked on early radios. He was ahead of his time. Even though he didn't die rich, his ideas are everywhere, from the power lines that bring us electricity, to how we send messages without wires.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Nicola Tesla is an example of

- a) failure b) success c) dishonesty d) defeat

2. Tesla died

- a) poor b) rich c) lazy d) stupid

B) Answer the following questions:

3. When was Tesla born?

4. What did Nicola Tesla make?

5. What was Tesla's job?

6. Do you think Tesla was helpful for the world? Why/Why not?

D Vocabulary and Structure

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. When you visit a website, you leave a

- a) skill b) community c) footprint d) connection

2. One should be when he shares something online.

- a) digital b) fun c) honest d) bad

3. Always think before you post online to protect your
 a) digital footprint b) point of view c) creativity d) schedule
4. If Zewail were alive today, he would be proud a lot of young inventors.
 a) to b) on c) of d) with
5. While I was reading a book, Aya
 a) cook b) is cooking
 c) cooking d) was cooking
6. I my grandfather next Monday.
 a) visit b) visiting c) am visiting d) visited
- 6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:**
1. I'm bad at drawing, but my brother is even (bad).
 2. Hany ran fast, (so) he was late for school.
 3. I (watch) a movie now.
 4. If she is ready, she (win) the prize.
- 7 Rewrite the following sentences using the word (s) in brackets:**
1. I make my bed every day. (now)

 2. My friend writes a story. (written)

 3. While I was driving my car, I met my friend. (When)

E The Story

- 8 A) Answer the following questions: (The Little Inventor)**
1. What invention did Amal make?
 2. Who supported Amal?
- B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**
3. Before Amal entered the fair, she was
 a) nervous b) glad c) upset d) disappointing
4. Amal lived in a
 a) town b) village c) city d) palace

F Writing

- 9 Write a paragraph of (90 - 100) words on:**

"The River Nile"

.....

Model (9)

A

Listening

نص الاستماع
في نهاية الملدق.

1 A) Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1.** Amr went on a trip with his
a) father **b)** mother
c) family **d)** friends
- 2.** is a famous landmark.
a) The club **b)** The bus
c) The Cairo Tower **d)** The photos
- 3.** Amr met a lot of near the Pyramids.
a) children **b)** actors **c)** teachers **d)** tourists

B) Answer the following questions:

4. Name two landmarks Amr visited.

=====

5. When did Amr go back home?

=====

- ### 6. What did Amr learn about?

.....

B

Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialog:

Salma and Hoda are talking about a problem with Hoda's account.

Salma : Hello, Hoda. You look a bit sad.

Hoda : Hi Salma. I have a problem with my account.

Sara : (1).....?

Salma : It was hacked yesterday.

Hoda : (2)

Salma : No, it didn't have a strong password.

Hoda :Did you tell anyone about it?

Salma : (3)

Hoda :What did he tell you?

Salma : (4)

Hoda : (5)

3. Your includes posts you choose to share.

- a) digital footprint b) friendship c) creative d) schedule

4. Showing means understanding how others feel.

- a) empathy b) distraction c) integrity d) background

5. While I was picking an apple, I an insect.

- a) notice b) is noticing c) noticed d) noticing

6. He to the USA tomorrow.

- a) fly b) flying c) is flying d) flew

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. My brother works (hard) than me.

2. Gamila was hungry (but) she had a big meal.

3. Look! They (read) in the library.

4. If they had received the ticket, they (go) to the match.

7 Rewrite the following sentences using the word (s) in brackets:

1. I won't go out because I will be busy. (If)

..... (Cars)

2. The mechanic fixes cars. (Cars)

.....

3. When Anas fell off his bike, he was playing with his friends. (While)

.....

E The Story

8 A) Answer the following questions: (The Hidden Island)

1. What did the explorers find on the hidden island?

2. How did the island explorers' adventure affect the village children?

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3. They packed food, water, notebooks, and a/an

- a) ruler b) eraser c) pencil case d) compass

4. Hany thought that means caring for others and helping them shine.

- a) spaceship b) leadership c) boss d) selfishness

F Writing

9 Write a paragraph of (90 - 100) words on:

"A trip you went on"

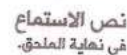
.....
.....

A

Listening

1 A) Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Nahdat Misr statue is a symbol of history and
 a) geography b) agriculture
 c) sport d) language
2. Mahmoud Mokhtar was a
 a) sculptor b) musician
 c) player d) reader
3. Nahdat Misr statue was completed after
 a) 1891 b) 1981 c) 1919 d) 1934



B) Answer the following questions:

4. What does the sculpture show?

.....

5. Where is Mahmoud Mokhtar from?

.....

6. Why did Mahmoud Mokhtar write articles?

.....

B

Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialog:

Samira tells Ramy about her math problem.

Ramy : Did you have any challenges this year?

Samira : (1).....

Ramy : (2).....?

Samira : Because I can't solve some problems.

Ramy : (3).....?

Samira : Yes, I asked my math teacher for help.

Ramy : How did he help you?

Samira : (4).....

Ramy : Was this helpful for you?

Samira : (5).....

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

mountain – houses – city – destinations – painting

Have you ever visited Chefchaouen? It's one of the most popular tourist (1)..... . Chefchaouen is a (2)..... in Morocco. From here, you can see blue (3)..... and streets. Walking there feels like being inside a (4)..... .

4 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

Cairo is one of the busiest cities in the world, and traffic is a serious problem. Every day, thousands of cars, buses, and motorcycles fill the streets. This causes long delays, air pollution, and stress for drivers. Many people spend hours traveling short distances. The main reasons are too many vehicles, poor parking, and lack of traffic rules being followed. To solve this problem, the government can improve public transportation, such as the metros and buses, so fewer people need cars. Building more bridges and roads will also help reduce traffic jams. People should also follow traffic laws and use bicycles or walk when possible. With cooperation, Cairo can have safer, faster, and cleaner transportation.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The main cause of traffic problems in Cairo is
a) few cars b) too many vehicles c) empty roads d) clean air
- can help reduce traffic jams in Cairo.
a) Building more parks b) Using more private cars
c) Building more bridges and roads d) Closing the metro

B) Answer the following questions:

- How does traffic in Cairo affect people's daily lives?
- What are two reasons for the traffic problems in Cairo?
- How can public transportation help reduce traffic?
- Summarize the text in 3 sentences.

D Vocabulary and Structure

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- My account is The password has symbols, numbers, and letters.
a) kidnapped b) protected c) hacked d) insecure
- Everything you do online leaves a trace. A synonym of "trace" is
a) footprint b) website c) symbol d) secret

3. We a lot of time every day because of traffic jams.
a) follow b) ride c) waste d) play
4. Biomedical engineers use tools like to help patients.
a) technology b) brushes c) sculptors d) sensors
5. I have a test, I can't watch the match.
a) because b) so c) and d) if
6. Omar played well, he lost the match.
a) but b) because c) when d) so

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Rana is (much) intelligent than any girl I've met before.
2. Maha (buy) a smart device at the moment.
3. (Is) cats fed fish?
4. While I was running, I (see) a small dog.

7 Find the mistake in the following sentences and correct it:

1. Listen! the bell rings. (.....)
2. If I were a student, I will buy GEM. (.....)
3. The book print by Nahdet Misr. (.....)

E The Story

8 A) Answer the following questions: (The Hidden Island)

1. How did the friends inspire other children back in the village?
2. What important lesson did the friends share?

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3. As the sun set, the children gathered to leave the island, agreeing that their grew stronger.
a) boat b) hunger c) friendship d) map
4. Hany said that leadership is about caring for others and helping them
a) disappear b) shine c) cry d) hide

F Writing

9 Write a paragraph of (90 - 100) words on:

"A man of impact"

.....

.....

.....

.....



Final Guiding Models (Al-Azhar)

Model (1)

A Listening



نص الاستماع
في نهاية الملحق.

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Omar sometimes watches
a) movies b) videos c) series d) matches
- His parents advise him to screen time.
a) share b) increase c) make d) limit

B Language Functions

2 Supply the missing parts in the following dialog:

Ahmed is asking Ali about his visit to the museum.

Ahmed: How are you, Ali?

Ali : I'm fine, thank you.

Ahmed: Where did you go last Friday?

Ali : (1).....

Ahmed: (2).....?

Ali : I went with my family.

Ahmed: What did you see there?

Ali : (3).....

C Vocabulary and Structure

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- A is a road that passes over another road on a bridge.
a) tunnel b) flyover c) house d) map
- Use a strong to protect your social media accounts.
a) key b) keyboard c) screen d) password
- Salma is than Aya.
a) tall b) taller c) as tall d) tallest
- Ramy TV now.
a) watch b) watches c) is watching d) watched
- Cars in Japan.
a) make b) makes c) made d) are made

D Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

Reading is a fun way to learn and grow. It helps kids learn new words, understand stories, and use their imagination. When children read, they develop focus and memory skills. Reading with someone, like a parent or teacher, can make them feel loved and connected. Books also teach children about different feelings and how others think. Whether it's a picture book or a short story, reading can help children feel calm and happy.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. Name two things that reading helps children with, according to the passage.
2. How can books help children understand other people's feelings?
.....
3. Do you like reading? Why?

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4. Reading with someone can make children feel
a) confused b) alone c) loved d) bored
5. Books can teach children about
a) feelings and how others think b) video games only
c) sports rules d) only facts and dates

E Vocabulary and Structure

5 Read and correct the underlined word(s):

1. Nader travel to America last Friday. (.....)
2. When dad arrived home, mom is cooking lunch. (.....)
3. Cairo is the big city in Egypt. (.....)
4. The camera is use to take photos. (.....)

F Writing

6 Write a paragraph of five (5) sentences on:

"Ahmed Zewail"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Model (2)

A Listening



نص الاستماع
في نهاية الملحق.

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Mahmoud Mokhtar was a famous
a) actor b) singer c) artist d) teacher
2. He made a famous called Nahdat Misr.
a) singer b) actor c) sculptor d) statue

B Language Functions

2 Supply the missing parts in the following dialog:

Ali and Yasser are talking about the Citadel.

Ali : (1).....?

Yasser : Salah El Din Al-Ayoubi built the Citadel.

Ali : (2).....?

Yasser : I learned about it in history.

Ali : How about going there one day?

Yasser : (3).....

C Vocabulary and Structure

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Ahmed Idris was a Nubian soldier in the Egyptian army.
a) brave b) tall c) fast d) quiet
2. An antonym of "complex" is
a) complicated b) simple c) large d) small
3. The plane is than the train.
a) fast b) faster c) as fast d) fastest
4. While I for the bus, I surfed the internet.
a) wait b) waited c) is waiting d) was waiting
5. I tried to carry the bag, it was too heavy.
a) so b) but c) then d) because

D Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

Digital devices are tools like tablets, computers, and phones that help us in many ways. We can learn new things, play games, watch videos, and talk to friends and family with them. These tools can be fun and help us think and be creative. But it is important to use them in balance. Too much screen time can make us tired, hurt our eyes, or distract us from other important activities like playing outside or talking with people. It's best to use digital devices in ways that help us learn and still stay healthy.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. Why is it important to not use digital devices all the time?
2. What can happen if we use screens too much?
3. How can using digital devices help us learn and stay healthy?

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4. Digital devices include
a) only books b) tablets, computers, and phones
c) only pencils d) only toys
5. Too much screen time can make us
a) tall b) short c) tired d) happy

E Vocabulary and Structure

5 Read and correct the underlined word(s):

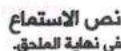
1. While I **make** popcorn, the gas went out. (.....)
2. The cheetah is the **fast** animal. (.....)
3. Yasmeen failed the exam **because** she was sad. (.....)
4. Poor people **should help** by the rich. (.....)

F Writing

6 Write a paragraph of five (5) sentences on:

“How to overcome challenges”

[illegible]



1. Omar Sharif was a famous

1. He is a very famous
a) doctor
b) engineer
c) artist
d) teacher
2. He made many amazing
a) songs
b) paintings
c) books
d) movies

Mustafa and Nabil are talking about Khan El-Khalili.

Mustafa : Have you ever visited Khan El-Khalili?

Mustafa : (2).....?

Mustafa : What did you buy?

C Vocabulary and Structure

ire

1. Gen Alpha often new trends faster than adults.

- a) misunderstand b) discover
c) frustrate d) limit
2. Cairo Airport that flight BA25 was canceled.
a) advertised b) fostered c) whispered d) announced
3. Tanta is than Cairo.
a) small b) smaller c) as small d) smallest
4. Manar a car last week.
a) buy b) bought c) is buying d) will buy
5. While Hamza, he fell and broke his leg.
a) run b) runs
c) ran d) was running

D Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

I visited the Egyptian Museum in Cairo. It is a big, beautiful building in Tahrir Square. Inside, I saw thousands of old things from Ancient Egypt, like golden masks, mummies, jewelry, and statues of pharaohs. The most famous is King Tutankhamun's golden mask. The museum opened a long time ago, in 1902, and has many treasures that tell the story of Egypt's past.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. Name one thing you can see inside the museum.
2. What is the name of the famous golden mask?
3. When did the museum open?

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4. The Egyptian Museum is located in
a) Aswan b) Cairo c) Luxor d) Alexandria
5. The museum has
a) three rooms b) many treasures
c) only one room d) modern things

E Vocabulary and Structure

5 Read and correct the underlined word(s):

1. Our school build in 1995. (.....)
2. Gold is much expensive than silver. (.....)
3. I wanted to play outside, so it started to rain. (.....)
4. Nada is the better student in our school. (.....)

F Writing

6 Write a paragraph of five (5) sentences on:

"How to stay safe online"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Model (4)

A Listening



نص الاستماع
في نهاية الملحق.

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Hany is when he is online.
a) lazy b) careful c) careless d) silly
- If Hany has a problem, he asks his for help.
a) dad b) mom c) brother d) sister

B Language Functions

2 Supply the missing parts in the following dialog:

Sahar and Mesbah are talking about facing hardships.

Mesbah : I gave a speech at school today about facing hardships.

Sahar : (1).....

Mesbah : I was nervous at first because I made a mistake while I was speaking.

Sahar : (2).....?

Mesbah : I told myself to stay calm.

Sahar : (3).....

C Vocabulary and Structure

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Before the October War, Ahmed Idris suggested using the Nubian language as a secret for the army.
a) code b) mode c) signal d) letter
- You should work hard to challenges.
a) make b) take c) watch d) overcome
- The tortoise is the animal.
a) slow b) slower c) slowing d) slowest
- The hotel rooms should before guests arrive.
a) clean b) cleans c) be cleaned d) cleaning
- Now, Salma games.
a) play b) plays c) played d) is playing

D Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

A digital footprint is like a small mark you leave online. Every time you use the internet, you leave marks—like websites you visit, things you search, or pictures you share. Some of these marks you make on purpose, like sharing a photo. But some happen without you knowing, like cookies that keep track of what you do online. Your digital footprint stays for a long time, even if you try to delete it.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What is a digital footprint?
2. Name one thing that might become part of your digital footprint.
.....
3. Can something you do online stay there even if you delete it?
.....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4. A digital footprint is like a you leave online.
a) song b) mark c) color d) food
5. What is one thing you might leave online?
a) Your favorite toy. b) Websites you visit.
c) Places you go. d) Your screen.

E Vocabulary and Structure

5 Read and correct the underlined word(s):

1. Screen time should limit by teenagers. (.....)
2. If he run fast, he will catch the train. (.....)
3. English is the much interesting subject. (.....)
4. Now, my brother do his homework. (.....)

F Writing

6 Write a paragraph of five (5) sentences on:

"The Cairo Tower"

.....

.....

.....

.....

(3) Listening Texts

Final Guiding Models (General)

Model (1)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Gen Alpha, is changing the way we live and communicate. They are digital natives because they learn to use technology before they can read. They usually spend a lot of time exploring the latest trends. They share memes and sometimes send emojis instead of words. Many parents are trying to limit screen time while also encouraging useful digital skills.

Model (2)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Mahmoud Mokhtar (born in 1891) was a very important Egyptian sculptor and national hero. He was the first Egyptian sculptor in a long time, mixing ancient Egyptian art with new European styles. His most famous work, the Nahdat Misr statue, was created after 1919. Mokhtar died in 1934. Later, a museum in Cairo was opened to display his art.

Model (3)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Egypt is working to solve the problem of traffic jams. New metro lines like Line 3 and Line 4 were built. Projects like Tahya Misr Bridge and 6th of October Bridge in Cairo help cars move faster. The country is building an electric train and a monorail to give people more ways to travel. Egypt also made flyovers and tunnels. These plans make the roads better.

Model (4)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Everything you post online becomes part of your digital footprint. Photos, comments, and personal information can be seen by strangers. If you share something bad, it might affect your future, like getting a job or entering a college. Once something is online, it's difficult to remove. That's why it's important to think carefully before you post anything on the internet.

Model (5)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Omar went on a trip to Cairo last Friday. He visited the Citadel. It's one of the most impressive buildings he has ever seen. The Citadel was built in 1176. It was built by Salah El Din Al Ayoubi. It was built to protect Cairo from attacks. He learned a lot about the history of the Citadel. He also talked to many tourists and took photos with them.

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Judy wanted to grow a small vegetable garden, but the soil in her yard was very dry. At first, the seeds didn't grow and she felt disappointed. However, Judy didn't give up. Every day, she watered the soil and moved the plants to sunnier places. After a few weeks, small green leaves began to appear and Judy felt proud because she learned that hard work and patience can help her overcome her challenges.

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

In a colorful village, there lived a curious girl called Hend. Hend loved to build things. Her room was full of old things like wires, toys, and little machines she had created. Sometimes, the other students annoyed her and said, "You are strange, Hend!"

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Dr. Farouk El-Baz is a famous Egyptian scientist and inventor. He was born in 1938 in Zagazig, Egypt. From a young age, he loved science and nature. After studying geology, he moved to the United States, where he worked on the Apollo space program. Dr. El-Baz helped NASA choose safe landing sites on the Moon. His knowledge of deserts also helped in discovering underground water in many countries.

Amr went on a trip to Cairo. He went with his friends. They went by bus. They visited many amazing places. They visited the Cairo Tower. It's a famous landmark. They also visited the Pyramids and the Sphinx. Amr met a lot of tourists there and took some photos with them. He learned a lot of things about our great civilization. He went back home in the evening.

Mahmoud Mokhtar is an Egyptian sculptor. He created Nahdat Misr statue. He completed it in the 1920s. This sculpture shows a woman and a sphinx, symbolizing Egypt's history and agriculture. It became a big symbol for Egypt and was put in a public square in Cairo in 1928. Mokhtar actively participated in the nationalist movement, using his art to promote Egyptian identity and call for reform. He also wrote articles to encourage art appreciation.

Final Guiding Models (Al-Azhar)

Model (1)

Listen and choose the correct answer:

Omar has a smartphone. He uses his smartphone to chat with his friends. He sometimes watches videos. His parents advise him to limit screen time.

Model (2)

Listen and choose the correct answer:

Mahmoud Mokhtar was a very important Egyptian artist. He was the first Egyptian sculptor in a long time. He made a famous statue called Nahdat Misr.

Model (3)

Listen and choose the correct answer:

Omar Sharif was a famous Egyptian artist. He was known all over the world. His talent and passion for acting made him a star. He made many amazing movies.

Model (4)

Listen and choose the correct answer:

Hany is a good student. He is careful when he is online. He doesn't share his personal information. He doesn't talk to strangers. If he has a problem, he asks his dad for help.